

New

Suitable for students at KET / A2 level

# Elementary Language Practice

Michael Vince

English Grammar  
and Vocabulary

3rd Edition

**with key**

  
MACMILLAN

with CD-ROM



# Elementary Language Practice



Michael Vince

English Grammar  
and Vocabulary  
3rd Edition

Macmillan Education  
Between Towns Road, Oxford OX4 3PP  
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited  
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 978 0 2307 2694 9 without key  
ISBN 978 0 2307 2693 2 with key

Text © Michael Vince 2010  
Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 2010

First published 1999  
This edition published 2010

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Designed by Macmillan  
Layout and composition by xen  
Cover design by Andrew Oliver

Illustrated by:  
ODI pp 99, 109, 111, 112, 129, 153, 185, 220, 222, 235, 236;  
Julian Mosedale pp 11, 29, 43, 49, 82, 116, 129, 151, 169, 243;  
Nick Kobyluch pp 27, 55, 57, 83, 103, 175, 231;  
Joanna Kerr pp 7, 9, 35, 54, 82, 104, 117, 155, 224

The author would like to thank the many schools and teachers who have commented on these materials. Also special thanks to Kevin McNicholas and Sarah Curtis.

The publisher would like to thank Clare Shaw for her editorial support.

Printed in Thailand

2014 2013 2012 2011 2010  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

# Contents

Introduction viii

|                     |   |           |
|---------------------|---|-----------|
|                     | <b>Grammar starter test</b>   | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>Grammar 1</b>    | <b>Present simple of <i>be</i></b><br><i>am, is, are</i>  | <b>4</b>  |
| <b>Grammar 2</b>    | <b>Present simple: affirmative; frequency adverbs</b><br><i>I like, she plays; always, usually</i>  | <b>6</b>  |
| <b>Grammar 3</b>    | <b>Present simple: negative and questions</b><br><i>I don't like... Do you walk?</i>                | <b>8</b>  |
| <b>Grammar 4</b>    | <b>Present continuous: affirmative</b><br><i>I'm waiting.</i>                                       | <b>10</b> |
| <b>Grammar 5</b>    | <b>Present continuous: negative and questions</b><br><i>I'm not waiting. Is he waiting?</i>         | <b>12</b> |
| <b>Grammar 6</b>    | <b>Present continuous and present simple</b><br><i>I am watching; I watch</i>                       | <b>14</b> |
| <b>Checkpoint 1</b> | <b>Units 1–6</b>  | <b>16</b> |
| <b>Grammar 7</b>    | <b>Past simple (regular verbs): affirmative</b><br><i>I watched</i>                                 | <b>18</b> |
| <b>Grammar 8</b>    | <b>Past simple (regular verbs): negative and questions</b><br><i>I didn't start; did you start?</i> | <b>20</b> |
| <b>Grammar 9</b>    | <b>Past simple (irregular verbs): affirmative</b><br><i>I went</i>                                  | <b>22</b> |
| <b>Grammar 10</b>   | <b>Past simple (irregular verbs): negative and questions</b><br><i>We didn't go. Did you go?</i>    | <b>24</b> |
| <b>Grammar 11</b>   | <b>Past simple of <i>be</i></b><br><i>I was, you were</i>   | <b>26</b> |
| <b>Grammar 12</b>   | <b>Past continuous: all forms</b><br><i>I was eating. He wasn't eating. Were you eating?</i>        | <b>28</b> |
| <b>Checkpoint 2</b> | <b>Units 7–12</b>   | <b>30</b> |
| <b>Grammar 13</b>   | <b>Past continuous and past simple</b><br><i>I was watching TV when Paul phoned.</i>                | <b>32</b> |
| <b>Grammar 14</b>   | <b>Past habits: <i>used to</i></b><br><i>I used to play tennis.</i>                                 | <b>34</b> |
| <b>Grammar 15</b>   | <b>Present perfect: affirmative</b><br><i>I've lost my watch.</i>                                   | <b>38</b> |
| <b>Grammar 16</b>   | <b>Present perfect: negative and questions</b><br><i>I haven't visited China. Have you started?</i> | <b>40</b> |
| <b>Grammar 17</b>   | <b>Present perfect and past simple</b><br><i>He's left. He left at 8.00.</i>                        | <b>42</b> |

## CONTENTS

|              |  |    |
|--------------|--|----|
| Grammar 18   | <b>Present perfect and past simple: time expressions</b><br><i>ever, just, yet, already, since, for, ago</i>             | 44 |
| Checkpoint 3 | <b>Units 13–18</b>   | 46 |
| Grammar 19   | <b>Be going to: plans and predictions</b><br><i>It's going to rain.</i>  | 48 |
| Grammar 20   | <b>Will: predictions</b><br><i>I'll be late.</i>   | 52 |
| Grammar 21   | <b>Will: promises, decisions, refusing</b><br><i>I'll see you at 7.30.</i>   | 54 |
| Grammar 22   | <b>Will or going to?</b>   | 56 |
| Grammar 23   | <b>Present continuous: future use</b>  | 58 |
| Grammar 24   | <b>Future time words</b>   | 60 |
| Checkpoint 4 | <b>Units 19–24</b>   | 62 |
| Grammar 25   | <b>Reported speech and past perfect</b><br><i>She said that she was leaving. I had started</i>                           | 64 |
| Grammar 26   | <b>Passive 1</b><br><i>a lot of money is spent</i>   | 66 |
| Grammar 27   | <b>Passive 2: agent</b><br><i>Peter was kidnapped by aliens.</i>   | 68 |
| Grammar 28   | <b>Imperatives</b><br><i>Stand up!</i>   | 70 |
| Grammar 29   | <b>Gerunds</b><br><i>Jogging is good fun!</i>  | 72 |
| Grammar 30   | <b>Contractions</b><br><i>I'm, you're, he's</i>  | 74 |
| Checkpoint 5 | <b>Units 25–30</b>   | 76 |
| Grammar 31   | <b>Zero conditional and conditional 1</b><br><i>If I have a cold, I stay at home. If we miss the bus, we'll be late.</i> | 78 |
| Grammar 32   | <b>Conditional 2</b><br><i>If I knew the answer, I would tell them.</i>  | 80 |
| Grammar 33   | <b>Conditionals 1 and 2</b><br><i>If you fall, you'll hurt yourself. If you fell, you'd hurt yourself.</i>               | 82 |
| Grammar 34   | <b>Yes/no questions and short answers</b><br><i>Did I pass the test? Yes, you did.</i>                                   | 86 |
| Grammar 35   | <b>Wh- questions; subject and object questions</b><br><i>Who is that? What eats fish?</i>                                | 88 |
| Grammar 36   | <b>Tag questions</b><br><i>You like chips, don't you?</i>  | 90 |

|              |  |     |
|--------------|--|-----|
| Checkpoint 6 | Units 31–36  | 92  |
| Grammar 37   | <b>Modals: ability and possibility</b><br><i>can, can't, cannot</i>  | 94  |
| Grammar 38   | <b>Modals: obligation</b><br><i>must, have to, should</i>  | 96  |
| Grammar 39   | <b>Modals: negative obligation</b><br><i>mustn't, don't have to, shouldn't</i>   | 98  |
| Grammar 40   | <b>Modals: past</b><br><i>could, couldn't, had to, didn't have to</i>  | 100 |
| Grammar 41   | <b>Modals: possibility, uncertainty, impossibility, certainty</b><br><i>might, may, could, can't, must</i>                               | 102 |
| Grammar 42   | <b>Modals: main points</b>   | 104 |
| Checkpoint 7 | Units 37–42  | 106 |
| Grammar 43   | <b>Plural nouns</b><br><i>glasses, potatoes, families, knives, feet, sheep</i>   | 108 |
| Grammar 44   | <b>Countable and uncountable nouns 1</b><br><i>a, an, some, any</i>  | 110 |
| Grammar 45   | <b>Countable and uncountable nouns 2</b><br><i>a coffee / some coffee</i>  | 112 |
| Grammar 46   | <b><i>much, many</i></b>   | 114 |
| Grammar 47   | <b><i>too much, too many, enough</i></b>   | 116 |
| Grammar 48   | <b>Numbers</b><br><i>one, first, ½, 1.5</i>  | 120 |
| Checkpoint 8 | Units 43–48  | 122 |
| Grammar 49   | <b>Prepositions of place and movement</b><br><i>in, on, at, to, into</i>   | 124 |
| Grammar 50   | <b>Prepositions and adverbials of place and position</b><br><i>inside, outside, out of, near, opposite, next to, in front of, behind</i> | 128 |
| Grammar 51   | <b>Articles 1</b><br><i>a/an, the</i>  | 132 |
| Grammar 52   | <b>Articles 2: zero article</b>  | 134 |
| Grammar 53   | <b>Pronouns 1</b><br><i>I, me, mine, this, one</i>   | 136 |
| Grammar 54   | <b>Pronouns 2</b><br><i>somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody, none, nothing</i>  | 138 |
| Checkpoint 9 | Units 49–54  | 140 |

## CONTENTS

|               |  |     |
|---------------|--|-----|
| Grammar 55    | Possession 1<br><i>This is my bike.</i>  | 142 |
| Grammar 56    | Possession 2<br><i>Jane's house; the roof of the house</i>   | 144 |
| Grammar 57    | Adjectives   | 146 |
| Grammar 58    | Order of adjectives; adjectives with <i>-ed</i> or <i>-ing</i><br><i>happy, rich and famous; tired, tiring</i> | 148 |
| Grammar 59    | Making comparisons 1: comparative adjectives<br><i>Lisa is older than Clara.</i>                               | 150 |
| Grammar 60    | Making comparisons 2: superlative adjectives<br><i>She is the fastest runner.</i>                              | 154 |
| Checkpoint 10 | Units 55–60  | 156 |
| Grammar 61    | Adverbs: formation and position<br><i>Jim wrote quickly.</i>   | 158 |
| Grammar 62    | <i>It</i> and <i>there</i> as subjects   | 160 |
| Grammar 63    | <i>Have, have got, get</i>   | 162 |
| Grammar 64    | <i>Make, do, go</i> ; phrasal verbs<br><i>go shopping; look it up</i>  | 164 |
| Grammar 65    | Verbs with prepositions, gerund or infinitive  | 166 |
| Grammar 66    | <i>Be</i> with adjectives and prepositions   | 170 |
| Checkpoint 11 | Units 61–66  | 172 |
| Grammar 67    | Functions 1: advice, agreeing/disagreeing, apologizing, replying   | 174 |
| Grammar 68    | Functions 2: descriptions, directions, excuses, greetings  | 176 |
| Grammar 69    | Functions 3: asking for information, invitations, offers, permission   | 178 |
| Grammar 70    | Functions 4: preferences, promises, reminders, requesting, suggesting, warning                                 | 180 |
| Grammar 71    | Calendar   | 182 |
| Grammar 72    | Time   | 184 |
| Checkpoint 12 | Units 67–72  | 186 |
| Grammar 73    | Punctuation  | 188 |
| Grammar 74    | Spelling 1   | 192 |
| Grammar 75    | Spelling 2   | 194 |
| Grammar 76    | Spelling 3   | 196 |
| Grammar 77    | Prefixes, suffixes, phrasal verbs, compound words  | 198 |
| Checkpoint 13 | Units 73–77  | 202 |

|            |    |                     |     |
|------------|----|---------------------|-----|
| Vocabulary | 1  | Personal details    | 206 |
| Vocabulary | 2  | Family matters      | 208 |
| Vocabulary | 3  | Free time           | 210 |
| Vocabulary | 4  | Rooms               | 212 |
| Vocabulary | 5  | Places              | 214 |
| Vocabulary | 6  | Jobs                | 216 |
| Vocabulary | 7  | Inside the house    | 218 |
| Vocabulary | 8  | Food and drink      | 220 |
| Vocabulary | 9  | Animals             | 222 |
| Vocabulary | 10 | Clothes             | 224 |
| Vocabulary | 11 | Weather             | 226 |
| Vocabulary | 12 | The body            | 228 |
| Vocabulary | 13 | Staying healthy     | 230 |
| Vocabulary | 14 | The world around us | 232 |
| Vocabulary | 15 | Transport           | 234 |
| Vocabulary | 16 | Useful things       | 236 |
| Vocabulary | 17 | Other countries     | 238 |
| Vocabulary | 18 | In the classroom    | 240 |
| Vocabulary | 19 | Going out           | 242 |
| Vocabulary | 20 | Shopping around     | 244 |
|            |    | Formation rules     | 246 |
|            |    | Irregular verbs     | 248 |
|            |    | Wordlist            | 250 |
|            |    | Grammar index       | 261 |
|            |    | Grammar answers     | 265 |
|            |    | Vocabulary answers  | 290 |



# Introduction

This book is designed to revise and consolidate grammar points at the level of Cambridge ESOL KET or Common European Framework level A2.

The book can be used as a self-study reference grammar and practice book, or as supplementary material. If used for classwork, activities can be done individually or co-operatively in pairs or small groups. It provides a wide variety of practice, which includes both sentence-based and text-based formats.

The grammar section includes units on word formation, punctuation and spelling. There are regular Checkpoint units which provide further consolidation. The vocabulary section covers essential topics and common errors.



# Grammar starter test

Use this test to find out how much you know, and where to focus your practice.

## 1 Units 1 to 6

Underline the correct form.

- 1 *Do you like / Does you like* jazz?
- 2 *What are you reading / you are reading?*
- 3 *Does Helen lives / live* here?
- 4 They *don't / doesn't* speak French.
- 5 What time *do you usually / you usually do* get up?
- 6 *Are you knowing / Do you know* the answer?

## 2 Units 7 to 12

Complete each sentence with a suitable tense of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Peter (not go) ..... to the cinema last night.
- 2 Sorry, I (forget) .....to do my homework yesterday.
- 3 What (you see) ..... on TV last night?
- 4 Sue (leave) ..... Italy and travelled to France last month.
- 5 (they enjoy) ..... their holiday in Greece last year?
- 6 While I (eat) ..... my dinner, the phone (ring) .....

## 3 Units 13 to 18

Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 Tina ..... to have long hair, but now it's short.
- 2 ..... you finished your work yet?
- 3 Carol isn't here. She ..... gone home.
- 4 Our teacher ..... not arrived yet.
- 5 I've lived here ..... January.
- 6 Have you ..... been to Paris?

## 4 Units 19 to 24

Underline the correct words.

- 1 Bye! *I'll see / I'm going to see* you next week.
- 2 Good news! Maria *will have / is going to have* a baby.
- 3 *What are you doing / will you do* tomorrow? Do you want to come to the beach?
- 4 It's very cold. I think *it will snow / it's snowing* tomorrow.
- 5 I can't see you tomorrow. *I will go / I'm going* to the dentist's.
- 6 Bye for now! I'll talk to you *after / later*.

**5 Units 25 to 30**

Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 Sam told us that she ..... arrive at 6.00.
- 2 The missing paintings ..... found yesterday.
- 3 The windows were broken ..... football hooligans.
- 4 Don't ..... there! That's my seat!
- 5 I like ....., but I'm not a very good swimmer!
- 6 Don't worry. I ..... be late.

**6 Units 31 to 36**

Underline the correct words.

- 1 If we *leave* / *left* now, we'll catch the train.
- 2 If I feel ill, I *don't* / *wouldn't* go to school.
- 3 If you *check* / *checked* your work, it would be much better.
- 4 'Is Tony coming with us?' 'No, he *isn't* / *doesn't*.'
- 5 Who *sits* / *does he sit* here?
- 6 You feel all right, *isn't it* / *don't you*?

**7 Units 37 to 42**

Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 ..... you help me? I'm lost.
- 2 Do we ..... to be here at 8.00?
- 3 Students ..... not leave bicycles here.
- 4 Sorry I was absent yesterday. I ..... to go to the doctor's.
- 5 This answer ..... be right! I'm sure it's wrong!
- 6 Would you like a sandwich? You ..... be hungry.

**8 Units 43 to 48**

Underline the correct words.

- 1 We haven't got *a* / *any* milk, I'm afraid.
- 2 How *much* / *many* people live here?
- 3 I asked Jim for some *advices* / *advice*.
- 4 *This is* / *these are* my furniture.
- 5 There isn't *too much* / *enough* time to answer all the questions.
- 6 Could you give me *some* / *any* help, please?

**9 Units 49 to 54**

Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 Pat lives ..... the end of the street.
- 2 Helen takes her dog ..... the park every morning.
- 3 Can you buy me ..... ticket for the concert?
- 4 This is .....tallest building in ..... world.
- 5 I'll let you read mine if I can read .....
- 6 Have you eaten all the biscuits? There are ..... in the box!

**10 Units 55 to 60**

Underline the correct words.

- 1 We stayed in *an old beautiful* / *a beautiful old* hotel.
- 2 *Who's* / *Whose* books are these?
- 3 Does this pen *belong to* / *own* you?
- 4 I can't use this box. It isn't *enough big* / *big enough*.
- 5 This film is better *as* / *than* the one we saw last week.
- 6 This is *the better* / *the best* restaurant in the town.

**11 Units 61 to 66**

Underline the correct words.

- 1 Martin works *hard* / *hardly* in his new job.
- 2 *It* / *There* is somebody at the door.
- 3 How much money *have you got* / *have you get*?
- 4 Sorry, I think I've *done* / *made* a mistake.
- 5 Do you fancy *going* / *to go* to the cinema?
- 6 Are you interested *for* / *in* history?

**12 Units 67 to 72**

Complete each sentence with one word.

- 1 'What's Clara .....?' 'She's really nice!'
- 2 If I ..... you, I'd ask the teacher for help.
- 3 Do you ..... if I leave my suitcase here?
- 4 Could you tell me the ..... to the station?
- 5 Paul is leaving today but he is coming back ..... month.
- 6 I'd .....stay at home than go out.

# 1

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple of *be* *am, is, are*

Use the present simple of *be*:

- with age: *Carlos is fifteen.* *I'm fourteen.*
- with an adjective: *You're right.* *It's easy.*
- with *this* and *that*: *This is my bike.* *That is Helen's house.*
- with nationality: *They are Turkish.* *We're French.*
- with jobs: *Jim is a dentist.* *Tony and Jill are teachers.*

#### Statements

|                |               |                 |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>I am</i>    | <i>he is</i>  | <i>we are</i>   |
| <i>I'm</i>     | <i>he's</i>   | <i>we're</i>    |
| <i>you are</i> | <i>she is</i> | <i>they are</i> |
| <i>you're</i>  | <i>she's</i>  | <i>they're</i>  |
|                | <i>it is</i>  |                 |
|                | <i>it's</i>   |                 |

#### Negative

|                    |                   |                     |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>I am not</i>    | <i>he is not</i>  | <i>we are not</i>   |
| <i>I'm not</i>     | <i>he isn't</i>   | <i>we aren't</i>    |
| <i>you are not</i> | <i>she is not</i> | <i>they are not</i> |
| <i>you aren't</i>  | <i>she isn't</i>  | <i>they aren't</i>  |
|                    | <i>it is not</i>  |                     |
|                    | <i>it isn't</i>   |                     |

*I'm not* wrong.    You *aren't* French.    It *isn't* cold.    We *aren't* late.

#### Yes/No Questions

|                      |                     |                       |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Am I ... ?</i>    | <i>Is he ... ?</i>  | <i>Are we ... ?</i>   |
| <i>Are you ... ?</i> | <i>Is she ... ?</i> | <i>Are they ... ?</i> |
|                      | <i>Is it ... ?</i>  |                       |

*Am I* wrong?    *Are you* French?    *Is it* cold?    *Are we* late?

→ SEE ALSO

Grammar 30: Contractions

**1 Complete each sentence with *am, is, or are*.**

- 1 This .....~~is~~..... my family.
- 2 These ..... my parents.
- 3 Lucy ..... English.
- 4 We ..... in the garden.
- 5 This ..... her pen.
- 6 Maria and Anna ..... students.
- 7 My dog ..... happy.
- 8 I ..... happy.

**2 Change the sentences into negative sentences.**

- 1 It's hot today. .... ~~It is hot today.~~ *It isn't hot today.* .....
- 2 I'm at home. ....
- 3 My friends are here. ....
- 4 You're a teacher. ....
- 5 We're at the cinema. ....
- 6 This is difficult. ....
- 7 Sam is happy. ....

**3 Change the statements into questions.**

- 1 I'm late. .... *Am I late?* .....
- 2 You're ill. ....
- 3 We're right. ....
- 4 He's fifteen. ....
- 5 It's cold. ....
- 6 The school is in this street. ....
- 7 My books are in your bag. ....

**4 Choose the most suitable answer (a–e) to each question (1–5).**

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 What's your name?     | a) No, I'm Brazilian.  |
| 2 Are you Portuguese?   | b) I'm fifteen.        |
| 3 Are you at school?    | c) My name is Carlos.  |
| 4 How old are you?      | d) No, it's easy.      |
| 5 Is English difficult? | e) Yes, I'm a student. |

# 2

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple: affirmative *I like, she plays*

### Frequency adverbs *always, usually*

#### Present simple

The present simple describes general facts, repeated actions and habits, and things that are always true.

- **General facts**

*I like milk.*

*Maria **plays** basketball.*

*They **speak** Turkish.*

*We **live** in Australia.*

- **Repeated actions and habits**

*Harry often **arrives** late.*

*I **walk** to school every day.*

*I usually **get up** at 7.30.*

*My brother usually **walks** with me.*

- **Things that are always true**

*The sun **rises** in the east.*

*The earth **goes** round the sun.*

*I walk*

*we walk*

*you walk*

*they walk*

***BUT** he walks*

*she walks*

*it walks*

#### Spelling

Verbs ending in *o, s, ch, sh, x* add *-es* for the *he/she/it* form.

*go* → *goes*

*miss* → *misses*

*watch* → *watches*

*wash* → *washes*

*relax* → *relaxes*

#### ***always, usually, often, sometimes, never***

We often use the present simple with these frequency adverbs.

*always* 100% *Tim **always** wears jeans.*

*usually* 80% *I **usually** go to bed at 9.30.*

*often* 60% *Sue **often** goes to the cinema.*

*sometimes* 40% *Sam **sometimes** walks to school.*

*never* 0% *It **never** rains here in August.*

- The frequency adverb goes between the subject and the verb.

*Monday **always** comes after Sunday.*

## GRAMMAR 2 PRESENT SIMPLE: AFFIRMATIVE; FREQUENCY ADVERBS

1 Look at the pictures. Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

|        |      |      |      |       |       |
|--------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| arrive | like | live | rain | start | teach |
|--------|------|------|------|-------|-------|



- David ..... likes ..... chocolate.
- It ..... here in November.
- Liz ..... with her family in Italy.
- George often ..... late.
- The lesson ..... at 6.00.
- Kate and Jim ..... English in Spain.

2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- Juan and Carmen live / lives in Madrid.
- Harry watch / watches television every evening.
- I usually go / goes to school by bus.
- It never snow / snows in this city.
- Sam live / lives in that house.
- You never clean / cleans your teeth!
- Carol get / gets up early every day.
- All the buses leave / leaves from this bus-stop.

3 Complete each sentence. Use the verb and frequency adverb in brackets.

- Tina (sometimes, miss) ..... sometimes misses ..... the bus to school.
- I (never, get up) ..... before 6.00.
- We (usually, take) ..... a holiday in August.
- Jim and Helen (often, go) ..... to the theatre.
- I (often, sing) ..... in the shower.
- Pat (sometimes, play) ..... football on Sunday.
- You (never, finish) ..... your homework!
- Our teacher (always, wear) ..... a tie.



# 3

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple: negative *I don't like ...* and questions *Do you walk?*

#### Negative

- We use *do not* or *don't* with *I, you, we* and *they* when we make negatives in the present simple.
- We use *does not* or *doesn't* with *he, she* and *it*.
- We put *do not/don't* and *does not/doesn't* after the pronoun *I, you, he* etc.  
*I don't like ice-cream. She doesn't eat chocolate.*

|                         |                           |                          |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>I do not walk.</i>   | <i>He does not walk.</i>  | <i>We do not walk.</i>   |
| <i>I don't walk.</i>    | <i>He doesn't walk.</i>   | <i>We don't walk.</i>    |
| <i>You do not walk.</i> | <i>She does not walk.</i> | <i>They do not walk.</i> |
| <i>You don't walk.</i>  | <i>She doesn't walk.</i>  | <i>They don't walk.</i>  |
|                         | <i>It does not walk.</i>  |                          |
|                         | <i>It doesn't walk.</i>   |                          |

*I don't drink coffee. They don't speak Italian.*  
*Tom doesn't play tennis. We don't live in France.*

#### Questions

- We use *do* with *I, you, we* and *they* when we make questions in the present simple.
- We use *does* with *he, she* and *it*.
- We put *do* or *does* before the pronoun *I, you, he* etc.  
*Do you walk to school or do you take the bus?*

|                     |                       |                      |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Do I walk?</i>   | <i>Does he walk?</i>  | <i>Do we walk?</i>   |
| <i>Do you walk?</i> | <i>Does she walk?</i> | <i>Do they walk?</i> |
|                     | <i>Does it walk?</i>  |                      |

*Does Ana play basketball? Do they speak Italian?*  
*Does Harry often arrive late? Do you live in Australia?*

#### Wh- questions

*Where does Anna play basketball? When do you usually get up?*

→ SEE ALSO

Grammar 35: Wh- questions

## GRAMMAR 3 PRESENT SIMPLE: NEGATIVE AND QUESTIONS

### 1 Complete each sentence. Put the words in brackets into the correct order.

- 1 Our (walk, not, teacher, does) ..... *teacher does not walk* ..... to school.
- 2 Where (Helen, live, does) ..... ?
- 3 (do, not, go, we) ..... to the cinema on Friday.
- 4 (David, does, ride) ..... a bike?
- 5 (play, do, you) ..... football after school?
- 6 Kate (like, does, not) ..... oranges.
- 7 I (lunch, usually, have) ..... at 1.30.

### 2 Complete each sentence. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 Mary (like, not) ..... *does not like* ..... baseball.
- 2 (wash, Peter) ..... his face every morning?
- 3 (watch, you) ..... television every day?
- 4 I (eat, not, often) ..... fruit.
- 5 (teacher, usually, give) ..... you homework?
- 6 My friends (live, not) ..... near my house.

### 3 Look at the pictures. Write a question or a negative sentence.



Jack

Alice and Mike

- 1 Jack – get up at 7.00 ..... *Does Jack get up at 7.00* ..... ?
- 2 Jack – leave home at 8.00 ..... ?
- 3 Jack – not/leave home at 7.00 ..... ?
- 4 Jack – not/wear school uniform ..... ?
- 5 Alice and Mike – walk to work ..... ?
- 6 Alice and Mike – not/arrive late ..... ?
- 7 Alice and Mike – watch TV in the evening ..... ?
- 8 Alice and Mike – not/like tennis ..... ?

# 4

## GRAMMAR

### Present continuous: affirmative *I'm waiting.*

- Use the present continuous for actions happening at the moment.  
*I am sitting* in my car.    *She's watching* television.
- We form the present continuous with the present of *be* + verb + *ing*  
*I am watching*    *He is watching*

|                         |                        |                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>I am waiting.</i>    | <i>He is waiting.</i>  | <i>We are waiting.</i>   |
| <i>I'm waiting.</i>     | <i>He's waiting.</i>   | <i>We're waiting.</i>    |
| <i>You are waiting.</i> | <i>She is waiting.</i> | <i>They are waiting.</i> |
| <i>You're waiting.</i>  | <i>She's waiting.</i>  | <i>They're waiting.</i>  |
|                         | <i>It is waiting.</i>  |                          |
|                         | <i>It's waiting.</i>   |                          |

*I'm studying* English.    *We're swimming* in the sea.  
*My brother's talking* on the telephone now.  
*Sue's reading* a book at the moment.

### Spelling

- Verbs with two vowels and ending in one consonant, add *-ing*.  
*wait*     $\longrightarrow$     *waiting*
- Verbs ending in *e*, drop *e* and add *-ing*.  
*make*     $\longrightarrow$     *making*  
*decide*     $\longrightarrow$     *deciding*  
*write*     $\longrightarrow$     *writing*
- Verbs ending with one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.  
*sit*     $\longrightarrow$     *sitting*  
*swim*     $\longrightarrow$     *swimming*  
*cut*     $\longrightarrow$     *cutting*
- Verbs ending *ie*, change *ie* to *y*.  
*lie*     $\longrightarrow$     *lying*  
*tie*     $\longrightarrow$     *tying*  
*die*     $\longrightarrow$     *dying*
- Verbs ending in a vowel and *y*, add *-ing*.  
*stay*     $\longrightarrow$     *staying*  
*play*     $\longrightarrow$     *playing*  
*say*     $\longrightarrow$     *saying*

# GRAMMAR 4 PRESENT CONTINUOUS: AFFIRMATIVE

1 Look at the pictures and write sentences.



1 I / eat  
.....  
*I'm eating*.....



2 They / listen  
.....



3 The teacher / come  
.....



4 You / move  
.....



5 It / rain  
.....



6 We / sing  
.....

2 Complete this postcard with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

Dear Jim,

We (1) (have) *are having* a terrible holiday. It (2) (rain) .....

I (3) (sit) ..... in the apartment.

I (4) (watch) ..... television. Tom and Peter (5) (play) ..... computer games. Alice (6) (read) ..... a book.

Susan (7) (make) ..... a cup of coffee.

The baby (8) (cry) .....

I want to go home.

See you soon,

George

# 5

## GRAMMAR

### Present continuous: negative *I'm not waiting.* and questions *Is he waiting?*

#### Negative

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <i>I am not waiting.</i>                             | <i>He is not waiting.</i>                           | <i>We are not waiting.</i>                              |
| <i>I'm not waiting.</i>                              | <i>He isn't waiting.</i><br><i>(He's not ...)</i>   | <i>We aren't waiting.</i><br><i>(We're not ...)</i>     |
| <i>You are not waiting.</i>                          | <i>She is not waiting.</i>                          | <i>They are not waiting.</i>                            |
| <i>You aren't waiting.</i><br><i>(You're not...)</i> | <i>She isn't waiting.</i><br><i>(She's not ...)</i> | <i>They aren't waiting.</i><br><i>(They're not ...)</i> |
|  | <i>It is not waiting.</i>                           |   |
|  | <i>It isn't waiting.</i>                            |   |
|  | <i>(It's not waiting.)</i>                          |   |

*I'm not walking to school today.*

*I'm not drinking milk, I'm drinking cola.*

*They aren't playing football. They're playing rugby.*

#### Questions

|                         |                        |                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Am I waiting?</i>    | <i>Is he waiting?</i>  | <i>Are we waiting?</i>   |
| <i>Are you waiting?</i> | <i>Is she waiting?</i> | <i>Are they waiting?</i> |
|                         | <i>Is it waiting?</i>  |                          |

*Are you waiting for me?*

*Are you reading? No, I'm not reading.*

#### Wh- questions

*What are you doing?*

*Where are you going?*

#### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 34:** Yes/no questions and short answers

**Grammar 35:** Wh- questions

## GRAMMAR 5 PRESENT CONTINUOUS: NEGATIVE AND QUESTIONS

### 1 Change the statements into questions.

- 1 I'm making a lot of noise. *Am I making a lot of noise?*
- 2 Clare is reading. ....
- 3 You are watching the news. ....
- 4 It is snowing. ....
- 5 We are waiting in the right place. ....
- 6 You are sitting here. ....
- 7 David is enjoying his holiday. ....
- 8 The bus is stopping. ....

### 2 Change the statements into negative sentences.

- 1 It is raining. *It isn't raining.*
- 2 Tim is studying. ....
- 3 We're talking. ....
- 4 You're listening to me. ....
- 5 Katherine is lying. ....
- 6 They are waiting for us. ....
- 7 Anna's having a good time. ....
- 8 I'm reading at the moment. ....

### 3 Correct each sentence or question. Use the correct present continuous form.

- 1 I playing tennis with my best friend.  
*I'm playing tennis with my best friend.*
- 2 You're coming to the cinema tonight?  
.....
- 3 John and Mandy don't going to the beach.  
.....
- 4 Is Emma and Sam flying to America?  
.....
- 5 'Where's Ann?' 'She is walk on the beach.'  
.....
- 6 We not studying French at school this year.  
.....
- 7 You have a good time?  
.....
- 8 I aren't watching the TV. Turn it off.  
.....
- 9 Fred are eating a sandwich for his lunch.  
.....
- 10 Are waiting they for a bus?  
.....

# 6

## GRAMMAR

### Present continuous *I am watching* and present simple *I watch*

#### Present continuous

Use the present continuous to describe things that are happening at the moment.

*Jim is watching television at the moment.*

#### Present simple

Use the present simple to describe habits and routines.

- Things we do often, every day, every week, etc.
- Things that always happen.  
*I arrive at school at 8.30.*  
*The first lesson starts at 8.45.*  
*The lesson finishes at 9.30.*
- We generally use these verbs with the present simple, not the present continuous:  

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>cost</i>       | <i>This bike costs £200.</i>    |
| <i>like</i>       | <i>Anna likes rap music.</i>    |
| <i>know</i>       | <i>Do you know the answer?</i>  |
| <i>understand</i> | <i>I don't understand this.</i> |
| <i>believe</i>    | <i>Do you believe me?</i>       |
- Some verbs have one meaning in the present simple, but a different meaning in the present continuous.  

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| <i>Do you have a bike?</i> = Do you own a bike?               | (in general)    |
| <i>I'm having a great time!</i> = It's a great party!         | (at the moment) |
| <i>I think this film is great!</i> = I like this film a lot.  | (in general)    |
| <i>Quiet! I'm thinking.</i> = I'm doing a difficult exercise. | (at the moment) |



*Joe lives in New York.* (New York is his home. He lives there all the time.)

*We are living near the station at the moment.* (We want to move to another house soon.)

## GRAMMAR 6 PRESENT CONTINUOUS AND PRESENT SIMPLE

### 1 Choose the best sentence for the situation.

- 1 A I'm in the bathroom! I wash my hair.  
B I'm in the bathroom! I'm washing my hair. ✓
- 2 A This maths problem is difficult. Do you know the answer?  
B This maths problem is difficult. Are you knowing the answer?
- 3 A Do you wait for the school bus? You're in the wrong place!  
B Are you waiting for the school bus? You're in the wrong place!
- 4 A Look at that bike! It costs £350.  
B Look at that bike! It is costing £350.
- 5 A Do you understand this exercise?  
B Are you understanding this exercise?
- 6 A Sorry, I'm busy. I do my homework.  
B Sorry, I'm busy. I'm doing my homework.

### 2 Complete each sentence. Use the words in brackets. Use present simple or present continuous.

- 1 Richard (always, get up) ..... *always gets up* ..... before 7.00.
- 2 Hurry up! The bus (wait) ..... for us!
- 3 Where (we, go) ..... ? This is the wrong road!
- 4 My friends (not believe) ..... my story.
- 5 Please be quiet! I (read) ..... a very interesting book.
- 6 (like, Susan) ..... horror films?
- 7 Maria (usually, sit) ..... at the front of the class.
- 8 Carlos can't talk to you at the moment. He (have) ..... a shower.
- 9 Please wait for a moment, Jane. I (talk) ..... to Susan.
- 10 This bike (cost) ..... a lot of money.

### 3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 'Someone ~~is~~ for you outside.' 'Who is it?'  
A waits                      B is waiting                      C waiting
- 2 'What ..... of this book?' 'I think it's fantastic!'  
A do you think              B is you think                      C you do think
- 3 ..... in ghosts?  
A Are you believe      B Are you believing      C Do you believe
- 4 Kate is busy. She ..... for a test.  
A is study                      B is studying                      C is studies
- 5 ..... a great time at the moment!  
A We are have              B We're have                      C We're having
- 6 Tina usually ..... at 7.00.  
A get up                      B is getting up                      C gets up



## CHECKPOINT 1

### Units 1–6

#### 1 Correct each sentence or question.

- 1 I ~~doesn't likes~~ this film. ..... *don't like* .....
- 2 What do you wants? .....
- 3 Jim walk sometimes to school. .....
- 4 When the lesson begins? .....
- 5 I don't gets up early on Saturdays. .....
- 6 Tina not like computer games. .....
- 7 Alex watchs television every night. .....

#### 2 Complete each sentence with one word. Contractions are one word.

- 1 What .....*do*..... you usually eat for lunch?
- 2 George and Terry ..... speak Portuguese. They speak English.
- 3 It's 9.30 and the children ..... sitting at their desks.
- 4 Ken ..... like tea. In fact, he hates it.
- 5 When it rains, ..... you take an umbrella?
- 6 What ..... it say on the board? I can't see from here.

#### 3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 What time ..... to bed?  
A usually do you go      B do usually you go      C do you usually go
- 2 Every day, Frank ..... to work.  
A goes      B is going      C go
- 3 Stop it! ..... it!  
A I'm not liking      B I don't like      C I not like
- 4 What ..... ? Is it an orange?  
A you are eating      B are you eating      C do you eat
- 5 Anna feels ill, so she ..... basketball.  
A doesn't play      B isn't play      C isn't playing
- 6 Pay attention, Philip! ..... ?  
A Do you listen      B Is it listening      C Are you listening
- 7 Excuse me. .... to the city centre?  
A This bus goes      B Does this bus go      C Is this bus go

**4 Rewrite each sentence using the words in brackets.**

1 Jo goes to school by bus. (usually)

Jo usually goes to school by bus.

2 I'm working hard. (not)

.....

3 Sara likes sport. (not)

.....

4 I get up at 6.30. (always)

.....

5 We speak German. (not)

.....

6 Peter goes to the beach. (often)

.....

7 George drinks beer. (never)

.....

8 We're having a good time. (not)

.....

**5 Present simple or present continuous? Change the verb if it is wrong.**

1 Are you having a motorbike?

Do you have a motorbike?

2 I'm staying in a hotel near the sea.

.....

3 I'd like to buy this coat. How much is it costing?

.....

4 What you doing?

.....

5 I'm usually getting up at 6.00.

.....

6 This book is difficult. I'm not understanding it.

.....

7 I watch a lot of TV every night.

.....

8 Excuse me. Are you knowing the way to the museum?

.....

**Think about grammar!****Are the sentences true or false?**1 Present simple questions always begin with the word **do**.2 *I eat rice* means the same as *I'm eating rice*.

3 Some verbs have a different meaning in present simple and in present continuous.

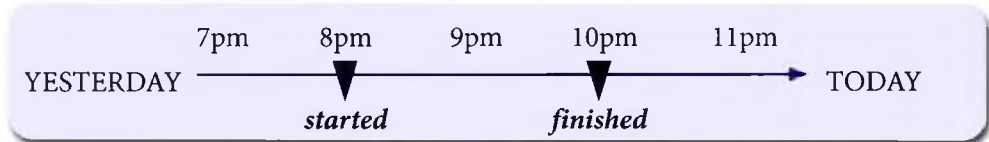
# 7

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple (regular verbs): affirmative

#### *I watched*

- We use the past simple to describe finished events in the past.



Yesterday I **watched** a great film on TV.  
It **started** at 8pm and **finished** at 10pm.

- Regular verbs: add *-ed* to form the past simple

*watch + ed*    *start + ed*

|                    |                    |                     |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>I started</i>   | <i>he started</i>  | <i>we started</i>   |
| <i>you started</i> | <i>she started</i> | <i>they started</i> |
|                    | <i>it started</i>  |                     |

John **played** football last week.

The bus **arrived** at 9.30.

In 1998 I **decided** to move to Australia.

Yesterday I **walked** to school.

Kate **stayed** in Turkey last summer.

#### Spelling

- One-syllable verbs: double the final consonant.

*fit* → *fitted*                      *stop* → *stopped*

- One-syllable verbs ending consonant + *y*: change *y* to *i*.

*cry* → *cried*                      *try* → *tried*

- One-syllable verbs ending vowel + *y* do not change.

*play* → *played*                      *stay* → *stayed*

- Two-syllable verbs: double the final consonant when the stress is on the last syllable.

*admit* → *admitted*

- Two-syllable verbs with the stress on the first syllable do not double the final consonant.

*answer* → *answered*

#### Other regular verbs

*answer*    *listen*    *start*    *arrive*    *live*    *stop*  
*decide*    *marry*    *turn*    *like*    *open*    *watch*

## GRAMMAR 7 PAST SIMPLE (REGULAR): AFFIRMATIVE

### 1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

My day yesterday

- 1 My mother (call) ..... *called* ..... me at 7.00.
- 2 I (wash) ..... and (dress) ..... very quickly.
- 3 I (walk) ..... to school.
- 4 After school I (watch) ..... television.
- 5 Then I (play) ..... basketball with my friends.
- 6 At 8.30 we (finish) ..... the game.
- 7 Before bedtime I (phone) ..... my friend.

### 2 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs from the box.

~~arrive~~    continue    finish    listen    play    start    talk    work

My first day at school

I remember my first day at school in 2001!! (1) *arrived* ..... at 8.30 and  
(2) ..... lessons at 9.00. We (3) ..... from 9.00 to 12.00.  
The teachers (4) ..... to us a lot! Then we (5) ..... basketball  
for an hour. In the afternoon we (6) ..... the lessons and  
(7) ..... to the teacher carefully. Then at 3.30 the lessons  
(8) ..... It was a long and tiring day!

### 3 Change the sentences into past simple sentences.

- 1 Tom looks out of the window.  
*Tom looked out of the window.* .....
- 2 We arrive at 6.30.  
.....
- 3 Laura watches television all afternoon.  
.....
- 4 The bus stops at the end of the street.  
.....
- 5 I visit an old castle on Saturday.  
.....
- 6 Sue waits for her friends for more than an hour.  
.....
- 7 They decide to come to my party.  
.....

# 8

## GRAMMAR

# Past simple (regular verbs): negative *I didn't start* and questions *did you start?*

### Negative

We use *did not* or *didn't* when we make negatives in the past simple. We put *did not* after the pronoun *I, you, he* etc. We do not add *-ed*.

*I **didn't start** learning English last year. I **started** this year.*

|                          |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>I did not start</i>   | <i>he did not start</i>  | <i>we did not start</i>   |
| <i>I didn't start</i>    | <i>he didn't start</i>   | <i>we didn't start</i>    |
| <i>you did not start</i> | <i>she did not start</i> | <i>they did not start</i> |
| <i>you didn't start</i>  | <i>she didn't start</i>  | <i>they didn't start</i>  |
|                          | <i>it did not start</i>  |                           |
|                          | <i>it didn't start</i>   |                           |

### Yes/No Questions

We use *did* when we make questions in the past simple. We put *did* before the pronoun *I, you, he* etc. We do not add *-ed*.

***Did you start** learning English last year?*

|                       |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Did I start?</i>   | <i>Did he start?</i>  | <i>Did we start?</i>   |
| <i>Did you start?</i> | <i>Did she start?</i> | <i>Did they start?</i> |
|                       | <i>Did it start?</i>  |                        |

***Did they arrive** yesterday? No, they **didn't arrive** yesterday. They **arrived** on Monday.*

***Did you finish** your homework? No, I **didn't finish** my homework. It was very difficult.*

### Wh- questions

*When **did you start** learning English?*

*When **did you finish** your homework?*

*When **did you start** school? I **started** school in 1993.*

### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 34:** Yes/no questions and short answers

**Grammar 35:** Wh- questions

## GRAMMAR 8 PAST SIMPLE (REGULAR): NEGATIVE AND QUESTIONS

### 1 Change the sentences into negative sentences.

1 Our bus arrived on time.

*Our bus didn't arrive on time.*

2 Sue phoned last night.

3 Maria finished work early yesterday.

4 The train stopped at Harry's station.

5 I wanted to go to bed early.

6 Carlos answered my letter.

7 John invited lots of people to his party.

8 The shops opened on Sunday.

9 Peter liked his new shoes.

### 2 Change the statements into questions.

1 Tim arrived at 2.00.

*Did Tim arrive at 2.00?*

2 Sam phoned home.

3 Helen wanted to make a phone call.

4 Paul visited the doctor.

5 Bill missed the bus.

6 George walked to school.

7 Jim opened the window.

8 Emma helped the teacher.

9 Alice washed her hair.

# 9

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple (irregular verbs): affirmative

#### *I went*

Irregular verbs do not have *-ed* endings for the past simple. Each verb has its own form and we have to learn these forms.

|      |   |      |       |   |         |
|------|---|------|-------|---|---------|
| go   | → | went | eat   | → | ate     |
| come | → | came | do    | → | did     |
| have | → | had  | get   | → | got     |
| take | → | took | bring | → | brought |

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| <b>go</b>        | <b>eat</b>      |
| <i>I went</i>    | <i>I ate</i>    |
| <i>you went</i>  | <i>you ate</i>  |
| <i>he went</i>   | <i>he ate</i>   |
| <i>she went</i>  | <i>she ate</i>  |
| <i>it went</i>   | <i>it ate</i>   |
| <i>we went</i>   | <i>we ate</i>   |
| <i>they went</i> | <i>they ate</i> |

Last week we **went** to the cinema.  
Yesterday I **drank** ten colas.

Pedro **ate** 10 cakes yesterday.  
We **made** dinner last night.

#### Task

Complete the list. Use the words from the box.

|      |      |      |       |                  |      |         |      |       |     |
|------|------|------|-------|------------------|------|---------|------|-------|-----|
| sent | got  | did  | knew  | <del>began</del> | flew | brought | took | went  | had |
| came | told | gave | stood | met              | made | found   | wore | drank | ran |

| <i>Verb</i>  | <i>Past simple</i>   | <i>Verb</i>  | <i>Past simple</i> |
|--------------|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| <i>begin</i> | ... <i>began</i> ... | <i>have</i>  | .....              |
| <i>bring</i> | .....                | <i>know</i>  | .....              |
| <i>come</i>  | .....                | <i>make</i>  | .....              |
| <i>do</i>    | .....                | <i>meet</i>  | .....              |
| <i>drink</i> | .....                | <i>run</i>   | .....              |
| <i>find</i>  | .....                | <i>send</i>  | .....              |
| <i>fly</i>   | .....                | <i>stand</i> | .....              |
| <i>get</i>   | .....                | <i>take</i>  | .....              |
| <i>give</i>  | .....                | <i>tell</i>  | .....              |
| <i>go</i>    | .....                | <i>wear</i>  | .....              |

Now check your answers. Look at the list of irregular verbs on page 248.

## GRAMMAR 9 PAST SIMPLE (IRREGULAR): AFFIRMATIVE

### 1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 The last lesson (begin) ..... *began* ..... at 2.30.
- 2 Joe (feel) ..... ill after lunch.
- 3 Suddenly a bird (fly) ..... in the window!
- 4 I think you (do) ..... the wrong thing.
- 5 Jane (get) ..... ready very quickly.
- 6 We (know) ..... the answer.
- 7 The students (stand) ..... up when the teacher arrived.
- 8 It was cold, but I (wear) ..... two pullovers.
- 9 Anna (eat) ..... two plates of spaghetti.
- 10 Rick (tell) ..... us the time.

### 2 Choose the correct words to complete this article about Sally Green.

#### *A day in the life of Sally Green*

Yesterday was a normal day for Sally Green, the writer. She (1) ..*g*.. up at 6.00. She (2) ..... to the bathroom, and then she (3) ..... her clothes. After that she (4) ..... breakfast and (5) ..... the newspaper. Then she (6) ..... her bed. From 7.00 to 10.00 she (7) ..... in the living-room and (8) ..... television. Then she (9) ..... shopping. At 1.00 she (10) ..... home and (11) ..... her lunch. After lunch she (12) ..... work. She (13) ..... from 2.00 to 9.00. She (14) ..... a lot of tea. Then she (15) ..... her friends at a nightclub.

- |             |             |           |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 A get     | B gets      | C got     |
| 2 A went    | B goed      | C goes    |
| 3 A put on  | B putted on | C puts on |
| 4 A eat     | B have      | C ate     |
| 5 A read    | B saw       | C readed  |
| 6 A made    | B make      | C making  |
| 7 A sat     | B sit       | C was     |
| 8 A watches | B watched   | C wached  |
| 9 A does    | B went      | C did     |
| 10 A comed  | B come      | C came    |
| 11 A has    | B had       | C have    |
| 12 A begin  | B beganned  | C began   |
| 13 A writes | B write     | C wrote   |
| 14 A drinks | B drunk     | C drank   |
| 15 A meets  | B met       | C meet    |



# 10

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple (irregular verbs): negative *We didn't go* and questions *Did you go?*

#### Negative

|                       |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>I did not go</i>   | <i>he did not go</i>  | <i>we did not go</i>   |
| <i>I didn't go</i>    | <i>he didn't go</i>   | <i>we didn't go</i>    |
| <i>you did not go</i> | <i>she did not go</i> | <i>they did not go</i> |
| <i>you didn't go</i>  | <i>she didn't go</i>  | <i>they didn't go</i>  |
|                       | <i>it did not go</i>  |                        |
|                       | <i>it didn't go</i>   |                        |

*We **didn't** go to school last week.*

*Sam **didn't** eat an ice-cream yesterday.*

*They **didn't** give Jack a present.*

*I **didn't** have breakfast.*

#### Questions

|                    |                    |                     |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Did I go?</i>   | <i>Did he go?</i>  | <i>Did we go?</i>   |
| <i>Did you go?</i> | <i>Did she go?</i> | <i>Did they go?</i> |
|                    | <i>Did it go?</i>  |                     |

***Did** you go to the cinema last night?*

***Did** you **send** me a letter last week?*

*Where **did** you go yesterday?*

*What **did** you do?*

In questions and negative sentences with *did/didn't*, the main verb is not in the past form.

*I **didn't** go to the cinema last night.*

*I ~~didn't~~ went to the cinema. X*



## GRAMMAR 10 PAST SIMPLE (IRREGULAR): NEGATIVE AND QUESTIONS

### 1 Read the answers. Write a question for each answer.

- |    |   |                               |
|----|---|-------------------------------|
| 1  | ..... <i>Did Nick fly to the USA?</i> ..... | Yes, Nick flew to the USA.    |
| 2  | .....                                       | Yes, Anna went to Italy.      |
| 3  | .....                                       | Yes, Jack found the money.    |
| 4  | .....                                       | Yes, Helen knew the answer.   |
| 5  | .....                                       | Yes, Alex came to the party.  |
| 6  | .....                                       | Yes, Pat brought the flowers. |
| 7  | .....                                       | Yes, Kate sent the letter.    |
| 8  | .....                                       | Yes, Alan made the cake.      |
| 9  | .....                                       | Yes, Tina wore a hat.         |
| 10 | .....                                       | Yes, Rick felt ill.           |

### 2 Change the statements into negative sentences.

- 1 Tom and Anna had breakfast. .... *Tom and Anna didn't have breakfast.* .....
- 2 Mike took the bus. ....
- 3 Maria and Carlos did the homework. ....
- 4 Catherine got a prize. ....
- 5 Peter knew the teacher. ....
- 6 Sam went to university. ....
- 7 Paula ate a sandwich. ....
- 8 Murat and Soraya ran fast. ....
- 9 Joe made mistakes. ....
- 10 Carla came early. ....

### 3 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 When (you, come) ..... *did you come* ..... to this country?
- 2 Jack (not, wear) ..... his raincoat.
- 3 Pat (leave) ..... his coat in the hall.
- 4 How many pages (you, write) ..... ?
- 5 What (the teacher, say) ..... ?
- 6 (you, not, tell) ..... us your name.
- 7 (you, go) ..... to the basketball match yesterday?
- 8 Ann (not, know) ..... the other girl's name.
- 9 Which books (you, take) ..... to school?
- 10 (Jane, not, get) ..... any letters.

# 11

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple of *be* *I was, you were*

#### Statements

At 8.00 last night I **was** at home.

|                 |                |                  |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>I was</i>    | <i>he was</i>  | <i>we were</i>   |
| <i>you were</i> | <i>she was</i> | <i>they were</i> |
|                 | <i>it was</i>  |                  |

Dave and Sue **were** at the cinema last night.

It **was** very cold yesterday.

I **was** ill last week.

#### Negatives

We put *not* after *was/were* to make negatives. We also use the short forms *wasn't/weren't*.

I **wasn't** here yesterday.

|                     |                    |                      |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>I was not</i>    | <i>he was not</i>  | <i>we were not</i>   |
| <i>I wasn't</i>     | <i>he wasn't</i>   | <i>we weren't</i>    |
| <i>you were not</i> | <i>she was not</i> | <i>they were not</i> |
| <i>you weren't</i>  | <i>she wasn't</i>  | <i>they weren't</i>  |
|                     | <i>it was not</i>  |                      |
|                     | <i>it wasn't</i>   |                      |

Kate **wasn't** happy at work last year.

We **weren't** at home last night.

I **was** late yesterday.

#### Questions

We put *was* **before** *I, he, she, it*, and *were* **before** *you, we, they* to make questions.

**Was** it cold yesterday?

|                  |                 |                   |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Was I?</i>    | <i>Was he?</i>  | <i>Were we?</i>   |
| <i>Were you?</i> | <i>Was she?</i> | <i>Were they?</i> |
|                  | <i>Was it?</i>  |                   |

**Were** you at home at 6.00 last night?

**Was** Harry in London yesterday?

**Were** you at school on Tuesday?

1 Look at the pictures and complete the questions and answers.



Helen: at the cinema



Nick: at work



Tom and Dan: at home



Liz and Jane: at school

- 1 ..... was Helen ..... at home yesterday?  
Helen ..... wasn't at home ..... She ..... was at the cinema .....
- 2 ..... at school yesterday?  
Tom and Dan .....  
They .....
- 3 ..... at home yesterday?  
Nick ..... He .....
- 4 ..... at the cinema yesterday?  
Liz and Jane .....  
They .....

2 Use the prompts to make questions and negative sentences.

- 1 Jim / at home / last night was Jim at home last night ..... ?
- 2 you / at school / on Monday ..... ?
- 3 the cinema / open / on Sunday ..... ?
- 4 all your friends / at your party ..... ?
- 5 Kevin and Mel / at my party. Kevin and Mel weren't at my party .....
- 6 Nick / in class yesterday ..... ?
- 7 It / warm yesterday ..... ?
- 8 We / at the match yesterday ..... ?

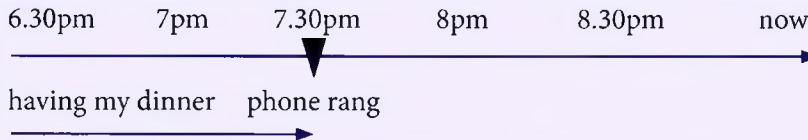
# 12

## GRAMMAR

### Past continuous: all forms

***I was eating. He wasn't eating. Were you eating?***

The past continuous describes a continuing situation in the past. We often interrupt a continuing situation with a sudden event.



*Nadia phoned me at 7.30. I **was having** my dinner.*

*Steve **was eating** in the restaurant when the fire started.*

We form the past continuous with was/were + verb +ing *I was watching*

#### Statements

*Last month I **was working** in Brazil.*

*Jack and Tony **were working** in Italy.*

*I was eating.*

*He was eating.*

*We were eating.*

*You were eating.*

*She was eating.*

*They were eating.*

*It was eating.*

#### Negatives

*The teacher was talking, but Harry **wasn't listening**.*

*Carmen **wasn't teaching** in 1990, she was studying.*

*was not = wasn't   were not = weren't*

*I wasn't eating.*

*He wasn't eating.*

*We weren't eating.*

*You weren't eating.*

*She wasn't eating.*

*They weren't eating.*

*It wasn't eating.*

#### Questions

*Was **he** listening?*

*Were they **working** in the office?*

*Were you **eating** when I phoned?*

*Was I eating?*

*Was he eating?*

*Were we eating?*

*Were you eating?*

*Was she eating?*

*Were they eating?*

*Was it eating?*

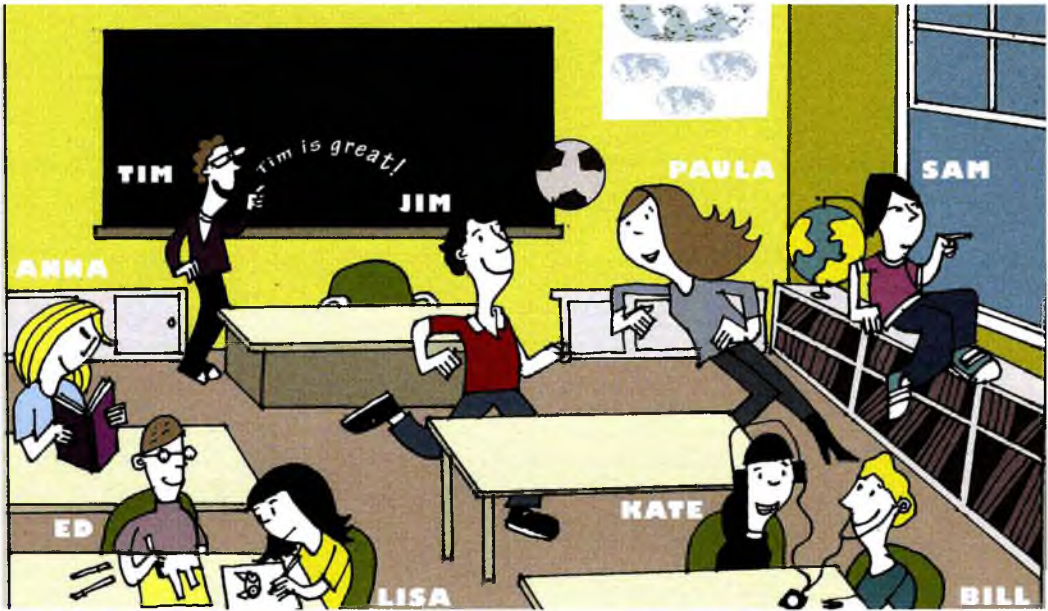
#### Wh- questions

*What **were** you **doing** at 6.00?*

*Who **was** he **talking** to?*

# GRAMMAR 12 PAST CONTINUOUS: ALL FORMS

1 Look at the picture of a classroom at 2.00 yesterday. Complete each sentence about it using a verb from the box.



- |               |                        |                 |                    |
|---------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| play football | <del>read a book</del> | listen to music | write on the board |
| draw pictures | look out of the window |                 |                    |

- 1 Anna ~~was reading a book~~ .....
- 2 Paula and Jim .....
- 3 Tim .....
- 4 Kate and Bill .....
- 5 Sam .....
- 6 Ed and Lisa .....

2 Write negative sentences.

- 1 Anna was drawing pictures. ~~Anna wasn't drawing pictures~~ .....
- 2 Paula and Jim were looking out of the window. ....
- 3 Tim was reading a book. ....
- 4 Kate and Bill were writing on the board. ....
- 5 Sam was playing football. ....
- 6 Ed and Lisa were listening to music. ....

3 Use the prompts to make questions.

- 1 Tim / draw pictures ~~Was Tim drawing pictures?~~ .....
- 2 Kate and Bill / look out of the window .....
- 3 Ed and Lisa / read a book .....
- 4 Paula and Jim / write on the board .....
- 5 Anna / play football .....
- 6 Sam / listen to music .....

## CHECKPOINT 2

### Units 7–12

#### 1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Tom (look) .....*looked*..... out of the window.
- 2 We (take) ..... the bus from the airport to the city centre.
- 3 Laura (read) ..... the book all afternoon.
- 4 Kate (close) ..... all the windows and doors.
- 5 An old friend (come) ..... to see me yesterday.
- 6 I (see) ..... an interesting film last week.

#### 2 Choose the most suitable answer (a–g) for each question (1–7).

- 1 What were you doing when you saw the accident? .....*d*.....
- 2 Did you go to Italy last summer? .....
- 3 What did you do last weekend? .....
- 4 What did you do when you saw the two men? .....
- 5 Did you go to school yesterday? .....
- 6 Did you have a good time at the party? .....
- 7 When did you find the money? .....

- a) Yes, I really enjoyed myself.
- b) I called the police.
- c) Yes, I spent three weeks there.
- d) I was standing at the bus-stop.
- e) While I was cleaning the floor.
- f) I met my friends, and spent time with my family.
- g) No, I was ill. I stayed at home.

#### 3 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use a negative form of a verb from the box.

|       |        |        |      |                 |          |        |     |
|-------|--------|--------|------|-----------------|----------|--------|-----|
| close | forget | get up | like | <del>miss</del> | sit down | go out | win |
|-------|--------|--------|------|-----------------|----------|--------|-----|

- 1 David caught the train. ....*David didn't miss the train.*.....
- 2 Cristina remembered her book. ....
- 3 They stayed at home. ....
- 4 John left the door open. ....
- 5 Terry stayed in bed. ....
- 6 Karen hated Chinese food. ....
- 7 Chris's team lost the match. ....
- 8 I stood up on the bus all the way home. ....

4 Correct each sentence or question.

- 1 Where did you went last night? ..... *Where did you go last night?*.....
- 2 I didn't knew the answer. ....
- 3 Harry maked a lot of noise. ....
- 4 I didn't liked my new teacher. ....
- 5 Took you your medicine? .....
- 6 Helen comed home late last night. ....
- 7 I didn't got up early this morning. ....
- 8 What did you saw at the cinema? .....

5 Read the answers. Write a question for each answer.

- 1 Were *you working last night?*.....  
Last night? No, I wasn't working last night.
- 2 Was .....  
Yes, that's right. Tim was waiting at the bus-stop.
- 3 Was .....  
No, Mary wasn't talking.
- 4 Was .....  
Yes, that's right. Kate was wearing jeans.
- 5 Were .....  
Yes, Ali and Mehmet were playing football.
- 6 Was .....  
Raining? Yes, it was.

6 Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 (you, play) ..... *were you playing*..... tennis with Paolo yesterday?
- 2 (Mary, have) ..... lunch at 1 o'clock.
- 3 (we, watch) ..... basketball all day.
- 4 Who (you, dance) ..... with at the party last night?
- 5 (Some of the boys, look) ..... out of the window.
- 6 (I, walk) ..... home in the rain.

**Think about grammar!**  
**Are the sentences true or false?**  
 1 Past simple always ends in *-ed*.  
 2 Past continuous questions never use *did*.  
 3 *Did* is for negative sentences only.



# 13

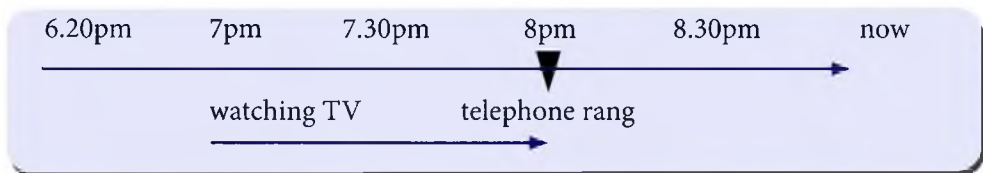
## GRAMMAR

### Past continuous *I was watching TV ...* and past simple *... when Paul phoned.*

We often contrast a continuing situation (*I was watching TV...*) with a sudden event (*... Paul phoned*).

#### ● Example 1

*I was watching TV when Paul phoned.*  
(continuing situation) (sudden event)



*I started watching TV at 7.00. Paul phoned at 8.00.*  
*I was watching TV when Paul phoned.*  
*While I was watching TV, Paul phoned.*

#### ● Example 2

*While I was waiting for the bus, I saw the accident.*  
(continuing situation) (sudden event)



*I started waiting for the bus at 10.00. I saw the accident at 10.30.*  
*I saw the accident when I was waiting for the bus.*  
*I saw the accident while I was waiting for the bus.*  
*I was waiting for the bus when I saw the accident.*  
*When I saw the accident, I was waiting for the bus.*

- We often use **while** with past continuous to mean during the time that something was happening.

#### Questions

*What were you doing when I phoned? I was watching TV when you phoned.*  
*When did you see the accident?*  
*I saw the accident while I was waiting for the bus.*

## GRAMMAR 13 PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST SIMPLE

### 1 Underline the correct verb form in each sentence.

- 1 While I was doing / *did* my homework, I had a good idea.
- 2 Jim *was breaking* / *broke* his leg when he was playing golf.
- 3 When I arrived, I *was going* / *went* into the kitchen.
- 4 We *were finding* / *found* an old box while we were digging in the garden.
- 5 I *was seeing* / *saw* an old friend while I was waiting for the train.
- 6 While I *had* / *was having* a bath, the phone rang.

### 2 Complete each sentence with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Chris (eat) ..... ate ..... spaghetti every day last week.
- 2 When I (come) ..... into the room, two boys (play) ..... football.
- 3 Peter (turn on) ..... the TV, but nothing (happen) .....
- 4 While we (run) ..... in the park, Mary (fall over) .....
- 5 While I (listen) ..... to music, I (hear) ..... the doorbell.
- 6 I (break) ..... my pen while I (do) ..... my homework.

### 3 Read the paragraph. Choose the most suitable word for each space.

Last week my friend Sandy and I (1) ~~A~~. to go to the beach on the bus. While we (2) ..... for the bus, it suddenly (3) ..... to rain. We (4) ..... summer clothes, and we (5) ..... an umbrella. While we (6) ..... there in the rain, Sandy's mother (7) ..... past, so we (8) ..... to her. Luckily, she (9) ..... us, and (10) ..... us home in the car.

- |                    |                 |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 A decided        | B was deciding  | C were deciding |
| 2 A were waiting   | B waiting       | C was waiting   |
| 3 A start          | B was starting  | C started       |
| 4 A was wearing    | B wore          | C were wearing  |
| 5 A weren't having | B had           | C didn't have   |
| 6 A stood          | B were standing | C standed       |
| 7 A drove          | B driving       | C drove         |
| 8 A were waving    | B waved         | C was waving    |
| 9 A noticing       | B noticed       | C didn't notice |
| 10 A took          | B take          | C taked         |

# 14

## GRAMMAR

### Past habits: *used to*    *I used to play tennis.*

We use *used to* when we describe a situation or habit in the past. We often contrast the past with the present.

*I used to drink coffee every morning, but now I drink tea.*

#### Statements

*I used to play tennis.*

*I used to play      he used to play      we used to play, etc.*

#### Negatives

*Sheila didn't use to play basketball.*

*I didn't use to play      she didn't use to play      we didn't use to play, etc.*

#### Questions

*Did they use to play football?*

*Did he use to play?      Did you use to play?      Did they use to play? etc.*

- We can use *used to* with *be*, *have* and with verbs generally in present simple such as *like*, *own* etc.

*Harry used to be the captain of the team.*

*I used to like folk music, but I don't like it any more.*

- There is no present form of *used to*.  
*I used to work in London, but now I work in Manchester.*
- The past simple is also possible in these examples, but *used to* is more common.  
*I had a motorbike when I was younger.*  
*I played tennis, but now I play football.*

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



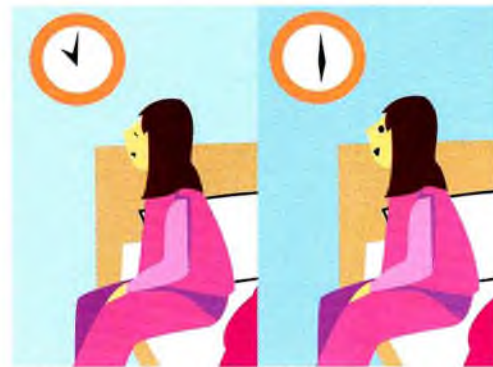
1 David



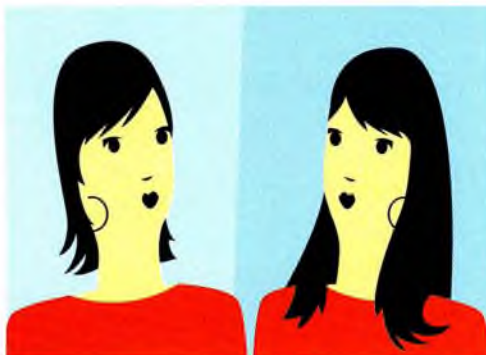
2 Anna



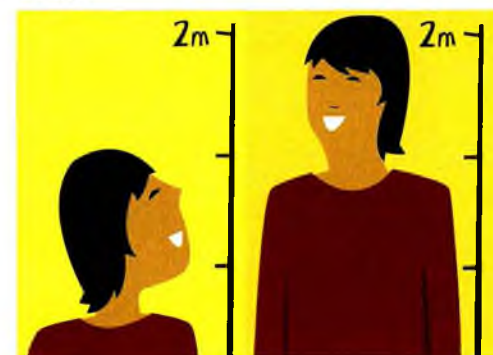
3 Nick



4 Kate



5 Carol



6 Jack

- 1 David / like ice cream / hate it *David used to like ice cream, but now he hates it.*  
.....
- 2 Anna / live in the country / in the city .....
- 3 Nick / walk to school / ride a bike .....
- 4 Kate / get up late / early .....
- 5 Carol / have short hair / long hair .....
- 6 Jack / be short / tall .....

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 2** Look at the table below. Write sentences about the past. Use *used to* and *didn't use to*.

|                              | 200 years ago |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 ride horses                | ✓             |
| 2 drive cars                 | ✗             |
| 3 make their own clothes     | ✓             |
| 4 go to the cinema           | ✗             |
| 5 wash their clothes by hand | ✓             |
| 6 watch TV                   | ✗             |
| 7 keep animals for food      | ✓             |
| 8 use computers              | ✗             |

Two hundred years ago ...

- 1 people (ride) ..... *used to ride* ..... horses.
- 2 they (drive) ..... cars.
- 3 they (make) ..... their own clothes.
- 4 they (go to) ..... the cinema.
- 5 they (wash) ..... their clothes by hand.
- 6 they (watch) ..... TV.
- 7 they (keep) ..... animals for food.
- 8 they (use) ..... computers.

- 3** Write statements, negatives or questions with *used to*.

- 1 Susan / have / a dog? (question)  
~~Did Susan use to have a dog?~~ .....
- 2 people / use / mobile phones (negative)  
 .....
- 3 he / go / swimming (statement)  
 .....
- 4 they / like / jazz music? (question)  
 .....
- 5 Olga's family / live / in Moscow (statement)  
 .....
- 6 we / drink / coffee (negative)  
 .....
- 7 my sister / watch / television (negative)  
 .....
- 8 Tony / work / in a bank? (question)  
 .....

**4 Rewrite each sentence or question so it has the same meaning. Use *used to*.**

- 1 I was in the school tennis team.  
*I used to be in the school tennis team.*
- 2 Sophie had long hair when she was at school.  
.....
- 3 Mary didn't listen when her teachers were speaking.  
.....
- 4 Ricardo got up at 6.00 when he was training for the Olympics.  
.....
- 5 What did you usually do on Saturday evenings?  
.....
- 6 Becky was afraid of dogs when she was a girl.  
.....
- 7 We always gave our teachers presents at the end of term.  
.....
- 8 Did you live next door to Mrs Harrison?  
.....
- 9 My brother wore glasses when he was small.  
.....
- 10 Did Martin learn German at school?  
.....

**5 Complete the sentences with your personal details.**

- 1 I used to eat ..... , but now I don't.
- 2 I used to hate ..... , but now I love it.
- 3 I didn't use to drink ..... , but now I do.
- 4 I used to read ..... , but now I don't.
- 5 I didn't use to watch ..... on television, but now I do.
- 6 I used to get up at ..... on Saturdays, but now I don't.
- 7 I used to play ..... , but now I play .....
- 8 I didn't use to have ..... for breakfast, but now I do.

**6 What did your grandparents and parents use to do?**

*My grandfather used to live in ..... but my dad .....*  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

# 15

## GRAMMAR

### Present perfect: affirmative *I've lost my watch.*

- We use present perfect when we describe a very recent event in the past without an exact time.

*The film **has started**.*

- We often explain a present situation by saying what happened before it. We do not mention an exact time.

*Why are you late? **I've lost** my watch.*

The past action (losing the watch) has a result in the present (I'm late).

- We use the present perfect when we talk about our experiences in the past and do not mention an exact time.

***I've lived** in fifteen different countries.*

- We form the present perfect with have/has + past participle

***I've finished** my homework.*

*Anna **has lost** her watch.*

### Regular verbs

With regular verbs, the past participle is the same as the past simple.

|                         |                        |                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>I have started</i>   | <i>he has started</i>  | <i>we have started</i>   |
| <i>I've started</i>     | <i>he's started</i>    | <i>we've started</i>     |
| <i>you have started</i> | <i>she has started</i> | <i>they have started</i> |
| <i>you've started</i>   | <i>she's started</i>   | <i>they've started</i>   |
|                         | <i>it has started</i>  |                          |
|                         | <i>it's started</i>    |                          |

### Irregular verbs

Each irregular verb has its own past participle. Sometimes the participle is the same as the past simple, sometimes it has a different form.

| <b>Verb</b>  | <b>Past simple</b> | <b>Past participle</b> |
|--------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>eat</i>   | <i>ate</i>         | <i>eaten</i>           |
| <i>leave</i> | <i>left</i>        | <i>left</i>            |
| <i>drink</i> | <i>drank</i>       | <i>drunk</i>           |

- There is a list of irregular verbs on page 248.

## GRAMMAR 15 PRESENT PERFECT: AFFIRMATIVE

### 1 Complete each sentence with *has/have* and a participle from the box.

|        |        |         |          |       |
|--------|--------|---------|----------|-------|
| broken | bought | eaten   | finished | found |
| lost   | taken  | written | happened | left  |

- 1 My dog ..... *has eaten* ..... my sandwich!
- 2 Helen ..... her bag.
- 3 I'm sorry. I ..... your pen.
- 4 Where's my dictionary? Someone ..... it!
- 5 We're too late. The programme .....
- 6 Tina isn't here. She .....
- 7 The police are outside the school! Something awful .....
- 8 I ..... your book! Here it is!
- 9 Jack ..... five letters.
- 10 I ..... some new shoes. Do you like them?

### 2 Complete the sentences with the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Harry (do) ..... *has done* ..... the housework.
- 2 Kate and Bill (find) ..... a new flat.
- 3 Nick (send) ..... an email.
- 4 I (decide) ..... to learn Japanese.
- 5 Sam and Dave (eat) ..... all the sandwiches.
- 6 Carlos (buy) ..... a dog.
- 7 Maria and Helen (start) ..... at a new school.
- 8 Frances (break) ..... her cup.
- 9 I (lose) ..... my umbrella.
- 10 Max (take) ..... the dog for a walk.

### 3 Complete each sentence with the present perfect form of a verb from the box.

|        |      |      |      |                 |       |      |     |       |      |
|--------|------|------|------|-----------------|-------|------|-----|-------|------|
| arrive | copy | have | make | <del>miss</del> | phone | read | see | spend | wash |
|--------|------|------|------|-----------------|-------|------|-----|-------|------|

- 1 Oh no! That's the last bus, and we ..... *have missed* ..... it.
- 2 Carol ..... all the Harry Potter books. She likes them a lot!
- 3 I haven't got any more money. I ..... all of it!
- 4 I ..... an idea! Let's go to Big Burger's!
- 5 Your homework is the same as Jack's. I think you ..... it!
- 6 Maria ..... her hair, and she's looking for the hairdryer.
- 7 Hurry up, Carol. Your taxi ..... It's waiting outside.
- 8 I'm sorry I (not) ..... the travel agent. I've been very busy.
- 9 I ..... all the *Lord of the Rings* films five times.
- 10 Read this again. You ..... some mistakes.



# 16

## GRAMMAR

### Present perfect: negative *I haven't visited China.* and questions *Have you started?*

#### Negatives

*I haven't visited China before. This is the first time.*

*I have not found my car keys. I'm still looking for them.*

*have not = haven't      has not = hasn't*

| Regular                    |                             | Irregular                |                           |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>I haven't started</i>   | <i>we haven't started</i>   | <i>I haven't eaten</i>   | <i>we haven't eaten</i>   |
| <i>you haven't started</i> | <i>they haven't started</i> | <i>you haven't eaten</i> | <i>they haven't eaten</i> |
| <i>he hasn't started</i>   |                             | <i>he hasn't eaten</i>   |                           |
| <i>she hasn't started</i>  |                             | <i>she hasn't eaten</i>  |                           |
| <i>it hasn't started</i>   |                             | <i>it hasn't eaten</i>   |                           |

#### Questions

*Have you started your homework?*

*Yes, I've finished it!*

*Have you ever visited Cairo?*

*Yes, I've been there twice.*

| Regular                  |                           | Irregular              |                         |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Have I started?</i>   | <i>Have we started?</i>   | <i>Have I eaten?</i>   | <i>Have we eaten?</i>   |
| <i>Have you started?</i> | <i>Have they started?</i> | <i>Have you eaten?</i> | <i>Have they eaten?</i> |
| <i>Has he started?</i>   |                           | <i>Has he eaten?</i>   |                         |
| <i>Has she started?</i>  |                           | <i>Has she eaten?</i>  |                         |
| <i>Has it started?</i>   |                           | <i>Has it eaten?</i>   |                         |

#### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 18:** Present perfect and past simple: time expressions

## GRAMMAR 16 PRESENT PERFECT: NEGATIVE AND QUESTIONS

**1** Read Nick's list of 'Things to Do' for his holiday. Write questions about it. Use the words in brackets.



- |                |                                       |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 (hotel)      | <i>Has he booked the hotel?</i> ..... |
| 2 (Tim)        | .....                                 |
| 3 (map)        | .....                                 |
| 4 (suitcase)   | .....                                 |
| 5 (timetable)  | .....                                 |
| 6 (guide book) | .....                                 |
| 7 (ticket)     | .....                                 |
| 8 (clothes)    | .....                                 |

**2** Read Nick's list. Write statements and negative sentences.

- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 (hotel)      | <i>He's booked the hotel.</i> ..... |
| 2 (Tim)        | .....                               |
| 3 (map)        | .....                               |
| 4 (suitcase)   | .....                               |
| 5 (timetable)  | .....                               |
| 6 (guide book) | .....                               |
| 7 (ticket)     | .....                               |
| 8 (clothes)    | .....                               |

**3** Complete this letter. Use the correct verb form of the words in brackets.

Dear Mum and Dad,

We (1) ..... *have enjoyed* ..... (enjoy) our holiday so far. We  
 (2) ..... (not do) any sightseeing. We  
 (3) ..... (spend) a lot of time on the beach.  
 Luckily, it (4) ..... (not rain). Tim  
 (5) ..... (learn) wind-surfing. I  
 (6) ..... (not try) it. I think it's dangerous!  
 (7) ..... (you receive) my other postcards?

Love, Nick

# 17

## GRAMMAR

**Present perfect**    *He's left.*

**and past simple**    *He left at 8.00.*

### Contrast

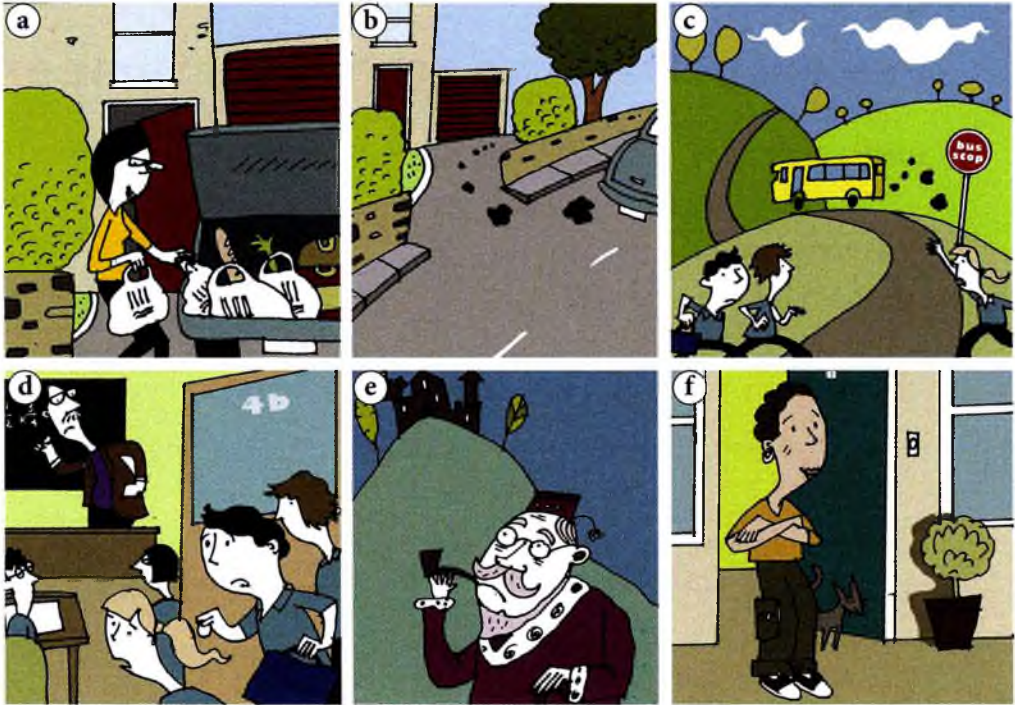
- **Present perfect**                      *Sorry, he isn't here. He's left.*  
We know that this is recent. We do not know when exactly he left.  
**Past simple**                              *Sorry, he isn't here. He left at 8.00.*  
We know exactly when he left.
  
- **Present perfect**                      *Ronaldo **has scored** a goal!*  
We are interested that he has scored! We are not interested in when he did this.  
**Past simple**                              *Ronaldo **scored** a goal in the second minute of the match.*  
We are interested in the time when he scored.
  
- **Present perfect**                      *I've **broken** my pen. Now I can't write.*  
This explains why we can't do something now.  
**Past simple**                              *I **broke** my pen at school in the maths test.*  
This explains what happened, where it happened and when it happened.
  
- **Present perfect**                      *Have you **been** to China?*                      *Yes.*  
This is a question about our experiences in the past.  
**Past simple**                              *When **did** you **go** to China?*                      *I went in 1998.*  
This is a question about exactly when we went to China.

### **been and gone**

*Kate has **been** to school.*    (She went there and came back. She's at home now.)  
*Kate has **gone** to school.*    (She's not at home now. She's at school.)

# GRAMMAR 17 PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST SIMPLE

## 1 Choose the best picture (a-f) for each sentence (1-6).



- 1 I lived there for ten years. ....&.....
- 2 I have lived here for ten years. ....
- 3 Pat has gone shopping. ....
- 4 Pat has been shopping. ....
- 5 We've missed the bus. ....
- 6 We missed the bus. ....

## 2 Underline the correct verb form in each sentence.

- 1 Can I have another book? I've read / read this one.
- 2 I'm not ready. I didn't finish / haven't finished my homework.
- 3 I can't find my wallet. I think I've lost / lost it.
- 4 Did you eat / Have you eaten spaghetti last night?
- 5 Harry left / has left at 10.30.
- 6 Hurry up, Jim! You didn't start / haven't started!
- 7 Did you see / Have you seen the match on TV last night?

## 3 Complete the sentences with the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Where (you go) ..... did you go ..... for your holidays last year?
- 2 I can't play any more. I (just hurt) ..... my foot.
- 3 Jane is a famous writer, and (write) ..... over fifty books.
- 4 Sorry, I (not finish) ..... my letters yet.
- 5 'We had a great party last week.' 'Who (you, invite) ..... ?'
- 6 Where (you, meet) ..... Sam? Was it at the sports centre?
- 7 Peter (not play) ..... basketball for a month.

# 18

## GRAMMAR

# Present perfect and past simple: time expressions

## *ever, just, yet, already, since, for, ago*

### Present perfect

We use the present perfect with:

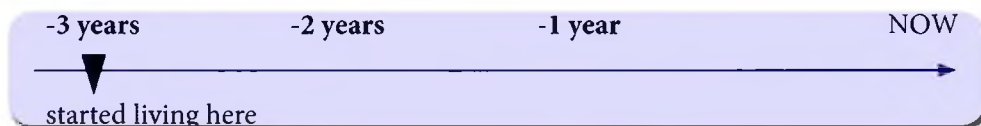
- *ever, never* (any time / not any time)  
*Have you ever seen a lion? I've never seen a lion.*
- *just* (a short time ago)  
*Is Peter here? No, he's just gone out. There he is!*
- *yet* (not finished – with negatives and questions)  
*Have you finished your homework yet? No, I'm still doing it.*
- *already* (finished – with statements)  
*Have a sandwich! No thanks, I've already eaten. I had lunch at 12.00.*
- *since* (a point in time)



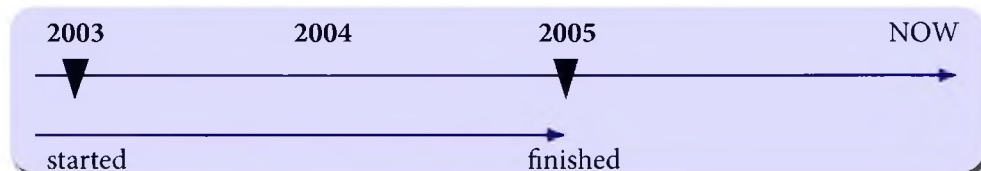
*I've lived in this town since 2008. (I live here now.)*

### Present perfect or past simple

- *for* (a period of time)



*I've lived in this town for three years. (I live here now.)*



*I lived in that flat for two years, but I don't live there now.*

### Past simple

- *ago*  
*I started learning English a year ago.*

## GRAMMAR 18 PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST SIMPLE: TIME EXPRESSIONS

### 1 Match each sentence (1–7) with an explanation (a–g).

- 1 Jim has just written a book. ....*d*.....  
2 Has Jim written a book yet? .....  
3 Jim has already written a book. ....  
4 Jim wrote a book a year ago. ....  
5 Jim has never written a book. ....  
6 Has Jim ever written a book? .....  
7 Jim has written two books since 2006. ....

- a) This is not his first book.  
b) Does Jim write books?  
c) He finished his book last year.  
d) He finished a few days ago.  
e) Jim started writing in 2006 and has written two books between then and now.  
f) Jim doesn't write books.  
g) Has he finished a book?

### 2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Have you ever / *yet* visited Slovenia?  
2 Tom has *for* / just come back from the USA.  
3 I'm not hungry. I've *already* / since eaten.  
4 Jane lived in Greece *since* / for fifteen years.  
5 Brian and Claire got married *ten years ago* / since ten years.  
6 I can't come out. I haven't done my homework *already* / yet.  
7 Mark has worked in Turkey *ago* / since 2008.

### 3 Complete each sentence with a time word from the box.

already    ever    ~~for~~    just    never    since    yet

- 1 Sue has been on the beach .....*for*..... an hour, but she hasn't had a swim yet.  
2 I don't want to see this film. I've ..... seen it.  
3 Have you ..... been to the Greek islands?  
4 Can you wait a moment? I haven't finished .....  
5 Ouch! An insect has ..... bitten me!  
6 George has ..... eaten Chinese food, so this is the first time for him!  
7 Rick has lived in Japan ..... 2008.

## CHECKPOINT 3

### Units 13–18

#### 1 Past continuous or past simple? Correct each sentence.

- 1 When I ~~was arriving~~ at Dan's house, he was waiting outside. .... *arrived* .....
- 2 While we were doing a maths test, the head teacher was coming into the room. ....
- 3 While we swam, it started to rain. ....
- 4 While I was having a bath, the lights were going out. ....
- 5 Debra watched television when the storm began. ....
- 6 While I was walking to the shop I was losing my bag! ....
- 7 What were you doing when I was seeing you yesterday? ....
- 8 I was walking up the stairs when I was hearing the phone. ....

#### 2 Complete each sentence. Use one word in each space.

- 1 Kate has ..... *taken* ..... twenty photos of the children so far.
- 2 Have you ever ..... this book? It's really good.
- 3 Have you ever ..... to Egypt?
- 4 The dog's not hungry. It hasn't ..... its dinner.
- 5 I'm going to bed. I think I've ..... a cold.
- 6 Oh no! I've ..... my bag on the bus.
- 7 Jim has just ..... a new mountain bike. It was very expensive.
- 8 The washing machine has stopped working. I think I've ..... it.

#### 3 Complete each sentence with the past simple or the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets

- 1 Tina isn't here. She (just go) ..... *has just gone* ..... to school.
- 2 What time (you get up) ..... this morning?
- 3 Paul (have) ..... a bad car accident three years ago.
- 4 I (live) ..... in the same house since 2005.
- 5 What (you do) ..... last night?
- 6 Brian (not finish) ..... his work yet.
- 7 Tina (arrive) ..... here in 2008.
- 8 (you see) ..... my watch? I can't find it.

**4 Complete each sentence or question with a time expression.**

- 1 Sam has worked for the same company ..... *for* ..... three years.
- 2 Karen hasn't finished her project .....
- 3 A: What's Madrid like?  
B: I don't know. I have ..... been there.
- 4 I waited at the bus-stop ..... two hours.
- 5 I've ..... had a phone call from my brother in Canada.
- 6 Helen has lived here ..... 2008.
- 7 Have you ..... eaten Chinese food?

**5 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use the words in bold.**

- 1 I last went to the cinema a long time ago. **haven't**  
I ..... *haven't been to the cinema* ..... for a long time.
- 2 Jane rode her bike to school when she was younger. **ride**  
Jane ..... to school.
- 3 Peter is at school. **has**  
Peter ..... to school.
- 4 Tim and Sue played in the garden every day. **used**  
Tim and Sue .....
- 5 How long were you in Turkey? **stay**  
..... in Turkey?
- 6 Joe started living here three years ago. **for**  
Joe ..... three years.
- 7 Is this your first visit to Scotland? **have**  
..... before?

**6 Correct each sentence or question.**

- 1 When ~~have you arrived~~ here? ..... *did you arrive* .....
- 2 What you were doing when I phoned you? .....
- 3 I didn't do the shopping yet. ....
- 4 When I was young I was wearing glasses. ....
- 5 Dan arrived late because he was missing the bus. ....
- 6 Peter, this is Mary. Did you meet before? .....
- 7 I use to get up early every morning. ....

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 We use the present perfect with exact times.
- 2 When we use *for*, *since* and *ago*, we always use the present perfect.
- 3 *Used to* is for things that happened a long time ago.



# 19

## GRAMMAR

### Be going to: plans and predictions

**It's going to rain.**

#### Plans or intentions

When you decide to do something in the future you make a plan or have an intention. A plan can change, so it is not 100% certain.

*Carol has bought her train ticket and booked her course.*

*She is going to study in France next month.* (This is her plan or intention.)

#### Predictions from the situation

Sometimes we can see that something is going to happen.

*Look out! Those books are going to fall on your head.*

#### Statements

*He's going to cook dinner. Linda is going to learn Chinese.*

*Mike's going to run in the Marathon in April.*

*I'm going to cook*

*He's going to cook*

*We're going to cook*

*You're going to cook*

*She's going to cook*

*They're going to cook*

*It's going to cook*

#### Negatives

*Clare isn't going to cook dinner.*

*I'm not going to cook*

*He isn't going to cook*

*We aren't going to cook*

*You aren't going to cook*

*She isn't going to cook*

*They aren't going to cook*

*It isn't going to cook*

#### Yes/No Questions

*Are you going to cook dinner?*

*Am I going to cook?*

*Is he going to cook?*

*Are we going to cook?*

*Are you going to cook?*

*Is she going to cook?*

*Are they going to cook?*

*Is it going to cook?*

#### Wh- questions

*What are you going to do in the summer?*

*When are you going to phone me? Is it going to rain?*

#### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 5:** Present continuous: negative and questions

**Grammar 23:** Present continuous: future use

# GRAMMAR 19 BE GOING TO: PLANS AND PREDICTIONS

1 Look at the pictures. Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

crash    fall    hit    miss    rain    win



1 Careful! You *are going to fall*..

.....



2 I think it .....

.....



3 Look out! You .....

..... the tree!



4 Oh dear, I think he .....

.....



5 Hurry up, we .....

..... the bus.



6 Look! She .....

.....

# ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

## 2 Complete each sentence. Use *going to* and the verb in brackets.

- 1 (you, buy) *Are you going to buy* ..... a new bike?
- 2 Tom (not study) ..... history.
- 3 I (buy) ..... some new shoes.
- 4 (Helen, travel) ..... by train?
- 5 What (buy) ..... at the shops?
- 6 Jim and Dinah (not get) ..... married.
- 7 Sam (take) ..... a holiday.
- 8 What time (you, phone) ..... me?
- 9 Where (we, eat) ..... tonight?
- 10 I (not give) ..... Dave a birthday present!

## 3 Rewrite each sentence or question with *going to*.

- 1 Joe plans to buy a new computer next year.  
*Joe is going to buy a new computer next year.* .....
- 2 We don't plan to play tennis this weekend.  
.....
- 3 Does Nick plan to join the sports club?  
.....
- 4 What are your plans for next summer?  
.....
- 5 Look! That tree is about to fall over!  
.....
- 6 Do you plan to work hard this year?  
.....
- 7 I don't intend to get a new car.  
.....
- 8 The forecast for tomorrow is rain.  
.....
- 9 Do Mike and Pat plan to make sandwiches for the party?  
.....
- 10 I think it's about to snow.  
.....

**GRAMMAR 19 BE GOING TO: PLANS AND PREDICTIONS**

**4 Read Tom's plans for his holiday. Complete the sentences.**

|                  |                                   |              |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Saturday</b>  | <i>arrive at 4.00pm</i>           | <b>NOTES</b> |
| <b>Sunday</b>    | <i>walk around the village</i>    |              |
| <b>Monday</b>    | <i>visit the castle</i>           |              |
| <b>Tuesday</b>   | <i>sit on the beach</i>           |              |
| <b>Wednesday</b> | <i>see the museum</i>             |              |
| <b>Thursday</b>  | <i>climb the mountain</i>         |              |
| <b>Friday</b>    | <i>buy presents at the market</i> |              |

- 1 On Saturday *he's going to arrive at 4.00pm*.....
- 2 ..... on Sunday.
- 3 On Monday .....
- 4 ..... on Tuesday.
- 5 On Wednesday .....
- 6 ..... on Thursday.
- 7 On Friday .....

**5 What are your plans for next summer? Write sentences.**

*Next summer I'm going to have a really good time. I'm going to*.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Will: predictions** *I'll be late.*

A prediction is what you think will happen or won't happen.

*Jim will pass all his exams.*

*It will rain tomorrow.*

*I'll be late tonight.*

*It won't rain tomorrow.*

- We can show that we are not certain with *perhaps*, *probably*, *I think* or *I expect*, or *I don't think*, *I don't expect*. Some of these words show stronger uncertainty.

I don't know

perhaps

I think

probably

I expect

I'm sure

0

10

*Jim will probably pass all his exams.*

*I expect it will rain tomorrow.*

*Perhaps I'll be late tonight.*

*I think he will come to the party.*

*I don't expect it will rain.*

*I don't think it will rain.*

- We can also show that we are certain with *I'm sure*.

*I'm sure it'll rain tomorrow.*

*I'm sure it won't rain tomorrow.*

**Statements**

*They'll leave tomorrow.*

*I will leave tomorrow.*

*Short form: I'll leave tomorrow.*

*I will leave*

*he will leave*

*we will leave*

*you will leave*

*she will leave*

*they will leave*

*it will leave*

**Negatives**

*I won't be at school on Friday.*

*won't = will not*

*I won't leave*

*he won't leave*

*we won't leave*

*you won't leave*

*she won't leave*

*they won't leave*

*it won't leave*

**Questions**

*Will the shop be open tomorrow?*

*Will I leave?*

*Will he leave?*

*Will we leave?*

*Will you leave?*

*Will she leave?*

*Will they leave?*

*Will it leave?*

→ SEE ALSO

**Grammar 69:** Functions 3

**Grammar 70:** Functions 4

**1 Complete each sentence or question. Use *will* or *won't* and the verb in brackets.**

- 1 I (choose) .....~~will choose~~..... the team next week.
- 2 You (not have) ..... a lot of time to answer the questions.
- 3 Mr Jones (be) ..... back at about 7.30.
- 4 Dimitri (not know) ..... the answer.
- 5 I'm sure Jane (like) ..... her birthday present.
- 6 (you give) ..... us any homework on Friday?
- 7 There (not be) ..... any lessons tomorrow.
- 8 (we see) ..... you tomorrow evening?
- 9 I expect lots of people (buy) ..... Alan White's new book.
- 10 I think our team (win) ..... the match.

**2 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold.**

- 1 It'll be cold tomorrow. **I'm sure**  
*I'm sure it will be cold tomorrow.*.....
- 2 We'll win. **I expect**  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 I'll leave now. **I think**  
 .....
- 4 Jim won't be late. **I'm sure**  
 .....
- 5 It won't take long. **I expect**  
 .....
- 6 You won't have any problems. **I'm sure**  
 .....
- 7 You'll enjoy the party. **I think**  
 .....
- 8 They won't decide anything yet. **I imagine**  
 .....
- 9 The train won't be late. **I don't expect**  
 .....
- 10 Jane will cook the dinner. **I imagine**  
 .....

# 21

## GRAMMAR

### **Will: promises, decisions, refusing**

#### ***I'll see you at 7.30.***

We use *will* and *won't* when we make promises or decisions of the moment and when we refuse to do things.

- Meetings and appointments



*I'll see you outside the cinema at 7.30.*

- Promises



*I'll give you the money tomorrow.*

- Decisions of the moment



Waiter: *What would you like?*  
Customer: *I'll have chicken, please.*

- Refusing



*'Come here!' 'No, I won't!'*

#### **→ SEE ALSO**

- Grammar 67: Functions 1**
- Grammar 68: Functions 2**
- Grammar 69: Functions 3**
- Grammar 70: Functions 4**

## GRAMMAR 21 WILL: PROMISES, DECISIONS, REFUSING

### 1 Choose the most suitable reply (a–f) for each statement or question (1–6).

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Bye for now!                | a) Don't worry, I won't forget.       |
| 2 Give me that piece of cake! | b) I'll bring it tomorrow, I promise! |
| 3 Where's your homework?      | c) No, I won't! It's mine.            |
| 4 What would you like to eat? | d) I'll have a sandwich, please.      |
| 5 Where are we going to meet? | e) Bye, I'll see you later.           |
| 6 Please remember to call me. | f) I'll see you outside the cinema.   |

### 2 Look at the pictures and make sentences with *will* or *won't*.



1 Decide to have the giant pizza.

.....  
I'll have the giant pizza.



2 Promise to be home before midnight.

.....



3 Arrange to meet tomorrow at 6.30.

.....



4 Decide to take the red pair.

.....



5 Refuse to do this!

.....



6 Promise to pay your friend back at the end of the week.

.....



## ***will or going to?***

Study these examples.

- **Plan or intention**

*Do you want to go to the cinema this evening?*

*No, I'm going to do lots of work this evening.*

*What are you going to do on Friday evening?*

*I haven't decided yet!*

*Are you going to play basketball tonight?*

*No, I don't think so.*

- **Prediction**

*What time will you be home tonight?*

*I'll probably be late.*

*I'm sure our team will win!*

*I don't expect it'll rain.*

*Here is the weather forecast; tomorrow it will rain in the afternoon.*

*In 2050, everyone in the world will have a computer.*

- **Prediction from clues**

*It's very dark, I think it's going to rain soon.*

- **Promise**

*You haven't done your homework. Where is it?*

*I'll do it this evening, and I'll give it to you tomorrow morning.*

- **Refusing**

*Will you wash the floor?*

*No, I won't! You made it dirty!*

## GRAMMAR 22 WILL OR GOING TO?

1 Tick (✓) the most suitable sentence or question for each picture.



- a) That tree is going to fall! ✓  
b) That tree will fall!



- a) I'll be back!  
b) I'm going to be back!



- a) Are you going to meet your friends today?  
b) Will you meet your friends today?



- a) I'm not going to eat it.  
b) I won't eat it.



- a) The King will arrive at 6.00.  
b) The King is going to arrive at 6.00.



- a) I won't be late tomorrow.  
b) I'm not going to be late tomorrow.

2 Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

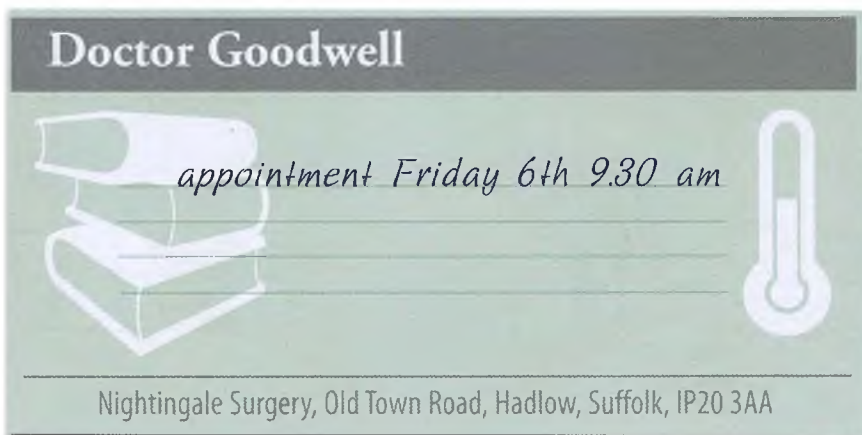
- 1 Jane (have) ..... *is going to have* ..... a baby in the summer.
- 2 Bye for now. Perhaps I (see) ..... you later.
- 3 Next summer I (stay) ..... with my relatives in New York.
- 4 I don't know my plans for the weekend. What (do you) ..... ?
- 5 Jim's tired, so he (have) ..... an early night.
- 6 Helen (move) ..... to London next year.

## Present continuous: future use

We can use the present continuous when we talk about arrangements for the future and give a time. Arrangements are plans, but we are sure they will happen. We often write them in our diaries.

*My parents **are buying** me a bike for my birthday. (I'm sure about this.)*

*I'm **going** to the doctor's on Friday. (It's fixed. I have an appointment.)*



*'Are you **doing** anything on Saturday?' 'I'm **having** a party.'*

*(It's fixed. I've invited my friends.)*

*'What **are** you **doing** tomorrow?' 'I'm **staying** at home and **studying**.'*

### come and go

We generally use present continuous future (not *going to*) with *come* and *go*.

*My brother **is coming** to stay.*

*I'm **going** to Prague tomorrow.*

### going to or present continuous?

*I'm **having** a party on Saturday.*

Fixed arrangement

*I'm **going to have** a party soon.*

Plan/Intention

*Jean **is going to get** her hair cut.*

Plan/Intention

*(She doesn't know when exactly.)*

*Jean **is getting** her hair cut tomorrow.*

Fixed arrangement

*(She has an appointment at the hairdresser's.)*

## GRAMMAR 23 PRESENT CONTINUOUS: FUTURE USE

**1** Look at the diary. Write a sentence for each day. Use the verb in brackets.

|           |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Saturday  | Dentist 4.30                  |
| Sunday    | Stay at home                  |
| Monday    | Basketball 3 p.m.             |
| Tuesday   | Do some shopping in afternoon |
| Wednesday | London                        |
| Thursday  | Party                         |
| Friday    | Jim and Carol - lunch         |

- 1 (see) ..... *I'm seeing the dentist at 4.30 on Saturday.*.....
- 2 (stay) .....
- 3 (play) .....
- 4 (do) .....
- 5 (go) .....
- 6 (have) .....
- 7 (come) .....

**2** Complete each sentence using the present continuous form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 What (you do) ..... *are you doing*..... this evening?
- 2 I (not come) ..... *to school tomorrow.*
- 3 Tina (go) ..... *to Italy next week.*
- 4 (you have) ..... *a party this week?*
- 5 We (not go) ..... *home on the bus after school.*
- 6 (Mrs Simpson teach) ..... *us this afternoon?*
- 7 Catherine and George (not come) ..... *to the meeting.*
- 8 (John go) ..... *to the football match tomorrow?*
- 9 Ann (not work) ..... *on Friday.*
- 10 (you leave) ..... *this afternoon?*

## Future time words

Here are some examples of time words we use when we are talking about the future:

- *tomorrow*  
*I'm leaving for France **tomorrow**.*
- *next week*  
*I'll see you at the meeting **next week**.*
- *soon*  
*Goodbye! I'll see you **soon**.*
- *later, after*  
*I'll phone you **later**.* (no object)  
*I'll phone you after the film.* (object)
- *in a moment, etc.*  
*I'll be back **in a moment**.*  
*I'll see you **in two weeks**.*
- *at (+ the time)*  
*I'll be back **at** 6.00.*

### Revision: contrasts

*In the year 2100, people **will live** on the moon.*  
*Our school trip starts tomorrow. **We're leaving** at six.*  
*I've forgotten my keys and we **can't** get in the house.*  
*What **are we going to do** now?*

Prediction  
 Fixed arrangement  
 Plan/Intention

**1 Choose the most suitable ending to complete each conversation.**

- 1 Are you free tomorrow night? .....**A**.....  
 A Sorry, I'm going to the cinema with Peter.  
 B Sorry, I'll go to the cinema with Peter.  
 C Sorry, I go to the cinema with Peter.
- 2 What are your plans for the holidays? .....  
 A I have a good rest!  
 B Thanks, I'll have a good rest!  
 C I'm going to have a good rest!
- 3 What are the arrangements for the school trip tomorrow? .....  
 A We're meeting outside the front entrance at 8.30.  
 B We'll meet outside the front entrance at 8.30.  
 C We've met outside the front entrance at 8.30.
- 4 Where are you going? I want to talk to you. ....  
 A I'll be back in a moment.  
 B I'm going to be back in a moment.  
 C I'm being back in a moment.
- 5 Are you going to be here on Thursday? .....  
 A No, I leaving on Wednesday afternoon.  
 B No, I going to leave on Wednesday afternoon.  
 C No, I'm leaving on Wednesday afternoon.
- 6 Does your leg still hurt? .....  
 A Yes, I've gone to the doctor's tomorrow.  
 B Yes, I'm going to the doctor's tomorrow.  
 C Yes, I will to the doctor's tomorrow.

**2 Complete each sentence with words from the box.**

later    a minute    ~~tomorrow~~    after    at    in    next year

- 1 What are you doing the day after .....~~tomorrow~~..... ?
- 2 Kate is going to start learning French .....
- 3 Thomas is leaving ..... the morning.
- 4 Rita will be back .....
- 5 The new school will open ..... 8.30.
- 6 I'm just going to the library. I'll see you in .....
- 7 George won't be long. He'll be back ..... lunch.

## CHECKPOINT 4

### Units 19–24

#### 1 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 'Do you have any plans for your birthday?' 'Yes, ~~is~~ a party.'  
A I'll have                      B I'm having
- 'I need some help with the shopping tomorrow.' 'Don't worry, ..... ?'  
A I'll help                      B I'm helping
- What ..... when you go on holiday?  
A will you do                  B are you going to do
- 'Do you want to come to a football match on Saturday?' 'Which teams ..... ?'  
A are playing                  B are going to play
- Don't carry all those heavy books. Some of the children ..... you.  
A will help                      B are going to help
- The doctor is on his way. He ..... in fifteen minutes.  
A will be here                  B is being
- Good news. Ann ..... a baby.  
A will have                      B is going to have
- I'm sorry I can't come to the lesson tomorrow. .... my dad in hospital.  
A I'll visit                      B I'm visiting

#### 2 Complete each sentence with the present continuous form of the verb in brackets. Then tick (✓) the sentences which refer to the future.

- Next summer Kate (spend) ..... *is spending* ..... a month in France. ✓
- Hurry up, Ali. Everyone (wait) ..... for you.
- (you do) ..... anything on Friday? Do you want to come to a party?
- Helen (read) ..... in bed at the moment.
- We (go) ..... to the cinema this evening.
- I can't answer the phone. I (have) ..... a bath.
- What (you do) ..... later? Do you want to come for a walk?
- David (leave) ..... tomorrow. Have you said goodbye to him?

#### 3 Complete each sentence with a word from the box. More than one answer may be possible.

|    |    |       |    |      |          |         |
|----|----|-------|----|------|----------|---------|
| at | in | later | on | this | tomorrow | tonight |
|----|----|-------|----|------|----------|---------|

- I'll be late *tonight* but I'll be home before midnight.
- Can you wait, please? I'll be ready ..... a minute.
- Don't worry, I'll be here ..... 7.00.

- 4 I've finished now. I'll be back ..... afternoon.
- 5 It's cold today, but it'll be warmer ..... .
- 6 Bye for now. I'll see you ..... .
- 7 There won't be any lessons ..... Monday.

**4 Correct each sentence or question.**

- 1 We'll go to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?  
~~...We're going to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?...~~
- 2 Look out! That car will crash!  
 .....
- 3 Bye for now! I'm going to see you tomorrow.  
 .....
- 4 Sorry I can't meet you. I will go to the doctor's.  
 .....
- 5 Have you heard the weather forecast? It's raining tomorrow.  
 .....
- 6 I've bought my ticket. I'll leave tomorrow.  
 .....

**5 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Tina will definitely be here at / on 6.00.
- 2 Our new sports centre will be ready *next year* / *the next year*.
- 3 Hurry up! The bus will be here *later* / *soon*.
- 4 I'll see you *after* / *later* the lesson.
- 5 Are you doing anything *at night* / *tonight*?
- 6 I won't be long. I'll be ready *after* / *in* a minute.
- 7 Everything will be different *at* / *in* the year 3500!

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 There is only one way of talking about the future in English.
- 2 The present continuous is for fixed arrangements.
- 3 *Won't* means *will not*.



## Reported speech *She said that she was leaving.* and past perfect *I had started*

### What is reported speech?

Direct speech is the exact words that someone says. We can put *he/she said* before or after these words. We use speech marks to show the words they said.

*'I'm leaving at six,' she said.*      *He said, 'Ok, I'll see you here tomorrow.'*

Indirect or reported speech is when someone tells us what another person said. We can put *he/she said that* before the reported words. We can leave out *that*. We do not use speech marks.

*She said (that) she was leaving at six.*      *She said she was leaving at six.*

### Tense changes

When we use a past tense reporting verb (eg *said*) we change the tenses that follow.

- Present simple to past simple

*'Tim **wants** some coffee.'*      *He said (that) Tim **wanted** some coffee.*

*'Tim **is** late.'*      *He said (that) Tim **was** late.*

- Present continuous to past continuous

*'I'm **washing my** hair.'*      *She said (that) she **was washing her** hair.*

Note the change of pronoun from *my* to *her*.

- Present perfect to past perfect

*'Helen **has lost** her wallet.'*      *He said (that) Helen **had lost** her wallet.*

- *will* to *would*

*'I'll be late.'*      *She said (that) **she would** be late.*

- Past simple to past perfect

*'Kate **took my** keys.'*      *He said (that) Kate **had taken his** keys.*

- Words that describe people, time and place may also change in reported speech.

*'I'll see **you here tomorrow**,' he said.*

*He said he would see **her there the following day**.*

### Past perfect

Forming the past perfect: had + past participle

*Had = 'd (I'd started, he'd started etc.)*

*I had started*

*he had started*

*we had started*

*you had started*

*she had started*

*they had started*

*it had started*

## GRAMMAR 25 REPORTED SPEECH AND PAST PERFECT

### 1 Change each sentence to direct speech.

- |    |                                       |                                 |             |
|----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| 1  | She said that she was leaving at six. | .....'I'm leaving at six.'..... | she said.   |
| 2  | He said Peter often went fishing.     | .....                           | he said.    |
| 3  | She said she would be back later.     | .....                           | she said.   |
| 4  | I said that I had just seen Mark.     | .....                           | I said.     |
| 5  | Alan said that they had left at 6.00. | .....                           | Alan said.  |
| 6  | Helen said that she was working.      | .....                           | Helen said. |
| 7  | I said that we were late.             | .....                           | I said.     |
| 8  | He said he would phone back.          | .....                           | he said.    |
| 9  | David said that he felt all right.    | .....                           | David said. |
| 10 | She said she loved ice-cream.         | .....                           | she said.   |

### 2 Change each sentence to reported speech.

- 1 'I'm leaving,' she said.  
She said ..... (that) she was leaving.....
- 2 'I saw the film on Monday,' Tom said.  
Tom said .....
- 3 'I've missed the bus,' Maria said.  
Maria said .....
- 4 'We live in Marsden Street,' they said.  
They said .....
- 5 'I'll phone at 6.00,' Anna said.  
Anna said .....
- 6 'I'm having a good time,' said Carol.  
Carol said .....
- 7 'We're arriving at 9.00,' they said.  
They said .....
- 8 'I forgot to do my work,' said Al.  
Al said .....
- 9 'I'm wrong,' he said.  
He said .....
- 10 'I've hurt my arm,' said Harry.  
Harry said .....

## Passive 1 *a lot of money is spent*

When we make an active sentence passive, the object becomes the subject. We do this when we want to put information at the beginning of the sentence because it is more important.

*A lot of money is spent in London by tourists.* (*A lot of money* is important)

*Tourists spend a lot of money in London.* (*Tourists* is important).

We use the passive more in writing and in formal speech.

### Passive forms

#### ● Present simple

|                   |                    |             |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>is started</i> | <i>are started</i> | (regular)   |
| <i>is eaten</i>   | <i>are eaten</i>   | (irregular) |

Active

*Archaeologists often discover ancient coins.*

Passive

*Ancient coins **are** often **discovered** by archaeologists.*

#### ● will

|                        |             |
|------------------------|-------------|
| <i>will be started</i> | (regular)   |
| <i>will be eaten</i>   | (irregular) |

Active

*They will finish the new road next year.*

Passive

*The new road **will be finished** next year.*

#### ● Present perfect

|                         |                          |             |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| <i>has been started</i> | <i>have been started</i> | (regular)   |
| <i>has been eaten</i>   | <i>have been eaten</i>   | (irregular) |

Active

*Your cat has eaten my pet mouse!*

Passive

*My pet mouse **has been eaten** by your cat!*

#### ● Past simple

|                    |                     |             |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <i>was started</i> | <i>were started</i> | (regular)   |
| <i>was eaten</i>   | <i>were eaten</i>   | (irregular) |

Active

*The whole class wrote the play.*

Passive

*The play **was written** by the whole class.*

**1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.**

- 1 Last year more than a million cars were stolen / are stolen.
- 2 Helen *has decided* / *has been decided* to visit China.
- 3 America *visited* / *was visited* by the Vikings.
- 4 The police *have not found* / *have not been found* the missing dog.
- 5 More interesting facts *are discovered* / *are discover* every year.
- 6 The basketball team *is chosen* / *chooses* by the captain.
- 7 The next meeting *will hold* / *will be held* on 14 December.

**2 Complete each sentence in the passive.**

- 1 The police arrested fifteen people.  
Fifteen people ..... were arrested ..... by the police.
- 2 They have found little Jimmy safe and well.  
Little Jimmy ..... safe and well.
- 3 We plant hundreds of trees every year.  
Hundreds of trees ..... every year.
- 4 We will sell most tickets on the day of the match.  
Most tickets ..... on the day of the match.
- 5 They took the injured people to hospital.  
The injured people ..... to hospital.
- 6 They have discovered a new planet.  
A new planet .....

**3 Rewrite each sentence in the passive. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 They built the bridge in 2006.  
The bridge was built in 2006.
- 2 A dog has eaten my sandwich!  
.....
- 3 They'll deliver the letter tomorrow.  
.....
- 4 They have cancelled our train.  
.....
- 5 One of the students broke a window in the classroom.  
.....
- 6 People eat millions of bars of chocolate every day!  
.....

## Passive 2: agent *Peter was kidnapped by aliens.*

### by + agent

This tells us who does the action.

*Peter was kidnapped **by aliens** from another galaxy.*

In this sentence; who did it = aliens.

### with + agent

This tells us what was used to do the action.

*The door was opened **with a special key**.*

In this sentence; what was used = a special key.

### Without an agent

An agent is not always necessary. The agent may be unknown, not important or obvious, or we may want to be impersonal and not say who did the action.

- **Agent unknown**

*The window was broken last night.*

We do not know who broke it.

- **Agent not important**

*The castle was built in the 18th century.*

We are interested in the date, but not in the builder.

- **Agent obvious**

*The man was arrested and taken to prison.*

It is obvious that he was arrested by the police.

*He was arrested **by a tall, thin policeman with red hair**.*

In this case, the policeman who arrested him is interesting.

- **Impersonal sentence**

*The match has been cancelled.*

The person or people who decided to cancel the match are not named.

*born* is always passive

*Jim was **born** in Australia.*

- A verb may be used in the passive in one language, but not in another. Check in a dictionary.



**1 Rewrite each sentence using *with* or *by*. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 A friend gave Tina a lift to school.  
Tina was given a lift to school by a friend.....
- 2 Tom Smooth will play the part of Hamlet.  
The part of Hamlet .....
- 3 They used a screwdriver to open the window.  
The window .....
- 4 A team of archaeologists has found an ancient city.  
An ancient city .....
- 5 A ball broke the classroom window.  
The classroom window .....
- 6 A Japanese millionaire bought the painting.  
The painting .....
- 7 Howard Carter discovered the tomb of Tutankhamun in 1922.  
The tomb .....
- 8 Millions of people enjoy Susan's books.  
Susan's books .....
- 9 Heavy traffic causes a lot of pollution.  
A lot of pollution .....

**2 Change each sentence to the passive. Do not use the words underlined.**

- 1 Workers build thousands of new houses every year.  
.....  
Thousands of new homes are built every year.....
- 2 The two teams will play the match on Sunday.  
.....
- 3 Nowadays people cut down many trees for no reason.  
.....
- 4 The police asked Jim to go to the police station.  
.....
- 5 Someone has stolen my bike.  
.....
- 6 People delivered our new washing-machine yesterday.  
.....
- 7 Three masked men kidnapped the bank manager.  
.....
- 8 A firm of builders will rebuild the museum next year.  
.....

## Imperatives *Stand up!*

We use imperatives to give orders, instructions and directions. They are also used to give advice in informal English. We do not use the imperative to make polite requests.

### Orders

We give an order when we tell someone to do something.

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Stand up!</i>      | <i>Stop talking!</i> |
| <i>Stop!</i>          | <i>Don't stop!</i>   |
| <i>Listen!</i>        | <i>Don't listen!</i> |
| <i>Go away!</i>       | <i>Come back!</i>    |
| <i>Sit down!</i>      | <i>Come here!</i>    |
| <i>Go over there!</i> |                      |

### Instructions

Instructions tell us how to do something.

*Press escape to cancel.*

*Choose the most suitable word for each space.*

### Directions

Directions are instructions for finding places.

*Turn right at the bank.*

*Go straight on.*

### Informal advice

In some informal situations (e.g. with good friends) we can use the imperative to give advice or make suggestions.

*Don't buy that one.*

*Come and see us some time!*

*Sit down, you look tired!*

**1 Write an instruction for each situation. Use a verb from the box.**

close    come    stop    open    sit    lend    take    ~~turn off~~

- 1 A young child is reading in bed late at night. His mother says to him:  
*Turn off the light!*.....
- 2 A man's dog is running away. The man shouts at the dog:  
 .....
- 3 It is the first class of the day and the students have their books on their tables.  
 The teacher says:  
 .....
- 4 The front door of the house is open. The father says to his son:  
 .....
- 5 Lots of students are standing up in a class. The teacher says:  
 .....
- 6 You are going to the cinema with some friends. Your sister is bored.  
 You say to her:  
 .....
- 7 You are talking to your friend in class. The teacher says:  
 .....
- 8 Your friend asks where the disco is. You know it's in the next street on the left.  
 You say:  
 .....

**2 Write the opposite.**

- 1 Stand up! *Sit down!*.....
- 2 Go away!.....
- 3 Turn on the light!.....
- 4 Start work!.....
- 5 Open the window!.....
- 6 Go to sleep!.....
- 7 Pull the door!.....
- 8 Get off the bus!.....

**3 Complete the sentences. Use one word in each space.**

- 1 Please .....*sit*..... down! I want to start the lesson.
- 2 I don't want to talk to you! Please ..... away.
- 3 ..... here, please. I want to talk to you.
- 4 This computer is easy to use. Just ..... it on, and it's ready.
- 5 ..... please! Silence in the library!
- 6 ..... left at the end of the road, and the station is in front of you.
- 7 ..... the plate! It's very hot!
- 8 I'll see you later. .... for me outside the cinema.



## Gerunds *Jogging is good fun!*

The gerund is the noun form of the verb, ending in *-ing*. We can use it as a subject or an object.

- **Subject**

*Jogging is good fun!*

*Cycling is good exercise.*

*Speaking is forbidden during the examination.*

*Cycling is not allowed on the pavement.*

- **Object**

*Do you like **jogging**?*

*Are you interested in **cycling**?*

*Do you like **camping**?*

*I love **studying**!*

*I can't stand **getting up** early.*

### Form

For spelling rules see also Grammar 4.

| <b>Verb</b>  | <b>Gerund</b>  | <b>Verb</b>  | <b>Gerund</b>   |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>read</i>  | <i>reading</i> | <i>eat</i>   | <i>eating</i>   |
| <i>run</i>   | <i>running</i> | <i>swim</i>  | <i>swimming</i> |
| <i>cycle</i> | <i>cycling</i> | <i>write</i> | <i>writing</i>  |
| <i>play</i>  | <i>playing</i> | <i>pray</i>  | <i>praying</i>  |
| <i>cry</i>   | <i>crying</i>  | <i>fly</i>   | <i>flying</i>   |

→ **SEE ALSO**

**Grammar 4:** Present continuous

**1 Complete each sentence with a gerund (-ing). Use the verb in brackets.**

- 1 Kate is good at (run) ..... running .....
- 2 (take) ..... a long walk is relaxing.
- 3 What do you think of (collect) ..... stamps?
- 4 (eat) ..... too much isn't healthy.
- 5 All my friends like (play) ..... basketball.
- 6 (shout) ..... at people is rude!
- 7 Is Harry interested in (sail) ..... ?
- 8 (cross) ..... the road here is dangerous.
- 9 Do you feel like (go) ..... to the cinema?
- 10 (jog) ..... is good for you.

**2 Change each sentence so that it starts with a gerund (-ing).**

- 1 It's tiring to study late at night.  
Studying late at night is tiring......
- 2 It's hard to get up early.  
.....
- 3 It takes time to learn a language.  
.....
- 4 You are forbidden to park here.  
.....
- 5 It's interesting to visit other countries.  
.....
- 6 You are not allowed to talk.  
.....
- 7 It's wrong to copy other people!  
.....
- 8 It's relaxing to listen to music.  
.....

**3 Complete each sentence using the gerund (-ing) form of a verb in the box, and your own ideas.**

~~drink~~ listen read get up play collect travel run write watch

- 1 Drinking lemonade is not allowed in the classroom.
- 2 ..... is a good way to relax.
- 3 ..... is a good way to learn a language.
- 4 ..... is bad idea, in my opinion!
- 5 ..... doesn't interest me very much.
- 6 ..... costs a lot of money.

# 30

## GRAMMAR

### Contractions *I'm, you're, he's*

When we speak we often shorten words like *am, are, have, has, had, would* in verb forms (auxiliary or 'helping' verbs). When we write these short forms (contractions) we put an apostrophe (') to show that letters are missing. We also shorten *not* to *n't*.

#### Contractions with *be*

|             |                |              |               |              |               |                 |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>I am</i> | <i>you are</i> | <i>he is</i> | <i>she is</i> | <i>it is</i> | <i>we are</i> | <i>they are</i> |
| <i>I'm</i>  | <i>you're</i>  | <i>he's</i>  | <i>she's</i>  | <i>it's</i>  | <i>we're</i>  | <i>they're</i>  |

*I'm leaving tomorrow.*

*Jack's going home in a moment.*

#### ● Negative

We can say *he/she/it isn't* or *he's/she's/it's not*; *you/we/they aren't* or *you're/we're/they're not*.

#### Contractions with *have*

|               |                 |               |                |                |                  |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>I have</i> | <i>you have</i> | <i>he has</i> | <i>she has</i> | <i>we have</i> | <i>they have</i> |
| <i>I've</i>   | <i>you've</i>   | <i>he's</i>   | <i>she's</i>   | <i>we've</i>   | <i>they've</i>   |

*I've eaten your sandwiches.*

*Anna's left her books at school.*

#### ● *he's* and *she's* = *he has, she has* or *he is, she is*.

#### ● With the modal *have to* we do not make contractions.

*I have to leave. (no contraction possible)*

#### ● Negative

We can say *I/you/we/they haven't* or *I've/you've/we've/they've not*; *he/she/it hasn't* or *he's/she's/it's not*.

#### Contractions with other auxiliaries

|                      |  |                                     |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>can and could</i> | <i>cannot</i><br><i>can't</i>  | <i>could not</i><br><i>couldn't</i> |
| <i>do</i>            | <i>do not</i><br><i>don't</i>  | <i>does not</i><br><i>doesn't</i>   |
| <i>will</i>          | <i>will not</i><br><i>won't</i>  | <i>shall not</i><br><i>shan't</i>   |
| <i>would</i>         | <i>I would / you would / he would etc.</i><br><i>I'd / you'd / he'd etc.</i> | <i>would not</i><br><i>wouldn't</i> |

*Id*, etc. can also be a contraction for *I had* in the past perfect.

**1 Write the full form of the words underlined.**

- 1 It's very cold today. .... it is .....
- 2 I'll be back tomorrow. ....
- 3 What's the time? .....
- 4 Don't worry. It won't rain. ....
- 5 I can't see the blackboard. ....
- 6 My bike! It's been stolen. ....
- 7 If I were you, I'd leave. ....
- 8 Jane's got two sisters. ....

**2 Write each sentence with contractions.**

- 1 I will not be home early. .... I won't be home early. .....
- 2 Who is coming to your party? .....
- 3 We are interested in football. ....
- 4 I would not do that if I were you. ....
- 5 Paula could not lift the chair. ....
- 6 They have sent me a letter. ....
- 7 Helen has got a dog. ....
- 8 It is very cold today. ....

**3 Correct the sentences. Add apostrophes if necessary.**

- 1 Its time for the news. ....
- 2 Ive decided to buy some boots. ....
- 3 Whose books are these? Are they yours? .....
- 4 Sues borrowed my paints. ....
- 5 This new boats ours. Its got sails and oars. ....
- 6 I think the dogs hurt one of its legs. ....
- 7 These are my photos. Id like to see yours. ....
- 8 My names Toby. Whats yours? .....

**4 Write each sentence with contractions.**

- 1 If I was ill, I would not go. .... If I was ill, I wouldn't go. .....
- 2 I do not know where he has gone. ....
- 3 You have not done it yet. ....
- 4 I will see you when you are back. ....
- 5 Jane has not finished her homework. ....
- 6 We were not ready so we could not begin. ....
- 7 If you are nervous, do not worry. ....

## CHECKPOINT 5

### Units 25–30

#### 1 Change each sentence to reported speech.

- 1 'I'll be late,' said Jim.  
Jim said .....
- 2 'Kate knows the answer,' said Bill.  
Bill said .....
- 3 'Mary is leaving at 8.00,' said Alan.  
Alan said .....
- 4 'I can't find the keys,' said Dave.  
Dave said .....
- 5 'The bus is going to be late!' said Mark.  
Mark said .....
- 6 'I've lost my books,' said Mr Green.  
Mr Green said .....
- 7 'I'm ready!' said Tina.  
Tina said .....

#### 2 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 The window has been broken / was been broken.
- 2 The match will played / will be played on Monday, not Sunday.
- 3 Tom's new book is published / publishes by Smith and Co.
- 4 The book was filmed / was film in 2007.
- 5 Some fingerprints were find / were found on the gun.
- 6 The new swimming pool will been opened / will be opened tomorrow.
- 7 TV programmes are often changed / are often change at the last minute.
- 8 An ancient tomb has been discovered / is been discovered.

#### 3 Underline the unnecessary words in each sentence. Not all sentences contain unnecessary words.

- 1 The car was stolen by someone.
- 2 This photo was taken by a famous photographer.
- 3 The book was written by a writer in the 18th century.
- 4 My cheese was eaten by mice.
- 5 Three men have been arrested by the police.
- 6 My suitcase has been opened by someone.
- 7 The bikes are produced by workers in our Nottingham factory.
- 8 Millions of newspapers are read by people every day.

**4 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 We waste a lot of water.  
A lot of ..... *water is wasted.* .....
- 2 They have introduced a new law.  
A new law .....
- 3 They will open the new sports centre next week.  
The .....
- 4 A falling tree injured three people.  
Three people .....
- 5 Someone has stolen my wallet!  
My wallet .....
- 6 Someone will meet you at the airport.  
You .....
- 7 A French person teaches my sister.  
My sister .....

**5 Complete the sentences. Use one word in each space.**

- 1 Please come into the room and ..... *sit* ..... down.
- 2 ..... books in a foreign language is a good way to learn.
- 3 Stop bothering me and ..... away!
- 4 ..... right at the church, then go straight on.
- 5 ..... is not allowed in the examination room.
- 6 ..... letters takes a long time, so I usually phone people.
- 7 ..... up early in the morning can be difficult!
- 8 ..... park outside this building. It is forbidden.

**6 Write the contractions in full.**

- 1 They're building a new cinema. .... *They are* .....
- 2 We've forgotten our books. ....
- 3 It's a nice day today. ....
- 4 I won't be late. ....
- 5 It's started to rain. ....
- 6 I'd like some tea, please. ....
- 7 Jim doesn't live here. ....
- 8 Mary's broken her arm. ....

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 A passive sentence has the same meaning as an active sentence.
- 2 Contractions are not used in formal writing.
- 3 The gerund is for continuous activities.

## Zero conditional *If I have a cold, I stay at home.* and conditional 1 *If we miss the bus, we'll be late.*

### Zero conditional

Some *if* sentences describe what always or usually happens, or give instructions.

- **Things that usually or always happen**

In this type of sentence we use the present simple in both clauses.

| <i>clause 1</i>             | <i>clause 2</i>       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>If + present simple,</i> | <i>present simple</i> |

*If I have a cold, I (usually/always) **stay** at home.*

- **Instructions in situations**

In this type of sentence we use the present simple after *if ...*, and an imperative in the other clause.

| <i>clause 1</i>             | <i>clause 2</i>   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>If + present simple,</i> | <i>imperative</i> |

*If you feel tired, **have** a rest.*

### Conditional 1: real situations

Conditional sentences describe possible situations and their results. In 'real situations' we are certain that something will happen if someone does something.

We use the present simple after *if ...*, and *will* in the other clause.

| <i>clause 1</i>             | <i>clause 2</i> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>If + present simple,</i> | <i>will</i>     |

*If we **miss** the bus, we'll **be** late.    If we **don't catch** the bus, we'll **be** late.*

*If we **catch** the bus, we **won't be** late.    If we **don't miss** the bus, we **won't be** late.*

- This type of *if*-sentence is often a warning.

*If you **ride** your bike like that, you'll **fall** off!*

### Reversing the clauses

We can reverse the clauses in *if* sentences and conditional sentences. Note the use of commas.

*If you **miss** the bus, your teacher **will be** angry.    (comma used)*

*Your teacher **will be** angry **if** you **miss** the bus.    (no comma)*

→ **SEE ALSO**

**Grammar 32: Conditional 2**

**Grammar 28: Imperatives**

**1 Underline the correct word(s) in each sentence.**

- 1 If you press / will press that button, a bell rings.
- 2 If you wear your coat tomorrow, you aren't / won't be cold.
- 3 If I feel / will feel tired, I go to bed early.
- 4 If you will come / come back next week, David will be here.
- 5 If it rains / will rain tomorrow, we'll stay at home.
- 6 If I go to university when I am older, I'll work / work very hard.

**2 Complete each sentence. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- 1 If Jack (not leave) ..... doesn't leave ..... now, he (miss) ..... will miss ..... his bus.
- 2 If Helen (work) ..... hard, she (pass) ..... her exams.
- 3 If it (rain) ....., we (go) ..... into a shop.
- 4 If Mary (not practise) ..... her French, she (not improve) .....
- 5 If it (rain) ..... tomorrow, we (not go) ..... swimming.
- 6 If George (come) ..... late, the teacher (be) ..... angry.
- 7 If I (see) ..... Joe tomorrow, I (tell) ..... him your news.

**3 Read the situation, then complete each sentence.**

- 1 A friend wants you to play basketball in the classroom. You are worried about breaking the window. You say:  
If we ~~play basketball in the classroom, we'll break the window~~.....
- 2 You want to leave the party now, because you are worried about missing the last bus. You say:  
If we .....
- 3 Your dog bites people. A friend wants to touch the dog, so you say:  
If you .....
- 4 It's raining. You want to stand under a tree, because you are worried about getting wet. You say:  
If we .....
- 5 You want to take the bus to the city centre. Your friend wants to walk. You are worried about getting tired. You say:  
If we .....
- 6 You are walking to school with a friend. You don't want to be late. You suggest hurrying. You say:  
If we don't .....



## Conditional 2 *If I knew the answer, I would tell them.*

### Imaginary conditions

Conditional sentences describe possible situations and their results. In 'imaginary situations' we imagine a different situation now, and a different result.

In this type of sentence, we use the past simple after *if ...*, and *would/wouldn't* in the other clause.

| clause 1                 | clause 2            |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>If + past simple,</i> | <i>would + verb</i> |

*If I knew the answer, I would tell you.*

In the real situation, I do not know the answer.

- The past simple here **does not** describe past time. It imagines a different present time.

*If I had a helicopter, I'd fly to school.*

*If I landed my helicopter at school, my teacher wouldn't like it!*

### ***If I were ... or If I was ...***

- *If I were ...* is used in written/formal English.
  - If I were a rock star, I'd live in New York.*
  - If I were the head teacher, I'd give the class a holiday!*
- *If I was ...* is possible in informal speech.
  - If I was a rock star, I'd live in New York.*
  - If I was rich, I'd buy you a drink!*
- We can use *If I were you...* to give advice.
  - A: *I've got a terrible headache!*
  - B: *If I were you, I'd take an aspirin.*
  
  - A: *I feel really tired.*
  - B: *If I were you, I wouldn't go to bed late!*

**1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Use the past simple form or *would*.**

- 1 If I (have) ..... *had* ..... the time, I (go) ..... *would go* ..... to the cinema more often.
- 2 If I (find) ..... some money, I (take) ..... it to the police.
- 3 If I (have) ..... a dog, I (take) ..... it for a walk every day.
- 4 If I (meet) ..... an alien, I (try) ..... to talk to it.
- 5 If everyone (speak) ..... Spanish, nobody (learn) ..... English!
- 6 If I (see) ..... a snake, I (run ) ..... away.

**2 Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.**

met    robbed    had    slept    were    won    ~~would ask~~    would be  
 would buy    would catch    would fly    would visit

- 1 If I ..... *met* ..... a famous person, I ..... *would ask* ..... them some questions.
- 2 If I ..... a helicopter, I ..... to school.
- 3 If I ..... a bank, the police ..... me.
- 4 If I ..... a lot of money, I ..... presents for my family.
- 5 If I ..... in the classroom, my teacher ..... very angry!
- 6 If I ..... an astronaut, I ..... other planets.

**3 Read the situations. Complete the advice. Use the verb in brackets.**

- 1 Your friend has bad toothache.  
 If I *were you*, I *would go to the* ..... dentist's. (go)
- 2 Your friend can't decide whether to go to the cinema, or stay at home.  
 If ..... cinema. (go)
- 3 Your friend wants to buy a new bike, but hasn't got any money.  
 If ..... your parents. (ask)
- 4 Your friend is having problems studying.  
 If ..... teacher. (talk to)
- 5 Your friend always feels tired in class, and sometimes falls asleep!  
 If ..... bed early. (go)
- 6 Your friend wants to take more exercise and be fit.  
 If ..... a sports club. (join)

## Conditionals 1 and 2 *If you fall, you'll hurt yourself.*

*If you fell, you'd hurt yourself.*

### Situation 1

- **Conditional 1**

You are on the roof of a block of flats. You are very near the edge. This is dangerous!

I say:

*If you fall, you'll hurt yourself.*



Conditional 1

- **Conditional 2**

We are walking past a block of flats, looking up at the roof. There is no danger. I imagine a dangerous situation and say:

*If you fell, you'd hurt yourself!*



Conditional 2

### Situation 2

- **Conditional 1**

It is a cold day in winter. We are going to leave the house. I have got a coat for you. I say:

*If you wear this coat, you won't be cold.*



Conditional 1

- **Conditional 2**

It is a cold day in winter. We are outside. I am wearing a coat. I am warm. You are not wearing a coat. You are cold. I say:

*If you wore a coat, you wouldn't be cold!*



Conditional 2

1 Tick (✓) the best sentence for each picture.



- a) If we miss the bus we'll be late for school. ✓
- b) If we missed the bus, we would be late for school.



- a) If you drop that, it'll break!
- b) If you dropped that, it would break.



- a) If I have a helicopter, I'll fly to work.
- b) If I had a helicopter, I'd fly to work.



- a) If he eats all that ice cream, he'll be sick.
- b) If he ate all that ice cream, he'd be sick.



- a) If we live at the North Pole, we'll feel cool.
- b) If we lived at the North Pole, we'd feel cool.



- a) If I'm taller, I'll be in the team.
- b) If I were taller, I'd be in the team.

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 2 Complete each sentence. Use either conditional 1 or conditional 2.

- 1 Sue doesn't ride a bike to school, because she doesn't have one.  
If Sue *had a bike, she would ride it to school*.....
- 2 Chris will pass his exams, but he has to work hard.  
If Chris *works hard, he'll pass his exams*.....
- 3 John isn't fat, because he doesn't eat a lot.  
If John .....
- 4 Ellen doesn't have a car, so she walks to work.  
If Ellen .....
- 5 Ali's English will improve, but he has to practise.  
If Ali .....
- 6 Pat won't be late but she has to hurry.  
If Pat .....
- 7 Rita doesn't like swimming so she doesn't go to the beach.  
If Rita .....
- 8 Paulo will get better, but he has to take his medicine.  
If Paulo .....
- 9 David doesn't get up early because he lives near the school.  
If David .....
- 10 Carol will catch the bus but she has to leave now.  
If Carol .....

### 3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 If I were you, I ~~be~~ on holiday and relax.  
A will go                      B would go                      C go
- 2 If you don't have any money, ..... a job!  
A get                      B you would get                      C you will get
- 3 If I ..... a car, I wouldn't walk to work.  
A did own                      B owned                      C own
- 4 If he weren't tired, he ..... go to the party.  
A would                      B will                      C did
- 5 If you ..... the door, the cat won't escape.  
A close                      B closed                      C will close
- 6 If we ..... by plane, we'd get there much quicker.  
A go                      B will go                      C went
- 7 If Sue ..... now, she will miss the bus.  
A didn't leave                      B won't leave                      C doesn't leave
- 8 If my brother had an expensive car, he ..... really happy.  
A would be                      B will be                      C was
- 9 If I ..... a pop star, I would buy an enormous house.  
A be                      B was                      C will be
- 10 If it rains, the children usually ..... inside.  
A played                      B will play                      C play

**4 Complete these conditional sentences. Use *will* or *would* and the present simple or past simple.**

- 1 We're going to the beach after school. If you (want) .....~~want~~..... to come with us, I .....~~will ask~~..... my mum if it is OK.
- 2 I always ride my bicycle to work. If I (walk) ..... it (take) ..... a lot longer!
- 3 It's amazing! Everyone in the class passed the exam! If I (be) ..... the teacher, I (be) ..... really pleased.
- 4 It is a very easy machine to use. If you (place) ..... the fruit in the top, the juice (appear) ..... at the bottom ready to drink.
- 5 We've been waiting for almost an hour now. If they (not come) ..... soon, we (not see) ..... the start of the concert.
- 6 Look at the sky! If it (start) ..... raining, the race (finish) ..... early.
- 7 Let's walk to the railway station. If we (wait) ..... here any longer for the bus, we (miss) ..... our train.
- 8 If I (have) ..... enough money I (buy) ..... a new bike, but I've only got €10.
- 9 Jack doesn't go to the gym and exercise. If he (go) ..... to the gym, I'm sure he (feel) ..... healthier and more energetic. But he refuses to go!

**5 Choose the best sentence for each situation.**

- 1 A friend is riding his bike dangerously. You say:  
 A  If you ride too fast, you'll fall off.  
 B If you rode too fast, you'd fall off.
- 2 You are working hard in the garden of your house, cutting the grass. You say:  
 A If we live in a flat, I won't have to work so hard in the garden!  
 B If we lived in a flat, I wouldn't have to work so hard in the garden!
- 3 A friend at school wants you to help with their maths homework. You say:  
 A If I know the answer, I'll tell you.  
 B If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- 4 A friend is going to buy you some ice-cream and is checking her pockets for money. You say:  
 A Don't worry. If you haven't got enough money, I'll pay.  
 B Don't worry. If you hadn't got enough money, I'd pay.
- 5 You are writing a project on your computer, but you are worried that you have made too many spelling mistakes. A friend says:  
 A Don't forget, if you use the spellchecker, it'll correct all the words.  
 B Don't forget, if you used the spellchecker, it would correct all the words.
- 6 It's a cold day in winter, and you are watching a TV programme which shows people on the beach in Australia. You say:  
 A If we live in Australia, we'll be on the beach today.  
 B If we lived in Australia, we'd be on the beach today.

# 34

## GRAMMAR

### Yes/no questions *Did I pass the test?* and short answers *Yes, you did.*

#### Yes/No questions

Yes/no questions are questions with Yes or No as the answer.

|                    |                                     |      |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|------|
| Present simple     | <i>Do you like swimming?</i>        | Yes. |
| Present continuous | <i>Are you reading this?</i>        | No.  |
| Present perfect    | <i>Have you ever been to Italy?</i> |      |
| Past simple        | <i>Did you post my letter?</i>      |      |
| Past continuous    | <i>Were you working?</i>            |      |
| will               | <i>Will it rain tomorrow?</i>       |      |
| going to           | <i>Are you going to pay me?</i>     |      |
| be (present)       | <i>Are you American?</i>            |      |
| be (past)          | <i>Was that your money?</i>         |      |

#### Short answers

We usually add a short answer after Yes or No. The short answer is made of a pronoun + the auxiliary used in the question.

|                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Have we won?</i>         | <i>Yes, we have.</i> |
| <i>Did I pass the test?</i> | <i>Yes, you did.</i> |

|                                |                        |                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Did I pass the test?</i>    | <i>Yes, you did</i>    | <i>No, you didn't.</i>   |
| <i>Are you waiting?</i>        | <i>Yes, I am.</i>      | <i>No, I'm not.</i>      |
| <i>Does Jim like swimming?</i> | <i>Yes, he does.</i>   | <i>No, he doesn't.</i>   |
| <i>Is Maria reading this?</i>  | <i>Yes, she is.</i>    | <i>No, she isn't.</i>    |
| <i>Was it working?</i>         | <i>Yes, it was.</i>    | <i>No, it wasn't.</i>    |
| <i>Have we won?</i>            | <i>Yes, we have.</i>   | <i>No, we haven't.</i>   |
| <i>Have they finished?</i>     | <i>Yes, they have.</i> | <i>No, they haven't.</i> |

## GRAMMAR 34 YES/NO QUESTIONS AND SHORT ANSWERS

### 1 Choose the correct response (a–h) for the questions (1–8).

- |                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Was Ann driving?           | a) Yes, I do.      |
| 2 Did you see Tom yesterday? | b) No, he isn't.   |
| 3 Do you know the answer?    | c) No, I haven't.  |
| 4 Have you seen this film?   | d) Yes, I was.     |
| 5 Are you reading this?      | e) No, she wasn't. |
| 6 Were you sitting here?     | f) No, she hasn't. |
| 7 Is George leaving?         | g) Yes, I did.     |
| 8 Has Helen finished yet?    | h) No, I'm not.    |

### 2 Use the prompts and the verb forms in brackets to write questions.

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 they / work hard                       | (past continuous)    |
| <del>Were they working hard?</del> ..... |                      |
| 2 Jim / eat yet                          | (present perfect)    |
| .....                                    |                      |
| 3 you / read a lot                       | (present simple)     |
| .....                                    |                      |
| 4 Tom / writing a letter                 | (present continuous) |
| .....                                    |                      |
| 5 Tina / leave yesterday                 | (past simple)        |
| .....                                    |                      |
| 6 we / meet before                       | (present perfect)    |
| .....                                    |                      |
| 7 Sam / watch TV                         | (past continuous)    |
| .....                                    |                      |

### 3 Write a short answer for each question.

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Have you seen my wallet?      | No, ..... <u>I haven't</u> ..... |
| 2 Is David studying French?     | Yes, .....                       |
| 3 Did it rain yesterday?        | No, .....                        |
| 4 Do you like Indian food?      | Yes, .....                       |
| 5 Have you ever been to Prague? | Yes, .....                       |
| 6 Are you having a good time?   | No, .....                        |
| 7 Does Mary work here?          | No, .....                        |
| 8 Was Tom bothering you?        | No, .....                        |



**Wh- questions**    *Who is that?***Subject and object questions**    *What eats fish?***Wh- questions**

We use:

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>who</i> with people   | <i>Who is that? It's Jack.</i>           |
| <i>what</i> with things  | <i>What are you looking for? A pen.</i>  |
| <i>when</i> with time    | <i>When are you leaving? At 6.00.</i>    |
| <i>where</i> with places | <i>Where do you live? In that house.</i> |

Present simple

**When** do you usually get up?

Present continuous

**What** are you doing?

Present perfect

**Why** have you stopped?

Past simple

**How** did you feel?

Past continuous

**Where** were you going?

Future

**Who** are you going to meet?

**When** will you come home?

**Why** are you leaving?

**Short answers**

*When* do you usually get up?

At 7.30.

*What* are you doing?

Writing a letter.

*Why* have you come?

To give you a present.

*How* did you feel?

Terrible.

*Where* were you going?

Home.

**Subject and object questions**

We use *What* and *Who* to ask questions about the subject or the object. Questions about the subject do not use the auxiliary *do* (*does, did*).

| <i>subject</i>    | <i>verb</i>              | <i>object</i>          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Cats              | eat                      | fish                   |
| Subject question: | <b>What</b> eats fish?   | <b>Cats</b> eat fish.  |
| Object question:  | <b>What</b> do cats eat? | Cats eat <b>fish</b> . |

- **Subject question short answers**

*What* makes people happy?

**Love** makes people happy!

**Love** does.

*Who* is sitting in this seat?

**Helen** is sitting in this seat.

**Helen** is.

- **Object question short answers**

*What* do you wear in winter?

**I** wear **an overcoat**.

**An overcoat**.

*What* are you reading?

**I'm** reading **'Oliver Twist'**.

**'Oliver Twist'**.

## GRAMMAR 35 WH- QUESTIONS; SUBJECT AND OBJECT QUESTIONS

### 1 Use the prompts and the verb forms in brackets to write questions.

- 1 Why / you cry? (present continuous)  
*Why are you crying?*.....
- 2 How / you get here (past simple)  
.....
- 3 What / Jack usually do / on Saturdays (present simple)  
.....
- 4 How long / you live here (present perfect)  
.....
- 5 Where / David / go (past continuous)  
.....
- 6 Who / you talk to (present continuous)  
.....
- 7 What / you do (past continuous)  
.....
- 8 When / you usually / get up (present simple)  
.....
- 9 What / Jack / do (present perfect)  
.....
- 10 What / Mark and Sue / buy (past simple)  
.....

### 2 Complete each question.

- 1 'What ..... *makes you tired* ..... ?' 'Running makes me tired.'
- 2 'Who ..... ?' 'I talked to the manager.'
- 3 'What ..... ?' 'I read a newspaper.'
- 4 'Who ..... ?' 'Kate brought the ice-cream.'
- 5 'What ..... ?' 'Joe decided to take the job.'
- 6 'Who ..... ?' 'I answer most of the questions.'
- 7 'Which ..... ?' 'This house is mine.'
- 8 'Who ..... ?' 'Pat looks after the children.'
- 9 'What ..... ?' 'Helen studies chemistry.'
- 10 'What ..... ?' 'A spider has eight legs.'

### 3 Change the answers in brackets into short answers.

- 1 'What are you eating?' (I'm eating a sandwich.) ..... *A sandwich*.....
- 2 'Who helps you?' (My teacher helps me.) .....
- 3 'What do you watch?' (I watch cartoons.) .....
- 4 'Who do you write to?' (I write to my penfriend.) .....
- 5 'What makes you laugh?' (You make me laugh!) .....
- 6 'Who loves you?' (Somebody loves me!) .....

## Tag questions *You like chips, don't you?*

- We can put tag questions at the end of statements and make the statements into questions.
- The tag is made of the auxiliary + pronoun in question form. When there is no auxiliary, use *do/does/did*.
- Positive questions have a positive verb + negative tag.  
*You like chips, don't you?*
- Negative questions have a negative verb + positive tag.  
*You don't like chips, do you?*

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Present simple     | <i>You like chips, don't you?</i><br><i>You don't like chips, do you?</i>                          |
| Present continuous | <i>We're arriving soon, aren't we?</i><br><i>We aren't leaving, are we?</i>                        |
| Present perfect    | <i>She's finished, hasn't she?</i><br><i>She hasn't arrived yet, has she?</i>                      |
| Past simple        | <i>You bought some milk, didn't you?</i><br><i>You didn't buy any bread, did you?</i>              |
| Past continuous    | <i>Tina was running quickly, wasn't she?</i><br><i>Tina wasn't wearing running shoes, was she?</i> |
| will               | <i>You won't be late, will you?</i><br><i>You'll be careful, won't you?</i>                        |
| going to           | <i>You're going to have a party, aren't you?</i><br><i>We aren't going to be late, are we?</i>     |
| be                 | <i>Tom is good fun, isn't he?</i><br><i>You weren't late, were you?</i>                            |
| have got           | <i>You've got a brother, haven't you?</i><br><i>You haven't got a sister, have you?</i>            |

### Intonation and meaning

- Real questions (I'm not sure of the answer)

*You like swimming, **don't you?***

*You **don't like** swimming, **do you?***

- Checking (I think I know the answer)

*You like swimming, **don't you?***

*You **don't like** swimming, **do you?***

**1 Underline the correct tag in each sentence.**

- 1 Jim got lost, *did he / didn't he*?
- 2 You don't know the answer, *do you / don't you?*
- 3 The children were making a lot of noise, *wasn't it / weren't they?*
- 4 Harry doesn't feel well, *isn't it / does he?*
- 5 George didn't complain, *did he / didn't he?*
- 6 Something has gone wrong, *has it / hasn't it?*
- 7 You aren't sitting here, *isn't it / are you?*
- 8 You will read this, *will you / won't you?*
- 9 Paul likes Jill, *isn't it / doesn't he?*
- 10 You're waiting for Sue, *isn't it / aren't you?*

**2 Complete the questions. Choose the correct tag (a–j) for the statements (1–10).**

- |                                      |                 |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 Ann catches the bus,               | a) wasn't she?  |
| 2 Jan is leaving in the morning,     | b) is she?      |
| 3 Sally won't be back,               | c) didn't she?  |
| 4 Helen has left,                    | d) doesn't she? |
| 5 Kate finished the book,            | e) will she?    |
| 6 Sue hasn't got a bike,             | f) did she?     |
| 7 Tina isn't a French teacher,       | g) does she?    |
| 8 Paula didn't say a lot,            | h) hasn't she?  |
| 9 Mary was sitting next to you,      | i) has she?     |
| 10 Pam doesn't like classical music, | j) isn't she?   |

**3 Write a tag for each sentence.**

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 Harry has been helping you,                | ..... <u>hasn't he</u> ..... ? |
| 2 You don't eat meat,                        | ..... ?                        |
| 3 Paul was sleeping,                         | ..... ?                        |
| 4 I missed a good film,                      | ..... ?                        |
| 5 Jane is leaving in the morning,            | ..... ?                        |
| 6 We are going to win,                       | ..... ?                        |
| 7 Jack hasn't done his homework,             | ..... ?                        |
| 8 You weren't having dinner,                 | ..... ?                        |
| 9 David and Kate aren't coming to the party, | ..... ?                        |
| 10 Sue didn't leave early,                   | ..... ?                        |

## CHECKPOINT 6

### Units 31–36

#### 1 Complete these conditional sentences. Use *will* or *would* and the present simple or past simple.

- 1 Look at the sky! It's going to rain. If I (get) .....*get*..... wet, I'm sure I (catch) .....*will catch*..... a cold.
- 2 I'm not your teacher so I don't know the answer. If I (be) ..... your teacher, I (tell) ..... you to look in your dictionary!
- 3 I often imagine being on a desert island. If I (live) ..... on a desert island, I (spend) ..... all day fishing and sunbathing!
- 4 Yes, I often see Helen. If I (see) ..... her tomorrow, I (tell) ..... her to call you.
- 5 Come on, hurry up. If we (hurry) ....., we (get) ..... to the cinema before the beginning of the film.
- 6 Sorry, but I haven't got a pencil sharpener. If I (have) ..... one, I (lend) ..... it to you, but I haven't got one!
- 7 Let's go now. If we (not get) ..... there before 7.00, there (not be) ..... any tickets left for the rock concert.
- 8 I don't believe in aliens. Anyway, if aliens (land) ..... on Earth, I think they (soon decide) ..... to return to their planet!

#### 2 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

- 1 I advise you to go to the doctor's.  
If I *were you*, I *would go to the doctor's* .....
- 2 I'm sure your name isn't Jim.  
Your ..... it?
- 3 I think you've forgotten your homework!  
You ..... you!
- 4 If you don't hurry, we'll be late.  
If ..... won't .....
- 5 I hope our team isn't going to lose.  
Our team ..... it?
- 6 Why don't you go to bed early?  
If .....
- 7 I'm sure you weren't at school yesterday.  
You ..... you?
- 8 You feel hungry because you don't eat breakfast.  
..... wouldn't .....

**3 Complete the questions.**

- 1 Who ..... *do* ..... you ..... *sit next to* ..... in class?  
I sit next to Jim.
- 2 ..... to India?  
No, I haven't. I've never been to India.
- 3 What ..... ?  
Tomorrow? I'm going to have a rest, I think!
- 4 What ..... ?  
Being with my friends makes me happy.
- 5 Why ..... ?  
I'm not looking at you, actually!
- 6 ..... swimming?  
Yes, I do. I like swimming very much.
- 7 Who ..... there?  
In that house? Mark lives there, I think.

**4 Write a tag for each sentence.**

- 1 You like ice-cream, ..... *don't you* ..... ?
- 2 Your name's Eva, ..... ?
- 3 We're not late, ..... ?
- 4 You're waiting for Jack, ..... ?
- 5 Roberto hasn't got a brother, ..... ?
- 6 They'll be here soon, ..... ?
- 7 You weren't writing, ..... ?

**5 Correct each sentence or question.**

- 1 What ~~you are~~ doing this evening? ..... *are you* .....
- 2 Who does live here? .....
- 3 If I am rich, I am buying a big car! .....
- 4 You haven't got a pen, got you? .....
- 5 What means this? .....
- 6 You're Helen, isn't it? .....

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 Conditional 2 sentences are about the past.
- 2 Never use *do* in subject questions.
- 3 Tag questions are not real questions.

## Modals: ability and possibility *can, can't, cannot*

- We use *can* when we talk about ability and possibility.

*Can you ride a bike?* No. (I don't know how to do it.)  
*Sorry, but I can't come to your party on Friday.* (It's not possible.)  
*I can't lift this table.* (It's impossible.)

- Can* is a modal auxiliary verb. We use a modal auxiliary with a verb infinitive (without *to*).
- A modal auxiliary does not change its form.

### Statements

|                      |                      |                       |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>I can swim.</i>   | <i>He can swim.</i>  | <i>We can swim.</i>   |
| <i>You can swim.</i> | <i>She can swim.</i> | <i>They can swim.</i> |
|                      | <i>It can swim.</i>  |                       |

### Negatives

|                        |                        |                         |
|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>I can't swim.</i>   | <i>He can't swim.</i>  | <i>We can't swim.</i>   |
| <i>You can't swim.</i> | <i>She can't swim.</i> | <i>They can't swim.</i> |
|                        | <i>It can't swim.</i>  |                         |

*Cannot* is the full negative form, used in formal writing and speech.

*I cannot swim.*

### Questions

|                      |                      |                       |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Can I swim?</i>   | <i>Can he swim?</i>  | <i>Can we swim?</i>   |
| <i>Can you swim?</i> | <i>Can she swim?</i> | <i>Can they swim?</i> |
|                      | <i>Can it swim?</i>  |                       |

### Short answers

*Can you see it?* Yes, I *can*. / No, I *can't*.

### Tag questions

*You can see it, can't you?* *You can't see it, can you?*



For the past, use *could*. For the future, use *be able to*.


→ SEE ALSO

Grammar 40: Modals: past

1 Read the form and write sentences about Petbot, the robot dog.

## What can it do?

**PetBot**, the robot Dog

|                 |   |  |
|-----------------|---|--|
| walk?           | ✓ |  |
| run?            | x |  |
| dance?          | ✓ |  |
| smile?          | ✓ |  |
| speak English?  | x |  |
| ride a bicycle? | x |  |
|                 |   |  |

- 1 It can walk. .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....

2 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use *can* or *can't*.

- 1 I'm not able to come to your party.  
I can't come to your party. .....
- 2 Is it possible for you to play basketball tonight?  
.....
- 3 Do you know how to use a computer?  
.....
- 4 It isn't possible for you to borrow my bike.  
.....
- 5 It's impossible for us to answer this question.  
.....
- 6 It's not possible for me to help you.  
.....
- 7 I don't know how to play this game.  
.....
- 8 Is it possible for you to help me?  
.....



## Modals: obligation *must, have to, should*

### **must**

- We usually use *must* when we talk about necessary or important actions.

*I **must** leave now. I don't want to be late.*

*We **must** remember to take our passports.*

*I must leave.*

*He must leave.*

*We must leave.*

*You must leave.*

*She must leave.*

*They must leave.*

*It must leave.*

- We can also use *have to* in these situations.

### **have to**

- We use *have to* when we talk about a rule made for us by somebody else.

*We **have to** wear a uniform at my school. (a rule)*

*When the lights are red, you **have to** stop. (a rule)*

- Have to* changes to *has to* for *he, she, it*.

*Paul **has to** do his homework now.*

- We don't usually use *must* to make questions.

*I **must** leave at 6.00. Do I **have to** leave at 6.00?*

*I have to leave.*

*Do I have to leave?*

*You have to leave.*

*Do you have to leave?*

*He has to leave.*

*Does he have to leave?*

*She has to leave.*

*Does she have to leave?*

*It has to leave.*

*Does it have to leave?*

*We have to leave.*

*Do we have to leave?*

*They have to leave.*

*Do they have to leave?*

### **should**

- Should* gives the speaker's opinion of what is a good thing to do.

*You **should** check your work at the end of the lesson.*

*You **should** eat fruit every day.*

The 'l' in *should* is silent.



**1 Rewrite each imperative with *must*.**

- 1 Do it again! *You must do it again!* .....
- 2 Work faster! .....
- 3 Turn to page 50! .....
- 4 Hurry up! .....
- 5 Stop talking! .....
- 6 Listen to me! .....
- 7 Give me your homework! .....
- 8 Sit down! .....

**2 Change the statements into questions and the questions into statements.**

**Life at school**

- 1 We have to wear a uniform ..... *Do you have to wear a uniform?* .....
- 2 Do you have to do homework? .....
- 3 I must sit in the same place .....
- 4 He has to arrive before 8.00. ....
- 5 Does she have to eat lunch at school? .....
- 6 I have to change classrooms. ....
- 7 They must do gym. ....
- 8 Do you have to learn German? .....

**3 Complete each sentence using *should*.**

- 1 If I were you, I'd go to the doctor's.  
I think *you should go to the doctor's* .....
- 2 It's a good idea to wear a warm coat.  
You .....
- 3 My advice is to leave early.  
I think you .....
- 4 It's a good idea to take more exercise.  
You .....
- 5 In my opinion, it's a good idea for you to read a lot.  
I think .....
- 6 It's a good idea to do that.  
You .....
- 7 My advice is for you to ride a bike.  
I think .....
- 8 If I were you, I would buy a dog.  
I think .....

## Modals: negative obligation

### *mustn't, don't have to, shouldn't*

#### *mustn't*

- *mustn't* = *must not*. We use *mustn't* when something is not allowed.

You ***mustn't shout!***

Students ***must not eat or drink*** in the classroom.

*I mustn't do that.*

*He mustn't do that.*

*We mustn't do that.*

*You mustn't do that.*

*She mustn't do that.*

*They mustn't do that.*

*It mustn't do that.*

- *Must not* is more formal and is used in written English.

#### *don't have to*

- We use *don't have to* when something is not necessary.

We ***don't have to go*** to school tomorrow. *We can stay at home.*

Jim ***doesn't have to get up*** early tomorrow.

*I don't have to*

*He doesn't have to*

*We don't have to*

*You don't have to*

*She doesn't have to*

*They don't have to*

*It doesn't have to*

#### *shouldn't*

*should not* = *shouldn't*

- We use *shouldn't* when we think it is a bad idea to do something.

You ***shouldn't watch*** television all day. (In my opinion this is a bad idea.)

Kate ***shouldn't eat*** so much chocolate.

The first 't' in *mustn't* is silent.



**GRAMMAR 39 MODALS: NEGATIVE OBLIGATION**



**1** Look at the notices and say what is not allowed.

- 1 ..... *You mustn't talk* .....      2 .....
- 3 .....      4 .....
- 5 .....      6 .....

**2** Use the prompts to write sentences with *should* and *shouldn't*.

## Health tips for students

|   |                            |   |   |
|---|----------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | eat lots of sweets         | X | ..... <i>You shouldn't eat lots of sweets</i> ..... |
| 2 | keep fit                   | ✓ | .....   |
| 3 | eat healthy food           | ✓ | .....   |
| 4 | drink lots of fizzy drinks | X | .....   |
| 5 | go to the gym              | ✓ | .....   |
| 6 | watch TV all night         | X | .....   |

**3** Use the verbs in brackets to make negative sentences with *have to*.

- 1 Kate (take) ..... *doesn't have to take* ..... an exam tomorrow.
- 2 Jim (get up) ..... early.
- 3 I (make) ..... a phone call.
- 4 George (do) ..... the shopping.
- 5 You (sit) ..... here.
- 6 Helen (do) ..... her homework.

## Modals: past *could, couldn't, had to, didn't have to*

### Past ability

We use *could/couldn't* to describe ability or possibility in the past.

- **could**

*Jane could swim when she was six. (She knew how to swim.)*

|                        |                        |                         |
|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>I could hear.</i>   | <i>He could hear.</i>  | <i>We could hear.</i>   |
| <i>You could hear.</i> | <i>She could hear.</i> | <i>They could hear.</i> |
|                        | <i>It could hear.</i>  |                         |

- **couldn't**

*could not = couldn't*

*I looked for my wallet but I couldn't find it.*

|                           |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>I couldn't hear.</i>   | <i>He couldn't hear.</i>  | <i>We couldn't hear.</i>   |
| <i>You couldn't hear.</i> | <i>She couldn't hear.</i> | <i>They couldn't hear.</i> |
|                           | <i>It couldn't hear.</i>  |                            |

### Past obligation

- **had to**

We use *had to* to describe what was important or necessary in the past.

*Must* does not have a past form – we use *had to*.

*I had to do a lot of homework yesterday.*

|                       |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>I had to go.</i>   | <i>He had to go.</i>  | <i>We had to go.</i>   |
| <i>You had to go.</i> | <i>She had to go.</i> | <i>They had to go.</i> |
|                       | <i>It had to go.</i>  |                        |

- **didn't have to**

We use *didn't have to* to describe what was not important or not necessary in the past.

*Tom didn't have to go to school today.*

|                               |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>I didn't have to go.</i>   | <i>He didn't have to go.</i>  | <i>We didn't have to go.</i>   |
| <i>You didn't have to go.</i> | <i>She didn't have to go.</i> | <i>They didn't have to go.</i> |
|                               | <i>It didn't have to go.</i>  |                                |

**1 Complete each sentence (1–6) with an ending (a–f).**

- 1 I didn't light a fire because .....
- 2 I didn't do my homework because .....
- 3 I didn't use the computer because .....
- 4 I didn't do the shopping because .....
- 5 I didn't go to the doctor's because .....
- 6 I didn't go to the party because .....

- a) I couldn't make an appointment.
- b) I couldn't understand the instructions.
- c) I couldn't find the matches.
- d) I couldn't remember the exercise.
- e) I couldn't get ready in time.
- f) I couldn't go to the supermarket.

**2 Write what you *had to do* or *didn't have to do* yesterday.**

- 1 clean the house ..... *I didn't have to clean the house.*
- 2 cook the dinner .....
- 3 do lots of homework .....
- 4 go shopping .....
- 5 go to school .....
- 6 find information on the Internet .....

**3 Rewrite each sentence using *could/couldn't* or *had to/didn't have to*. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 It was impossible for Sarah to get home before 7.00.  
Sarah ..... *couldn't get home before 7.00.*
- 2 It was necessary for Paul to leave at 6.00 to catch his plane.  
Paul .....
- 3 It was impossible for us to believe our luck!  
We .....
- 4 It wasn't necessary for Mike to wait long for the bus.  
Mike .....
- 5 Ann's friend knew how to speak five languages.  
Ann's friend .....
- 6 Sorry I didn't phone, but it was impossible to find your number.  
Sorry I didn't phone, but I .....

# 41

## GRAMMAR

### Modals: possibility or uncertainty, *might, may, could,* impossibility or certainty *can't, must*

- Possibility or uncertainty – future time  
*Our team **might** win the basketball match.* (It's possible.)  
*I **may** / **might** see you next week.* (I'm not really sure.)  
*I **may** / **might** not have time to finish tonight.*
- Possibility or uncertainty – present time  
*The cat **could** be in the kitchen. Or it **could** be in the garden. I don't know.*  
*Where's John? I don't know. He **may** / **might** be at the cinema.*
- Impossibility or certainty – present time  
*It **can't** be Tuesday today! It was Tuesday yesterday!*  
*The lights are on, so he **must** be at home.* (I'm sure he is at home.)  
*She **can't** be in Spain! I saw her today!* (I'm sure she isn't in Spain.)
- We cannot use *can't* and *must* for impossibility or certainty in future time.



We can't say:

*It can be Tuesday! X*

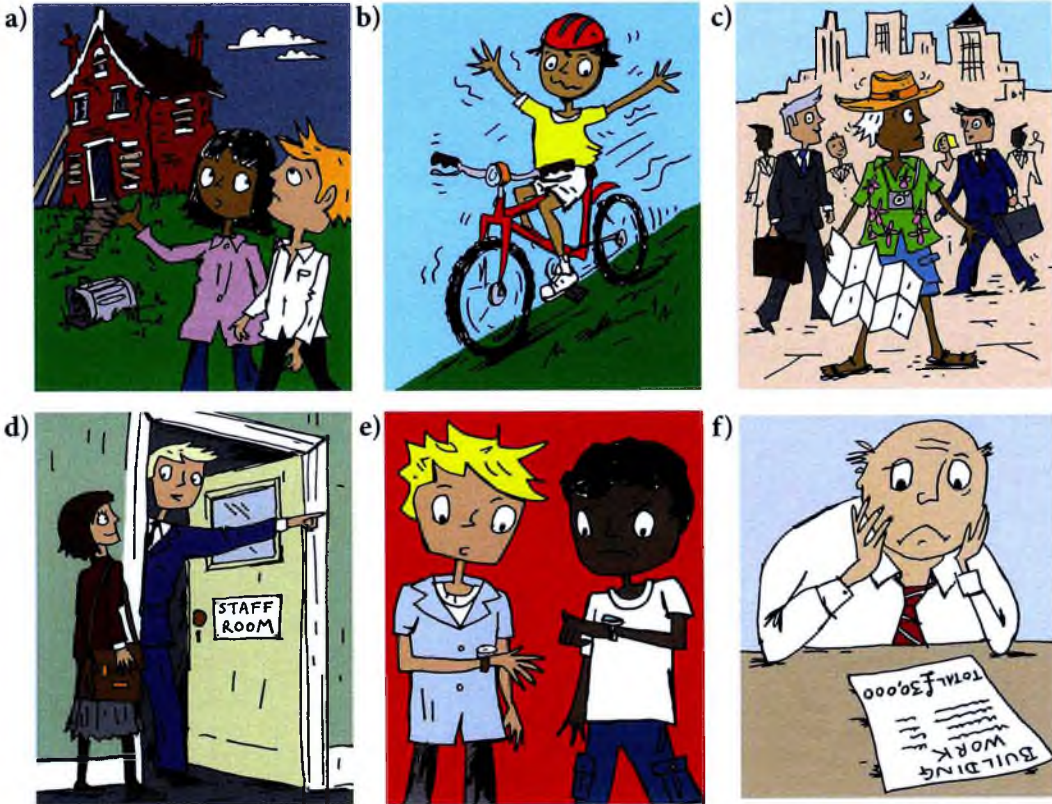
*It mustn't be Tuesday. X*

**GRAMMAR 41 MODALS: POSSIBILITY OR UNCERTAINTY, IMPOSSIBILITY OR CERTAINTY**

**1 Rewrite each sentence using *might*, *can't* or *must*. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Perhaps it will rain. ~~It might rain.~~ .....
- 2 I'm sure this is right. ....
- 3 Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow. ....
- 4 I'm sure that isn't the answer. ....
- 5 I'm sure this is the place. ....
- 6 Perhaps I won't come to your party. ....
- 7 I'm sure you're not serious! .....
- 8 I'm sure we are early. ....

**2 Look at the pictures. Choose the most suitable picture (a-f) for each sentence (1-6).**



- 1 She might be in Room 4. .... *d* .....
- 2 I think he must be a tourist. ....
- 3 This can't be the right house! ....
- 4 I think your watch must be wrong. ....
- 5 This can't be right! ....
- 6 Careful! You might fall off! ....



## Modals: main points

- Modals do not have third person -s endings.  
*I can swim. Helen can swim.*
- Modals have more than one meaning. This depends on the context.
 

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <i>You <b>must</b> pay before 21st January.</i>     | (Obligation)                    |
| <i>I think Carol <b>must</b> be very happy.</i>     | (Certainty)                     |
| <i>Can you use a computer?</i>                      | (Ability)                       |
| <i>Can you open the window?</i>                     | (Informal request)              |
| <i>Nick <b>can't</b> dance. He's never learned.</i> | (Inability – not able to do it) |
| <i>It <b>can't</b> be Tuesday!</i>                  | (Impossibility)                 |
- Some modals have the same meanings in the same context.
 

*I have to go. = I must go.*

The negative forms have different meanings.

|                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>I <b>don't</b> have to go.</i> | (It's not necessary.) |
| <i>I <b>mustn't</b> go.</i>       | (It's not allowed.)   |
- Some modals have only small differences of meaning.
 

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>I <b>have to</b> wear a suit and tie.</i> | (This is the rule.)  |
| <i>I <b>should</b> wear a suit and tie.</i>  | (This is not a rule but people expect me to do it. I can choose not to do it!) |



Susan **should** study for her exam, but she **can't** concentrate.

### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 38:** Modals: obligation

**Grammar 39:** Modals: negative obligation

**1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.**

- 1 We *mustn't* / *don't have to* go to school on Tuesday. It's a holiday.
- 2 In most countries, you *have to* / *should* have an identity card.
- 3 Sorry I'm late. I *must* / *had to* go to the doctor's.
- 4 You *don't have to* / *shouldn't* eat so much chocolate. It's bad for you!
- 5 I'm sorry, but I'm *not able to* / *don't have to* meet you tomorrow.
- 6 You *mustn't* / *don't have to* leave the room without permission.
- 7 Where *did you have to* / *must you* go yesterday?
- 8 I don't think you *must* / *should* go out today.
- 9 Sorry, I don't understand. I *can't* / *mustn't* speak German.

**2 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 It wasn't necessary for me to go to school yesterday. **have**  
 ..... *I didn't have to go to school yesterday.* .....
- 2 I'm sure this isn't right. **can't**  
 .....
- 3 Tina knew how to play the piano at an early age. **could**  
 .....
- 4 Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow. **may**  
 .....
- 5 Harry managed to repair the radio. **able**  
 .....
- 6 It was necessary for Bill to return his library book. **had**  
 .....
- 7 It's possible that Carol will phone tonight. **might**  
 .....

**3 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 Jack ..... *has* ..... to be home before 10.00.
- 2 Emma ..... swim very well for a child of her age.
- 3 Students ..... not leave coats in this room.
- 4 We ..... to get up before 6.00 tomorrow.
- 5 I think we ..... go home now.
- 6 Jenny ..... to leave early in the morning.
- 7 You don't ..... to do this if you don't want to.
- 8 Tim ..... to do all his homework again.

## CHECKPOINT 7

### Units 37–42

#### 1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 Sorry I'm late. I had to go / *may go* to the library.
- 2 My brother *could walk* / *might walk* before he started talking.
- 3 You've worked very hard. You *could be* / *must be* tired.
- 4 George *didn't have to wait* / *hadn't to wait* long for the bus.
- 5 Don't wait for me. I *could be* / *had to be* late.
- 6 Helen *mustn't do* / *couldn't do* her homework, because she was ill.
- 7 This bus *had to go* / *might go* to the centre. Shall I ask the driver?
- 8 Sam dropped three glasses, but *couldn't catch* / *didn't have to catch* any of them!

#### 2 Complete the sentences. Write one word for each space.

- 1 That was a long walk! You .....~~must~~..... be tired.
- 2 Sorry I was away yesterday. I ..... to go to the hospital.
- 3 Will you be ..... to give me some help tomorrow?
- 4 Do you ..... to go now?
- 5 Peter ..... ride a bike when he was seven.
- 6 Mary ..... be in her bedroom. The light is on.
- 7 Students ..... not leave their bicycles near this door. It is forbidden.
- 8 We ..... to try very hard, but we succeeded in the end.

#### 3 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

- 1 I'm sure that bag isn't yours.  
That ..... can't be ..... your bag.
- 2 My advice is to talk to your teacher about it.  
I think you .....
- 3 It's not necessary for you to be here before 8.00.  
You .....
- 4 I'm sure that Sam knows the answer.  
Sam ..... the answer.
- 5 I'm sorry I'm late. It was necessary for me to go to the doctor's.  
I'm sorry I'm late. I .....
- 6 Perhaps Cathy is at the library.  
Cathy ..... at the library.
- 7 What is your advice?  
What do you think ..... do?

**4 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 It's very important for you to be here at 6.00. **must**  
 ..... *You must be here at 6.00.* .....
- 2 It's impossible for me to see you tomorrow. **can't**  
 .....
- 3 It's necessary to press the button twice. **to**  
 .....
- 4 It's not a good idea to eat lots of sweets. **shouldn't**  
 .....
- 5 It's not possible for Jean to come to the party. **able**  
 .....
- 6 It's not necessary for you to pay now. **don't**  
 .....
- 7 Parking here is forbidden. **mustn't**  
 .....
- 8 It's necessary for you to work harder. **should**  
 .....

**5 Complete each sentence with a modal. Can't, couldn't etc. are one word.**

- 1 You're only wearing a T-shirt and shorts. You **must** feel cold!
- 2 I ..... not be at school tomorrow. I feel ill.
- 3 Tina searched the swimming pool, but wasn't ..... to find her ring.
- 4 Perhaps you left your wallet on the bus, or it ..... be at home.
- 5 The exam was long, and I ..... finish all the questions.
- 6 Brian didn't ..... to do any homework, so he went to the cinema.
- 7 This ..... be the house. It's the wrong number. Let's try down there.
- 8 Ann is very fit and ..... run much faster than her friends.
- 9 This bill ..... be right. There's a mistake in it somewhere.
- 10 Sorry I was out. I ..... to go to the shops.

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 *Mustn't* has the same meaning as *don't have to*.
- 2 There is very little difference between *must* and *have to*.
- 3 *Should* is used when you think something is a good idea.

# 43

## GRAMMAR

### Plural nouns *glasses, potatoes, families, knives, feet, sheep*

#### Spelling rules for regular noun plurals

- Most words add *s* for the plural.

*cat* → *cats*

Words ending in *ss, sh*

*glass* → *glasses*

Words ending in *ch*

*match* → *matches*

Words ending in *x*

*box* → *boxes*

Words ending in *o*

*potato* → *potatoes*

Words ending in consonant and *y*

*family* → *families*

Words ending in vowel and *y*

*donkey* → *donkeys*

Words with final sound *f* (spelling *-f* or *-fe*)

*knife* → *knives*

*leaf* → *leaves*

*house* → *houses*

*dish* → *dishes*

*watch* → *watches*

*fax* → *faxes*

*tomato* → *tomatoes*

*life* → *lives*

*thief* → *thieves*

#### Irregular noun plurals

- Some nouns have irregular plurals.

*man* → *men*

*woman* → *women*

*child* → *children*

*tooth* → *teeth*

*mouse* → *mice*

*foot* → *feet*

#### No change in plural

- Some words have the same singular and plural.

*sheep* → *sheep*

*fish* → *fish*

- Some words are always plural.

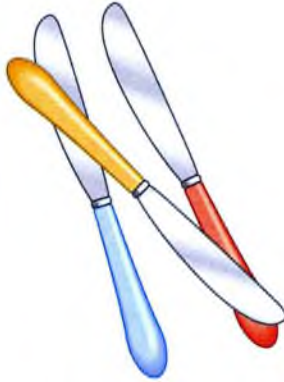
*scissors*                      *a pair of scissors*

*trousers / jeans / shorts*    *a pair of trousers / jeans / shorts*

**1 What are they? Write the nouns.**



1 .....



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....



6 .....

**2 Write the plural of each word in brackets.**

- 1 Can you go to the shops? We need some (potato) .....*potatoes*.....
- 2 Most (family) ..... enjoy going on holiday together.
- 3 Jack decided to make some (bookshelf) ..... for his bedroom.
- 4 Do you think you could help me wash the (dish) ..... ?
- 5 Sue bought three (box) ..... of chocolates.
- 6 In the afternoon we went to the zoo and fed the (monkey) .....

**3 Complete the words.**

- 1 In the autumn, the *leaves*..... on the trees change colour, and then fall off.
- 2 In the library there were lots of s..... full of books.
- 3 We wanted to light a fire so we bought a box of m.....
- 4 Kate has got two c..... – a son and a daughter.
- 5 Nowadays w..... want to do the same jobs as men.
- 6 My eyes ache when I read. I think I need new g.....

## Countable and uncountable nouns 1

### *a, an, some, any*

#### Countable nouns

We can count countable nouns. They have plural *s*.

*a bottle      two bottles      three bottles*

- Singular nouns with *a/an*

We use *an* before words beginning with a vowel.

*I've got **an** umbrella.      Do you want **an** orange?*

Some words are irregular because the sound is different.

***an** hour (the *h* is silent)      **a** university*

- Plural nouns with *some, any, not any*

We use *some* for statements.

*There are **some** chairs in the other room.*

We use *any* for questions.

*Are there **any** chairs in the other room?*

We use *not ... any* for negatives.

*There **aren't any** chairs in the other room.*

#### Uncountable (mass) nouns

We cannot count uncountable nouns. They do not have plural *s*.

*some coffee      some milk      some rice*

- Uncountable/mass nouns with *some, any, not any*

**Statement**      *We bought **some** tea.*

**Question**      *Did you buy **any** tea?*

**Negative**      *We **didn't** buy **any** tea.*

We can use *some* with polite questions, or when we expect the answer 'yes'.

*Could you buy me **some** tea?      (polite question)*

*Are there **some** sandwiches for me?      (expecting the answer 'yes')*

## GRAMMAR 44 COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS 1

### 1 Choose *a* or *some*.



1 .....~~a~~..... tree



2 ..... coffee



3 ..... water



4 ..... sandwiches



5 ..... bird



6 ..... money

### 2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Jack hasn't got a / *any* brother.
- 2 There weren't *some* / any letters for me this morning.
- 3 Could I have *a* / some water, please?
- 4 I went to the supermarket because I didn't have *a* / any milk.
- 5 There isn't *a* / any railway station in this town.
- 6 Sorry, we don't have *some* / any boxes left.
- 7 Have you got *a* / any pen that I can borrow?

### 3 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

- 1 There aren't .....~~any~~..... good restaurants in this town.
- 2 Don't worry about lunch. I've brought ..... sandwiches.
- 3 You need ..... scissors to cut the paper.
- 4 Have you got ..... brothers and sisters?
- 5 I think you owe me ..... money.
- 6 We'd like to stay longer, but we don't have ..... time.
- 7 Could you give me ..... information please?

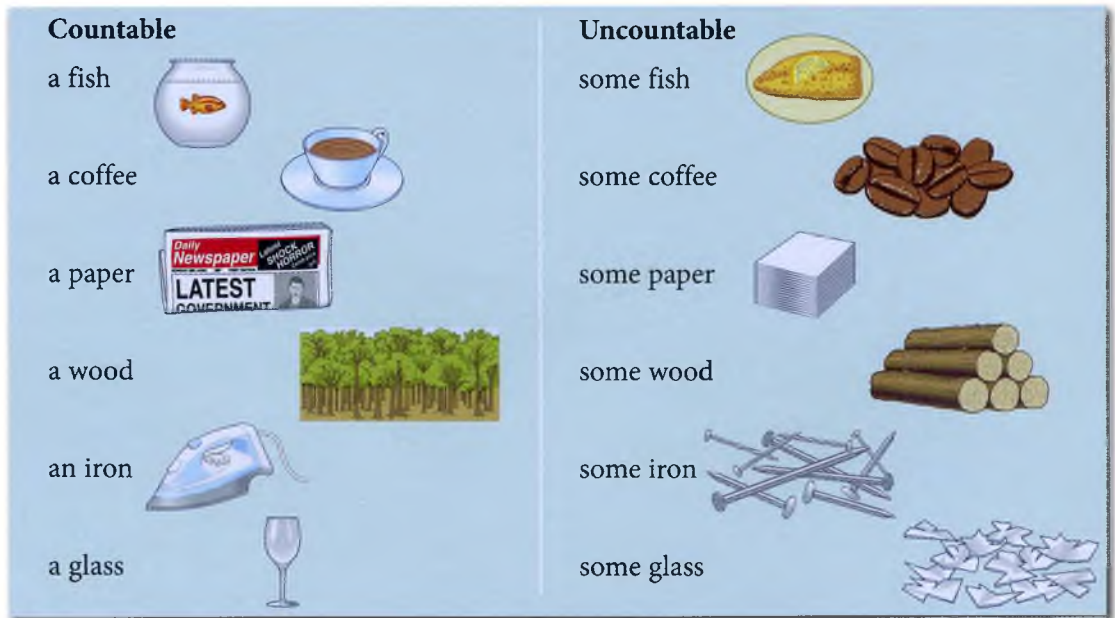


## Countable and uncountable nouns 2

### *a coffee / some coffee*

#### Change of meaning

Some nouns have a countable meaning and an uncountable meaning.



#### Nouns which are always singular

These nouns behave like uncountable nouns in English. They do not have an s plural, and always have a singular verb. In other languages they may be countable.

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i>advice</i>             | <i>Can I have <b>some</b> advice?</i>             |
| <i>spaghetti</i>          | <i>I'd like <b>some</b> spaghetti.</i>            |
| <i>bread</i>              | <i>Could you buy <b>some</b> bread?</i>           |
| <i>English (language)</i> | <i>Your English <b>is</b> good!</i>               |
| <i>hair</i>               | <i>Your hair <b>is</b> beautiful!</i>             |
| <i>furniture</i>          | <i>This furniture <b>is</b> very modern.</i>      |
| <i>information</i>        | <i>Could you give me <b>some</b> information?</i> |
| <i>weather</i>            | <i>The weather <b>is</b> awful!</i>               |
| <i>money</i>              | <i>The money <b>is</b> on the table.</i>          |
| <i>luggage</i>            | <i>My luggage <b>is</b> in the taxi.</i>          |

#### Other nouns with irregular use

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <i>people</i> | <i>There <b>are</b> <b>some</b> people in the garden.</i>         |
|               | <i>There <b>is</b> a person in the garden.</i>                    |
| <i>police</i> | <i>The police <b>are</b> coming! (singular form, plural verb)</i> |
| <i>news</i>   | <i>The news <b>is</b> on TV. (plural form, singular verb)</i>     |

## GRAMMAR 45 COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS 2

### 1 Complete the sentences with *a/an* or *some*.

- 1 We need ~~some~~ wood for the fire.
- 2 Shall we have ..... fish? This restaurant is famous for it.
- 3 Could you bring me ..... glass, please?
- 4 If you need ..... paper, there is a box on the shelf.
- 5 Would you like ..... rice with your chicken?
- 6 My shirt is dry now. Have you got ..... iron?
- 7 Jack bought ..... glass to repair the broken windows.
- 8 Can you buy me ..... paper? There's an article I want to read.

### 2 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 I'll post your letters. Have you got ~~stamps~~ ?  
A a stamp                      B any stamps                      C any stamp
- 2 The streets were empty. There weren't ..... there.  
A peoples                      B some people                      C any people
- 3 Have you got .....? I can help you.  
A a luggage                      B some luggages                      C any luggage
- 4 Do you like .....? No, I don't.  
A hot milk                      B a hot milk                      C some hot milk
- 5 We've just moved into our house, and we haven't got ..... .  
A a furniture                      B any furniture                      C some furniture
- 6 If you pass the supermarket, could you buy .....?  
A some spaghetti                      B any spaghetti                      C a spaghetti
- 7 Can you help me? I'd like ..... .  
A an advice                      B some advice                      C advices

### 3 Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

- 1 Helen's hair .....~~is~~..... very long.
- 2 The weather ..... really good at the moment.
- 3 Don't worry. The police here ..... very friendly.
- 4 Can you turn on the television? The news ..... on.
- 5 Women ..... usually better listeners than men.
- 6 Where ..... the money that I gave you yesterday?
- 7 Your glasses ..... on the table.
- 8 David's French ..... good. He's been taking lessons.

# 46

## GRAMMAR

### *much, many*

#### **many**

With countable nouns we use *many* in questions and negatives.

*Are there **many** students in your class?*

*There aren't **many** seats.*

We use *many* in formal statements.

*Mr Harrison visited Argentina **many** years ago.*

In informal statements, we use *lots of*.

*There are **lots of** seats.*

#### **much**

With uncountable nouns, we use *much* in questions and negatives.

*There isn't **much** time.*

*Is there **much** time?*

In informal statements, we use *lots of*.

*There is **lots of** time.*

#### **How much ... ?**

Use with uncountables.

***How much** homework have you got?*      *Lots!*

***How much** time have we got?*      *We've got fifteen minutes.*

***How much** milk do you want?*      *Not much.*

#### **How many ... ?**

Use with countables.

***How many** pages do you have to read?*      *Ten.*

***How many** brothers and sisters have you got?*      *Two brothers.*

***How many** people are there here?*      *A hundred.*

***How many** players are there?*      *Not very **many**.*



We use *many* with people.

*Were there **many** people at the match?*

*How **many** people did you see?*

We use *much* with money.

*How **much** money have you got?*

**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 There isn't *many* / *much* food in the fridge, I'm afraid.
- 2 Have you read *many* / *much* books in German?
- 3 We don't have *many* / *much* rain in the summer.
- 4 There isn't *many* / *much* coffee left.
- 5 You haven't made *many* / *much* mistakes.
- 6 Have you got *many* / *much* friends in this town?
- 7 Hurry up. We haven't got *many* / *much* time.
- 8 Do *many* / *much* cars park in this street?

**2 Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.**

- 1 ..... How much ..... money have you got?
- 2 ..... students are in the class?
- 3 ..... words do we have to write?
- 4 ..... paper do you need?
- 5 ..... pages are there in this book?
- 6 ..... time have we got left?
- 7 ..... water do you drink in a day?
- 8 ..... times have you been to London?

**3 Complete the sentences. Use one word in each space.**

- 1 I'll try to call you tonight, but I don't have ..... much ..... time.
- 2 How ..... times do you brush your teeth every day?
- 3 Shall I make some more tea? I didn't make .....
- 4 Kate only ate a sandwich because she didn't have ..... money.
- 5 There weren't ..... seats so some of us had to stand up.
- 6 Have you got ..... work, or do you want to come to the cinema?
- 7 We invited lots of people to our party, but not ..... turned up.
- 8 You'll have to share, because there aren't ..... books.

**4 Read the answers. Write a question for each answer. Use *How much* or *How many*.**

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1 ..... <u>How many brothers have you got?</u> ..... | I've got two brothers.     |
| 2 .....  | I know a lot of English!   |
| 3 .....  | There are ten people.      |
| 4 .....  | I need two bicycles.       |
| 5 .....  | I'd like a lot of rice.    |
| 6 .....  | He has got three children. |
| 7 .....  | I haven't got any money.   |

**too much, too many, enough****too much**

We use *too much* with uncountables. *Too much* means 'more than we want' or 'more than is necessary'.

*I've put **too much** sugar in my tea.* (more than I wanted)  
*I've got **too much** work.* (more than is possible to complete)

**too many**

We use *too many* with countables. *Too many* means 'more than we want' or 'more than is necessary'.

*There are **too many** students in this class.* (It's very crowded.)  
*I've got **too many** books. I need some new shelves!* (The shelves are full.)

**enough, not enough**

We use *enough* with both countables and uncountables. *Enough* means 'the right number or quantity'.

*We've got **enough** chairs.* (We don't need any more.)  
*Thanks, I've got **enough** milk.* (I don't want any more.)

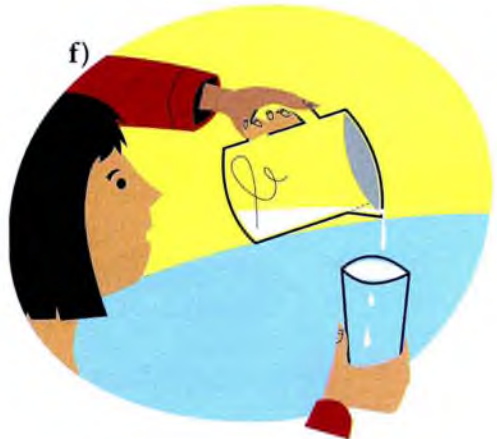
We can use *enough* with questions and negatives.

*Are there **enough** chairs? No. There are twenty people and fifteen chairs.*  
*Is there **enough** time? Yes. We can have lunch and then catch the bus.*  
*There **aren't enough** chairs.* (We need some more.)  
*There **isn't enough** water.* (We need some more.)



*There are **too many** students in the classroom. There **aren't enough** chairs.*

1 Choose the most suitable sentence (1–6) for each picture (a–f).



- 1 There is too much noise.
- 2 There are too many people.
- 3 There isn't enough water.
- 4 I haven't got enough money.
- 5 There aren't enough chairs.
- 6 I put too much pepper in it.

.....e.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 2 Underline the correct sentence.

- 1 Sorry, but I can't pay the bill.  
A I've got too much money.                      B I haven't got enough money.
- 2 I cooked spaghetti for ten, but only two people came.  
A I've got too much spaghetti.                      B I've got too many spaghetti.
- 3 Jim is very lonely.  
A He has got too many friends.                      B He hasn't got enough friends.
- 4 You can't take ten suitcases on the plane!  
A You've got too much luggage.                      B You haven't got enough luggage.
- 5 Please share the books, one between two.  
A There are too many books.                      B There aren't enough books.
- 6 Eight people can't go in one taxi.  
A There is too much room.                      B There isn't enough room.
- 7 We didn't enjoy our holiday.  
A There was too much rain.                      B There wasn't enough rain.
- 8 Please write this again.  
A There are too many mistakes.                      B There aren't enough mistakes.
- 9 I'm too tired to go out!  
A I've had too much sleep.                      B I haven't had enough sleep.
- 10 This bread tastes horrible!  
A There is too much salt in it.                      B There are too many salt in it.

### 3 Choose the best ending (a–j) for each sentence (1–10).

- 1 I can't play tennis now.                      a) There isn't enough light.
- 2 I feel a bit sick.                      b) There's too much noise.
- 3 I can't drive you home.                      c) I haven't got enough sugar.
- 4 I can't have a bath.                      d) I've got too many clothes.
- 5 There is no room in my wardrobe.                      e) I haven't got enough petrol.
- 6 I can't sleep in this room.                      f) I've got too much homework.
- 7 I can't read here.                      g) I haven't got much money.
- 8 I can't eat this soup.                      h) I've eaten too many apples.
- 9 I can't make a cake.                      i) There's too much salt in it.
- 10 I can't buy a new bike.                      j) There isn't enough hot water.

### 4 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 There is no room on the bus. There are ~~A~~ people.  
A too many                      B too much                      C not enough
- 2 I'm still very hungry. There was ..... food.  
A too much                      B not enough                      C enough
- 3 Have we got ..... drinks for the party?  
A enough                      B too many                      C not enough
- 4 John didn't buy the computer game. It cost ..... money.  
A too many                      B enough                      C too much
- 5 We can't go to the library today. There is ..... time.  
A too many                      B enough                      C not enough

**GRAMMAR 47 TOO MUCH, TOO MANY, ENOUGH**

- 6 Yuk! This sandwich is disgusting. There's ..... salt in it.  
A too much            B enough            C too many
- 7 My homework is very difficult. There are ..... new words to learn.  
A not enough        B too many        C enough
- 8 Katy has ..... money to buy a car. She's lucky!  
A too much            B enough            C too many
- 9 We can't all sleep in here. There are ..... beds.  
A not enough        B too many        C enough
- 10 Clare is very happy. She had ..... friends at her party.  
A too much            B enough            C not enough

**5 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use *too much* or *too many* and the words in bold.**

- 1 This room is very crowded. **people**  
~~There are too many people.~~.....
- 2 I can't hear anything you say! **noise**  
.....
- 3 I'm very busy, so I can't come out. **things to do**  
.....
- 4 There is a traffic jam in the city centre. **cars**  
.....
- 5 My coffee is very sweet! I can't drink it! **sugar**  
.....
- 6 I can't find room on the shelves for all my books! **books**  
.....
- 7 I'm very busy so I can't come out. **work**  
.....
- 8 Your homework is not accurate. **mistakes**  
.....
- 9 You can't come on the plane with all that luggage! **bags**  
.....
- 10 This room is crowded with tables and chairs! **furniture**  
.....



# Numbers

## Cardinal numbers

|   |              |    |                 |    |                         |     |                                   |
|---|--------------|----|-----------------|----|-------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | <i>one</i>   | 9  | <i>nine</i>     | 17 | <i>seventeen</i>        | 50  | <i>fifty</i>                      |
| 2 | <i>two</i>   | 10 | <i>ten</i>      | 18 | <i>eighteen</i>         | 60  | <i>sixty</i>                      |
| 3 | <i>three</i> | 11 | <i>eleven</i>   | 19 | <i>nineteen</i>         | 70  | <i>seventy</i>                    |
| 4 | <i>four</i>  | 12 | <i>twelve</i>   | 20 | <i>twenty</i>           | 80  | <i>eighty</i>                     |
| 5 | <i>five</i>  | 13 | <i>thirteen</i> | 21 | <i>twenty-one</i>       | 90  | <i>ninety</i>                     |
| 6 | <i>six</i>   | 14 | <i>fourteen</i> | 22 | <i>twenty-two, etc.</i> | 100 | <i>a hundred/<br/>one hundred</i> |
| 7 | <i>seven</i> | 15 | <i>fifteen</i>  | 30 | <i>thirty</i>           |     |                                   |
| 8 | <i>eight</i> | 16 | <i>sixteen</i>  | 40 | <i>forty</i>            |     |                                   |

0 = *nought* or *zero*. In telephone numbers we say it like the letter 'O'. In football we say *nil*. In tennis we say *love*.

|           |  |           |                      |
|-----------|--|-----------|----------------------|
| 101       | <i>a hundred <u>and</u> one</i>  | 200       | <i>two hundred</i>   |
| 999       | <i>nine hundred <u>and</u> ninety-nine</i>   |           |                      |
| 1,000     | <i>a thousand/one thousand</i>   | 5,000     | <i>five thousand</i> |
| 1,001     | <i>a thousand <u>and</u> one</i>   |           |                      |
| 2,250     | <i>two thousand, two hundred <u>and</u> fifty</i>  |           |                      |
| 999,999   | <i>nine hundred <u>and</u> ninety-nine thousand, nine hundred <u>and</u> ninety-nine</i> |           |                      |
| 1,000,000 | <i>a million/one million</i>   | 5,000,000 | <i>five million</i>  |

Hundred, thousand and million do not have plural 's' when we use an exact number.

*There were **twenty thousand** people at the match.*

They have plural 's' when we use them with *of* + noun to give the approximate number.

*There were **thousands of** people at the match.*

## Ordinal numbers

|     |                |      |                   |      |                      |      |                       |
|-----|----------------|------|-------------------|------|----------------------|------|-----------------------|
| 1st | <i>first</i>   | 9th  | <i>ninth</i>      | 17th | <i>seventeenth</i>   | 25th | <i>twenty-fifth</i>   |
| 2nd | <i>second</i>  | 10th | <i>tenth</i>      | 18th | <i>eighteenth</i>    | 26th | <i>twenty-sixth</i>   |
| 3rd | <i>third</i>   | 11th | <i>eleventh</i>   | 19th | <i>nineteenth</i>    | 27th | <i>twenty-seventh</i> |
| 4th | <i>fourth</i>  | 12th | <i>twelfth</i>    | 20th | <i>twentieth</i>     | 28th | <i>twenty-eighth</i>  |
| 5th | <i>fifth</i>   | 13th | <i>thirteenth</i> | 21st | <i>twenty-first</i>  | 29th | <i>twenty-ninth</i>   |
| 6th | <i>sixth</i>   | 14th | <i>fourteenth</i> | 22nd | <i>twenty-second</i> | 30th | <i>thirtieth</i>      |
| 7th | <i>seventh</i> | 15th | <i>fifteenth</i>  | 23rd | <i>twenty-third</i>  | 31st | <i>thirty-first</i>   |
| 8th | <i>eighth</i>  | 16th | <i>sixteenth</i>  | 24th | <i>twenty-fourth</i> |      |                       |

## Fractions and decimals

|                                       |   |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| $\frac{1}{2}$ = <i>a half</i>         | $1\frac{1}{2}$ = <i>one and a half</i>          | 1.5 = <i>one point five</i>         |
| $\frac{1}{4}$ = <i>a quarter</i>      | $2\frac{1}{4}$ = <i>two and a quarter</i>       | 2.25 = <i>two point two five</i>    |
| $\frac{3}{4}$ = <i>three quarters</i> | $5\frac{3}{4}$ = <i>five and three quarters</i> | 5.75 = <i>five point seven five</i> |

**1 Write the words as cardinal numbers.**

- 1 a hundred and nine .....109.....
- 2 eighty-seven .....
- 3 two hundred and fifty-five .....
- 4 three hundred and thirty-two .....
- 5 two thousand and one .....
- 6 two million .....
- 7 two hundred thousand .....
- 8 fifty-one thousand, two hundred and ten .....

**2 Write the cardinal numbers as words.**

- 1 18 .....eighteen.....
- 2 90 .....
- 3 49 .....
- 4 71 .....
- 5 64 .....
- 6 97 .....
- 7 23 .....
- 8 14 .....

**3 Write the ordinal numbers as words.**

- 1 3rd .....third.....
- 2 9th .....
- 3 21st .....
- 4 30th .....
- 5 5th .....
- 6 2nd .....
- 7 43rd .....
- 8 1st .....

**4 Underline the correct answer.**

- 1 296 =
  - A two thousand, nine hundred and sixty
  - B two hundred and ninety-six
- 2 5,695 =
  - A five thousand, six hundred and ninety-five
  - B fifty six hundred and nine and five
- 3 10,000,000 =
  - A ten hundred thousand
  - B ten million
- 4 5.75 =
  - A five point seven five
  - B five comma seventy-five
- 5  $\frac{3}{4}$  =
  - A four thirds
  - B three quarters
- 6  $1\frac{1}{2}$  =
  - A a one and half
  - B one and a half
- 7 200,000 =
  - A two hundred thousand
  - B two hundred thousands

## CHECKPOINT 8

### Units 43–48

#### 1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Are there *a / any* people at the bus stop?
- 2 Sorry, I haven't got *some / any* time to talk now.
- 3 Look at this shirt! Can I borrow *an / some* iron?
- 4 Could I have *some / any* stamps, please?
- 5 I can't pay the bill! Can you lend me *a / some* money?
- 6 Did you buy *a / some* paper? I want to read the news.
- 7 Could you buy *a / some* bread at the supermarket?

#### 2 Complete the sentences. Use one word in each space.

- 1 How ~~much~~ does this cost?
- 2 Jane has got too ..... luggage.
- 3 Sorry, we haven't got ..... cakes left, not a single one.
- 4 If you haven't got ..... money, I can lend you some.
- 5 There are too ..... people in this room. It's crowded.
- 6 How ..... books have you got at home?
- 7 Are there ..... cinemas in this town?

#### 3 Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

- 1 Your trousers ~~are~~ on the chair.
- 2 The mice ..... under your bed!
- 3 The news ..... on at 10.00.
- 4 Don't worry! The police ..... coming.
- 5 People ..... worried about you!
- 6 My tooth ..... broken.
- 7 Your advice ..... exactly right!

#### 4 Complete each sentence with *much* or *many*.

- 1 I can't come to the cinema. I've got too ~~much~~ homework.
- 2 We can't all have baths. There isn't ..... hot water.
- 3 Some students don't have ..... opportunities to speak in English.
- 4 We can't stop for a meal now. We haven't got ..... time.
- 5 Paul felt lonely. He didn't have ..... friends.
- 6 Not everyone can sit down. There are too ..... people.
- 7 I couldn't sleep last night. There was too ..... noise in the street.

**5 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 I can't afford to go on holiday this year.  
I haven't got enough money..... to go on holiday this year.
- 2 Paula has got long hair.  
Paula's hair ..... long.
- 3 My suitcases are over there.  
My luggage ..... over there.
- 4 We are short of paper. Can we borrow some?  
We haven't got ..... paper. Can we borrow some?
- 5 I'm in a hurry!  
I ..... much time.
- 6 There are very few good restaurants in this city.  
There aren't ..... good restaurants in this city.

**6 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Unfortunately, David hasn't got a lot of friends. **many**  
unfortunately, David hasn't got many friends.....
- 2 I'm short of tea. **haven't**  
.....
- 3 There isn't a lot of sugar left. **much**  
.....
- 4 Can you tell me about hotels in the centre? **information**  
.....
- 5 Gerry owns this furniture. **Gerry's**  
.....
- 6 We have run out of milk. **any**  
.....

**7 Correct each sentence or question.**

- 1 The police here ~~is~~ very helpful. .... are.....
- 2 Can you give me an ~~advice~~? .....
- 3 The news this evening ~~were~~ interesting .....
- 4 The city centre was full of ~~peoples~~. .....
- 5 Thank you for the ~~informations~~. .....
- 6 I haven't got time enough. .....

**Think about grammar!**  
**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 Countable nouns have no plural.
- 2 *Any* is used only in questions.
- 3 *Too much* is the opposite of *not enough*.

# 49

## GRAMMAR

# Prepositions of place and movement

## *in, on, at, to, into*

### **in**

We use *in* when things or people are contained by other things.



*There are some cups **in** that cupboard.*

*Jack lives **in** Spain.*

*Paul lives **in** Green Street.*

*I live **in** the country, not in the city.*

*We arrived **in** Manchester. (a city)*

*Jim sat **in** an armchair.*

*Sarah is ill and is **in** hospital.*

### **on**

We use *on* when things or people are touching the surface of other things.



*Jane put her books **on** the table.*

- We use *on* when we talk about the cinema, radio, telephone and television.

*There's a good film **on** television tonight.*

*I can't talk now. I'm **on** the phone.*

- Other uses:

*It was crowded **on** the plane / bus / train.*

*Our house is **on** this side of the street.*

*There's a cinema **on** the left.*

### **at**

We use *at* when we talk about position in general. We use *at* with places but not with cities.

*You can buy stamps **at** the post office.*

*We arrived **at** London Airport. Compare: We arrived **in** London.*

*The bus stopped **at** the train station.*

*Wait for me **at** the roundabout.*

## GRAMMAR 49 PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE AND MOVEMENT

- **at the front, at the back, at the end**

There's a school **at the end** of the street.

Do you sit **at the front** of the class?

My garden is **at the back** of the house.

- **at home, at work, at school**

Mary is **at school**.

(We don't know which classroom.)

She isn't **at home**.

Mr King was **at work** yesterday.

(We don't know where exactly.)

My sister isn't **at work**. She's **at the doctor's**.

### **to**

We use *to* when we talk about the direction of movement, with verbs such as *go*, *come*, *bring*, *take* etc.



Last night we went **to** the cinema.

Are you coming **to** the party?

David brought his dog **to** school.

Tina took her sister **to** the circus.

- We do not use *to* with *home*.

*I have to go home now.*

- We do not use *to* with *here* or *there*.

*Sam is coming here tomorrow.*

### **into**

We use *into* when we talk about moving from the outside to the inside.



Tom ran **into** the room and sat down.

The children climbed **into** the car.

I went **into** the shop.

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Jim and Maria have bought a house *at / in* the country.
- 2 The cupboard is *in / at* the room, on the left.
- 3 What have you got *in / on* your bag?
- 4 George walked *at / into* the room and sat down.
- 5 Please put your books *at / on* my desk.
- 6 Will you be *in / at* home this evening?
- 7 Clare lives *at / in* the end of the street.
- 8 Are you going *at / to* school tomorrow?

### 2 Complete the sentences with *at* or *to*.

- 1 I'll be .....~~at~~..... the station at 7.30.
- 2 Have you ever been ..... Rome?
- 3 You can buy batteries ..... the corner shop.
- 4 Don't forget to send a postcard ..... the neighbours.
- 5 Do you usually walk ..... school?
- 6 Helen flew ..... New York to visit her penfriend.
- 7 David is studying ..... university.
- 8 There's a phone ..... the end of the corridor.
- 9 Tony was sent ..... the head teacher's office.
- 10 We arrived ..... our hotel just before midnight.

### 3 Complete the sentences with *in* or *at*.

- 1 Is there any milk .....*in*..... the fridge?
- 2 Is Sam ..... the basketball team?
- 3 I'll wait for you ..... the bus-stop.
- 4 I've lived ..... this city for more than ten years.
- 5 Paolo had an operation and is still ..... hospital.
- 6 John's house is ..... the corner of the street.
- 7 Mary is ..... work at the moment, but she'll be home soon.
- 8 What's on ..... the cinema this week?
- 9 Nick lives ..... Italy at the moment.
- 10 Lily always sits ..... the back of the class.

### 4 Complete the sentences with *in* or *on*.

- 1 Kate lives .....~~in~~..... the house at the end of the street.
- 2 The library is not ..... this side of the street.
- 3 Mark's flat is ..... the fifth floor.
- 4 You can go up to the fifth floor ..... a lift.
- 5 I stayed at home and watched a good film ..... television.
- 6 Harry and I sat ..... the living-room and talked.
- 7 Clare put her pizza ..... a small table and her dog ate it!
- 8 We got ..... the bus in Oxford.

## GRAMMAR 49 PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE AND MOVEMENT

### 5 Choose the most suitable word for each space.

- 1 How many desks are there ..... this classroom?  
A into      B at      C in
- 2 I knocked at the door, but there was nobody ..... home.  
A in      B on      C at
- 3 The dog jumped ..... the water and swam after its ball.  
A into      B to      C on
- 4 Jim stole the money, and now he is ..... prison.  
A at      B in      C into
- 5 As we were going ..... the building, the fire alarm rang.  
A at      B on      C into
- 6 I came here ..... Paris last year to study French.  
A to      B at      C in
- 7 Two boys were sitting ..... the steps, eating ice-cream.  
A at      B on      C in
- 8 Have you brought your dictionary ..... school today?  
A in      B at      C to

### 6 Complete the sentences with *at*, *to* or *-*.

- 1 Have you ever been ..... *to* ..... Rome?
- 2 Why don't we walk ..... the city centre?
- 3 When we arrived ..... the hotel, it was late.
- 4 Have you been ..... here before?
- 5 Was Helen ..... school yesterday?
- 6 I'll meet you ..... the bus station.
- 7 I'm going ..... home now. I'll see you later.
- 8 My mum went ..... hospital last week.

### 7 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- 1 Have you heard? Pat is ..... *in* ..... hospital at the moment.
- 2 Excuse me, is George ..... home?
- 3 Ann and Sue went to the city centre ..... the bus.
- 4 I liked the scene with the dog ..... the end of the film.
- 5 Jean has bought a cottage ..... the country.
- 6 Is Katerina ..... school today?
- 7 Peter put his suitcase ..... the seat next to him.
- 8 Nick ran ..... the room and shut the door with a bang.
- 9 Carmen took her pet mouse ..... school.
- 10 There are some good pictures ..... this book.



# 50

## GRAMMAR

# Prepositions and adverbials of place and position

### **inside**

*Inside* is stronger than *in*.

**inside**

*There was nobody **inside** the burning house.*

### **outside**

**outside**

*Outside* means *not in* or *not inside*.

*There was someone standing **outside** the classroom.*

We can use *inside* and *outside* without an object.

*Helen was standing **outside**.*

*Is there anyone **inside**?*

### **in and out with no object**

*Tom is **out**. Tom has gone **out**. (not at home)*

*Jill is **in**. (at home)*

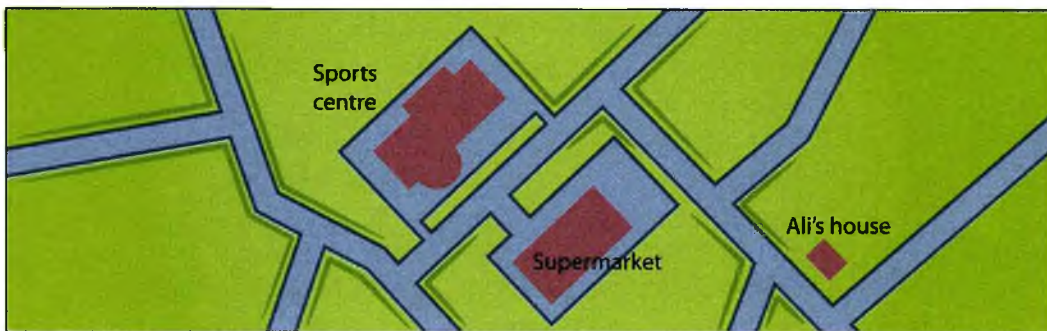
### **out of**

We use *out of* when we talk about moving from the inside to the outside.

*Helen ran **out of** the room.*

## GRAMMAR 50 PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBIALS OF PLACE AND POSITION

### **near**



*Ali's house is **near** the sports centre.*

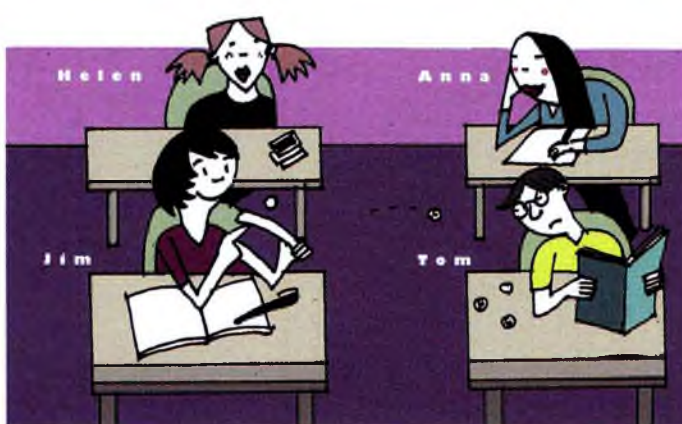
### **opposite**

We use *opposite* to mean in the same position on the other side.

*There is a supermarket **opposite** the sports centre.*

### **next to**

We use *next to* when we talk about things or people at the side of something or someone.



**next to**

*Jim sits **next to** Tom.*

### **in front of**

*Jim sits **in front of** Helen.*

*The motorbike is **in front of** the car.*

**in front of**

### **behind**

*Anna sits **behind** Tom.*

*David was **behind** me.*

**behind**

# ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

## 1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 Is Jack in / into at the moment?
- 2 There is a shop next / opposite our house, on the other side of the road.
- 3 Someone is waiting outside / out.
- 4 Kate was sitting in front of me / outside me on the bus.
- 5 Excuse me, is there a post office near / next to here?
- 6 The children ran out of / at the classroom.
- 7 David sits next to / opposite me, so I share his book.
- 8 I opened the parcel, but there was nothing inside / in.

## 2 Choose the correct word for each space.

- 1 Look! There's someone ~~in~~ the garden.  
A on                      B in                      C inside
- 2 I like sitting ..... a comfortable armchair.  
A inside                      B in                      C at
- 3 Take the first turning ..... the left.  
A on                      B opposite                      C at
- 4 Jane isn't here at the moment. She's .....  
A on                      B in                      C out
- 5 Is there anything good ..... television tonight?  
A near                      B in                      C on
- 6 Peter likes lying ..... the floor.  
A on                      B at                      C near
- 7 When you arrive ..... Paris, phone me.  
A in                      B into                      C inside
- 8 Who sits next ..... Nick?  
A -                      B at                      C to
- 9 What time do we go ..... home?  
A -                      B to                      C at
- 10 Can you wait ....., please?  
A out                      B out of                      C outside

## 3 Write a word or phrase which is the opposite of the word or phrase underlined.

- 1 There was an empty desk in front of Tina.                      ..... behind .....
- 2 David is out. He's not at home.                      .....
- 3 A lot of people were waiting outside the bank.                      .....
- 4 My house is a long way from the railway station.                      .....
- 5 I live on the same side of the road as the supermarket.                      .....
- 6 Is Harry in? A policeman wants to talk to him.                      .....
- 7 Who sits behind you in the English class?                      .....
- 8 Suddenly Misha walked into the room.                      .....

## GRAMMAR 50 PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBIALS OF PLACE AND POSITION

### 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 A Kevin is in the garden. He is out.  
B Kevin is in the garden. He is outside. ✓
- 2 A The supermarket is next the post office.  
B The supermarket is next to the post office.
- 3 A Is Jean in her bedroom?  
B Is Jean inside her bedroom?
- 4 A Cristina sits near of Marcia.  
B Cristina sits next to Marcia.
- 5 A There's nobody inside.  
B There's nobody in.
- 6 A Roy sits opposite Lara.  
B Roy sits opposite to Lara.

### 5 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- 1 When I looked in the box, there was nothing *inside*....
- 2 There was a big red bus ..... front of us.
- 3 Sorry, but Ann has gone ..... Can I take a message?
- 4 Suddenly George ran ..... of the room.
- 5 We can't play ..... because it's raining heavily.
- 6 The woman ..... me was pushing my back.
- 7 Who sits ..... to Paul?
- 8 Excuse me, is there a bank ..... here?
- 9 'Go back .....! You should be in bed.'
- 10 There was a tall man sitting in ..... of me and I couldn't see the film.

### 6 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use the word in bold.

- 1 Jack has gone out. **at**  
*Jack isn't at home.*.....
- 2 Anna sits behind David. **front**  
.....
- 3 Rita lives not far from the station. **near**  
.....
- 4 Please don't come into the room yet. **outside**  
.....
- 5 The man on one side of me was reading a magazine. **next**  
.....
- 6 I looked in the cupboard but it was empty. **inside**  
.....
- 7 I knocked on the door but there was nobody at home. **in**  
.....
- 8 Jan is not at home at the moment. **out**  
.....

## Articles 1 *a/an, the*

### Indefinite and definite

*There was **a** book on the desk.*

We do not have any information about this book. (indefinite)

*Where's **the** book with the answers?*

We know something about this book (it's the book with the answers). (definite)

### Indefinite article: *a/an*

We use *a/an*:

- with general descriptions  
*A **footballer** is a person who plays football.*  
*An **apple** is a type of fruit.*
- with a person's job  
*Mary is a doctor. I'm an engineer.*
- with a person's character or status  
*Helen is **a genius**! Paul is **a star**!*

### Definite article: *the*

We use *the*:

- with unique objects and known references  
***The moon** circles around the earth.* (There is only one moon.)  
***The Tower of London** is very old.* (When the noun comes before the name.)  
*but: Canterbury Cathedral* (The noun is after the name – no article)  
*I'm going to **the shop**.* (We know which shop.)
- with nationalities to mean the people of that country  
***The Spanish** love dancing.*
- with adjectives to describe groups of people  
*Jane has a job helping **the poor**.* ***The rich** usually live in big houses.*
- with collective nouns  
*Call **the police**!* ***The government** is very unpopular.*
- with geographical features  
Rivers ***the Loire, the Rhine***  
Oceans and seas ***the Atlantic, the Pacific, the Mediterranean***  
Deserts ***the Sahara, the Gobi***
- with musical instruments  
*Do you play **the violin**?*

**1 Complete each sentence with a, an or the.**

- 1 What's .....~~the~~..... matter? Are you all right?
- 2 Kate has bought ..... new car.
- 3 Some people think that ..... moon is made of cheese!
- 4 I'm collecting money for ..... poor.
- 5 Brian hasn't found ..... job yet.
- 6 Can you play ..... guitar?
- 7 Helen is ..... idiot!
- 8 Don't forget to turn off ..... television.

**2 Complete each sentence with a, an or the.**

- 1 There's .....~~a~~..... knife in .....~~the~~..... second drawer.
- 2 I'm going to ..... baker's to buy ..... loaf.
- 3 ..... art museum is in ..... city centre.
- 4 There's ..... cat in ..... garden!
- 5 David is ..... doctor at ..... local hospital.
- 6 We missed ..... beginning of ..... lovely film.
- 7 Mary plays ..... violin in ..... quartet.
- 8 It's ..... long time before ..... train arrives.

**3 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use the words in bold.**

- 1 Jane teaches English. **teacher**  
~~Jane is an English teacher.~~.....
- 2 There aren't any buses after this one. **last**  
 .....
- 3 Have you seen today's paper? **the**  
 .....
- 4 English people like tea. **the**  
 .....
- 5 Telescopes help you to see things that are far away. **a**  
 .....
- 6 Ann is a team-member. **of**  
 .....
- 7 The road finishes here. **end of**  
 .....
- 8 Tim studies at university. **student**  
 .....

## Articles 2: zero article

We sometimes use nouns with no article (without *a/an* or *the*). We call this 'zero article'.

- **General statements**

*Cars are not allowed to park here. Teachers work very hard.*

- **Uncountables**

*Sugar is bad for you. I usually drink milk.*

**But:** *The milk is in the fridge.*

- **Abstract ideas**

*Love makes the world go round. War is a terrible thing.*

Note that abstract words can be used in a definite way.

*The war ended two years later.*

- **Languages**

*Do you speak Turkish? I'm learning Spanish.*

- **Materials**

*This coat is made of plastic and leather.*

- **Buildings**

*Sue is in prison. (She committed a crime.)*

*Richard is in hospital. (He's ill.)*

Also: *bed, class, school, college, university, work*

When we talk about the building only, we use an article.

*Paul works **at the prison**. (He's not a prisoner.)*

*Wait for me outside **the hospital**. (the building)*

- **Countries, states and cities**

We also use the zero article with the names of countries, cities and streets.

*Paolo comes from Italy. My favourite city is Tarragona.*

*I bought these trousers from a shop in Green Street.*

Countries which are plural or a group use the definite article *the*.

***the Netherlands the United States***

- **Geographical features**

We use the zero article with regions, lakes, mountains, islands and streets.

*We visited Lake Como. It's in Northern Italy.*

*Diana climbed Mont Blanc in record time.*

- **Transport**

We use the zero article with *by* for general forms of transport.

*We went there by train. I love travelling by boat.*

**But:** *It was quicker to go **on** foot.*

**1 Underline the correct word or – (zero article) in each sentence.**

- 1 Tom has got a / – new leather coat.
- 2 Do you like *an* / – orange juice?
- 3 Kate teaches at *a* / – school in Leeds.
- 4 Have you ever been to *the* / – Italy?
- 5 *The* / – French love eating cheese.
- 6 I'm tired. It's time to go to *the* / – bed.
- 7 Could you pass *the* / – sugar, please?
- 8 We went to Scotland by *a* / – car.

**2 Complete each sentence with *a, an, the* or – (zero article).**

- 1 Where's .....~~the~~..... milk? I thought you bought some.
- 2 ..... students must not leave their bags here.
- 3 Paul went to ..... prison for stealing two cars.
- 4 Is this chair made of ..... wood?
- 5 It's much quicker on ..... foot.
- 6 A large crowd welcomed ..... President of the USA.
- 7 ..... smoking is not allowed in the dining-room.
- 8 Do you want ..... sugar in your tea?

**3 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Sue isn't up yet. **bed**  
*Sue is still in bed.*.....
- 2 We walked to the city centre. **foot**  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 David wears plastic glasses. **made of**  
 .....
- 4 George came here on the bus. **by**  
 .....
- 5 Naomi is a French speaker. **speaks**  
 .....
- 6 Martin is a prisoner. **prison**  
 .....
- 7 I'm not a tea drinker. **drink**  
 .....
- 8 Carlos is Spanish. **Spain**  
 .....



## Pronouns 1 *I, me, mine, this, one*

### Subject pronouns

|            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| <i>I</i>   | <i>he</i>  | <i>we</i>   |
| <i>you</i> | <i>she</i> | <i>they</i> |
|            | <i>it</i>  |             |

Subject pronouns come before the main verb:

*I think it's awful. Do you like this film?*

### Object pronouns

|            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| <i>me</i>  | <i>him</i> | <i>us</i>   |
| <i>you</i> | <i>her</i> | <i>them</i> |
|            | <i>it</i>  |             |

Object pronouns come after the main verb:

*I sent them a letter. Ellen told us the answer.*

### Possessive pronouns

|              |             |               |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>mine</i>  | <i>his</i>  | <i>ours</i>   |
| <i>yours</i> | <i>hers</i> | <i>theirs</i> |

*Is this pen yours or mine?*

- There is no apostrophe before the *s* of possessive pronouns.

### **this and that**

| <i>singular</i> | <i>plural</i> |         |
|-----------------|---------------|---------|
| <i>this</i>     | <i>these</i>  | (here)  |
| <i>that</i>     | <i>those</i>  | (there) |

*What's this?* (The thing in my hands.)

*I'd like those, please.* (The things in your hands.)

*This and that* can be used with a noun instead of *the*.

*This dress is nice.*

We often use *this* and *that* or *these* and *those* to make a contrast.

*I like these red shoes here, but I don't like those blue shoes.*

### **one/ones**

*I like that one. I don't like the blue ones.*

*'Did you buy a loaf?' 'I bought a small one.'*

*That was a nice biscuit. Can I have another one?*

**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Tony gave *we / us* a lift.
- 2 Tina and Mike say that we can borrow *theirs / they*.
- 3 Could you pass me *that / those* paper?
- 4 Is it your turn, or is it *my / mine*?
- 5 Do *this / these* trees belong to you?
- 6 Paula wants you to help *she / her*.
- 7 Excuse me, but this is *my / mine* seat.
- 8 Shall we phone *them / they* now?

**2 Complete each sentence with *this, that, these, those, one* or *ones*.**

- 1 I've just found ....this..... watch. Is it yours?
- 2 There are a lot of bags here. Which ..... is yours?
- 3 Do you like ..... houses at the end of the street?
- 4 Anna, ..... is my friend Sam. Have you met before?
- 5 Have one of ..... chocolates. They're my favourites!
- 6 'What's ..... ?' 'What?' 'The animal over there.'
- 7 I like the black trousers, but I don't like the green .....
- 8 Did you enjoy that ice-cream? Would you like another ..... ?

**3 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Is this your bike?  
Is this bike ....yours..... ?
- 2 That house belongs to me.  
That house is .....
- 3 Paul likes Jane. They're friends.  
Paul and Jane are friends. He likes .....
- 4 I want to know the time.  
Can you tell ..... the time, please.
- 5 We own this car.  
This car is .....
- 6 I invited John to my house for a talk.  
I wanted to talk to John so I invited ..... to my house.
- 7 Jane has arrived. Those are her suitcases.  
Jane has arrived. Those suitcases are .....
- 8 Sam stayed in London because he liked the clubs there.  
Sam stayed in London because he liked ..... clubs.

## Pronouns 2

**somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody, none, nothing**● **someone/somebody**

We use *someone/somebody* for a person we don't know.

*Someone/Somebody is knocking at the door.*

● **anyone/anybody**

We use *anyone/anybody* for questions and negatives

*Is anyone/anybody going to help me?*

*There isn't anyone/anybody here.*

● **something**

We use *something* for a thing we don't know.

*Something is wrong!*

● **anything**

We use *anything* for questions and negatives

*Is there anything in the box?*

● **no one/nobody**

We use *no one* or *nobody* **without not** as the negative of *someone/somebody*.

*I'm sure that no one/nobody saw me.*

● **none**

We use *none* to mean 'not any'. We do not use *not*.

*Can I have a biscuit? There are none left.*

We can use *none* with uncountables to mean 'not any'

*Can I have some milk? There is none left.*

● **none of**

We can use a singular or a plural verb. Some people think a singular verb is more correct.

*None of the children was/were tired.*

● **nothing**

We use *nothing* **without not** as the negative of *something*.

*I pressed the button, but nothing happened.*

● **everyone, everybody**

We use *everyone/everybody* with a singular verb to mean all of a number of people.

*Everyone knows the answer.*

● **everything**

We use *everything* with a singular verb to mean all of a number of things

*Everything is beautiful.*

**1 Complete each sentence with a pronoun beginning *some-, any-, no-* or *every-*.**

- 1 Can I ask you something ?
- 2 ..... has gone wrong today! It's been terrible!
- 3 ..... has taken my bike, and I'm going to find out who!
- 4 There is ..... nicer than a warm bath.
- 5 Does ..... here have a pen I could borrow?
- 6 I feel so unhappy! ..... loves me!
- 7 ..... , somewhere, wants a phone call from you!
- 8 ..... I have is yours!

**2 Change the underlined words to one word.**

- 1 Not one of the people in the room welcomed Peter. ..... *None* .....
- 2 All the people in the room clapped loudly. .....
- 3 Not one of the people I asked knew the way. .....
- 4 Does one of the people here know the time? .....
- 5 Not one person laughed at the head teacher's joke. .....
- 6 There isn't one single thing to eat. .....
- 7 All the things Roger planned went badly wrong. .....
- 8 There's a person at the door. .....

**3 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use the words in bold.**

- 1 There isn't anyone at home. **no one**  
*There is no one at home.* .....
- 2 We all know that. **everyone**  
 .....
- 3 There is nothing to do. **anything**  
 .....
- 4 The box was empty. **nothing**  
 .....
- 5 There aren't any left. **none**  
 .....
- 6 I met a person who knows you. **somebody**  
 .....
- 7 I didn't eat anything. **nothing**  
 .....
- 8 Do you know any people in this town? **anybody**  
 .....

## CHECKPOINT 9

### Units 49–54

#### 1 Choose the most suitable word for each space.

- 1 Tom wasn't to work today. Is he ill?  
A to B in C at
- 2 There was a queue in the street ..... the cinema.  
A to B into C outside
- 3 Are you going ..... school tomorrow?  
A at B to C in
- 4 Mario took his pet snake ..... his English class.  
A to B at C in
- 5 A new music shop has opened ..... the town centre.  
A to B in C into
- 6 There's a good film ..... the Arts Cinema this week.  
A at B in C to

#### 2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Have you got a / one bike?
- 2 Cindy is a / an young American.
- 3 Sorry I'm late. I missed a / the bus.
- 4 Excuse me, is there a / the cinema near here?
- 5 Ann's house is at a / the end of the street.
- 6 Once upon a / the time, there were three bears.
- 7 Can you tell me a / the time please?
- 8 I'm sorry, but I could only buy a / one ticket for the match.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with **a, an, the** or **-**.

- 1 Kate is .....a..... genius and always knows all .....the..... answers.
- 2 ..... Nile is one of ..... longest rivers in ..... world.
- 3 All we are saying is give ..... peace a chance.
- 4 Most of ..... people in ..... world enjoy ..... music.
- 5 Paul lives in ..... old house on ..... small island.
- 6 We learned ..... Spanish by listening to ..... radio.
- 7 ..... young usually enjoy ..... sport.

**4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 There is nothing in the cupboard. **isn't**  
*There isn't anything in the cupboard.*
- 2 All the people enjoyed the party. **everyone**  
 .....
- 3 Everyone was at home. **out**  
 .....
- 4 There is a person in the garden. **someone**  
 .....
- 5 I promise to say nothing. **won't**  
 .....
- 6 There was no one on the bus. **wasn't**  
 .....

**5 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 The dog has lost ..... *its* ..... collar.
- 2 Has anyone seen ..... wallet? I think I've lost it.
- 3 My pencil broke so I borrowed ..... from a friend.
- 4 Jo and Steve have got two children. .... names are Ian and Megan.
- 5 This book is ..... . It's got my name on it.
- 6 We live in this house. It's .....
- 7 This bike is mine and ..... one is Jim's.
- 8 Anna says that this bag is ....., not Maria's.

**6 Correct each sentence or question.**

- 1 The love makes world go round! *Love makes the world go round!*
- 2 Help! Call police! .....
- 3 Kate enjoyed her holiday at Turkey. ....
- 4 Have you met mine brother? .....
- 5 No one of the questions was easy. ....
- 6 Those bags are there's. ....
- 7 It's quicker to go to the station by foot. ....
- 8 Everything I wrote were wrong. ....

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 Nouns don't always have an article.
- 2 *Mine* can only be used at the end of a clause.
- 3 *Near* is the same as *at*.

# 55

## GRAMMAR

### Possession 1 *This is my bike.*

Possession means having or owning things.

#### Possessive adjectives

|           |             |            |            |            |            |              |
|-----------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| <i>my</i> | <i>your</i> | <i>his</i> | <i>her</i> | <i>its</i> | <i>our</i> | <i>their</i> |
|-----------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|--------------|

*This is **my** bike. Those are **our** books.*

#### Possessive pronouns

|             |              |            |             |             |               |
|-------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>mine</i> | <i>yours</i> | <i>his</i> | <i>hers</i> | <i>ours</i> | <i>theirs</i> |
|-------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|

*This bike is **mine**.*

*Those books are **ours**.*

We cannot say:

~~*This is mine bike.*~~ X

~~*This bike is the mine.*~~ X

#### Whose ... ?

*Whose bike is this? It's **mine**.*

*Whose books are these? They're **ours**.*

*Whose is this bike?*

*Whose are these books?*

- *Who's* (*who is*) does not have the same meaning as *whose* (*of who*), but it has the same pronunciation.

#### have got

*Jane **has got** a sports car.*

***Have you got** a computer?*

The meaning of *have got* (or *have*) can sometimes depend on the context.

***Have you got** a minute? (I want to talk to you.)*

***Have you got** a pen? (I want to borrow it.)*

- US and some GB speakers prefer *have*.

*Jane **has** a sports car.*

*Do you **have** a computer?*

→ SEE ALSO

Grammar 53: Pronouns 1

**1 Write a new sentence for each situation using *have/has got*.**

- 1 Your phone number is in my book. I've ~~got your phone number in my book.~~
- 2 This new bike belongs to Harry. ....
- 3 There is no time for me to do my homework. ....
- 4 Sue is suffering from a bad cold. ....
- 5 I know, what about this idea ... ? .....

**2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Are these books yours / your?
- 2 Is this *her* / *hers* house?
- 3 This car is *my* / *mine*.
- 4 This isn't *us* / *our* suitcase.
- 5 *Their* / *Theirs* bags are missing.
- 6 Is that *your* / *yours* pullover?
- 7 This is *my* / *mine* brother.
- 8 That bike is *her* / *hers*.
- 9 *Whose* / *Who's* bag is this?
- 10 I love *it's/its* colour!

**3 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Do they own that big house? **theirs**  
~~Is that big house theirs?~~ .....
- 2 Who owns this bike? **whose**  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 These are my books. **mine**  
 .....  
 .....
- 4 Does she own that boat? **hers**  
 .....  
 .....
- 5 Do you own a computer? **got**  
 .....  
 .....
- 6 Is that your dog? **yours**  
 .....  
 .....
- 7 We own these houses. **ours**  
 .....  
 .....
- 8 This is her seat. **hers**  
 .....  
 .....
- 9 This is their classroom. **theirs**  
 .....  
 .....
- 10 Who does this CD belong to? **whose**  
 .....  
 .....



## Possession 2 *Jane's house; the roof of the house*

### Possessive apostrophe

We use an apostrophe when we talk about things belonging to people.

- **Singular ('s)**

We use 's when the thing or things belong to one person.

*This is Jane's house. That's my friend's bike.*

*These are my friend's books.* (one friend, but two or more books)

- **Plural (s')**

We use s' when the thing or things belong to two or more people.

*These are the boys' desks.* (two or more boys)

*This is the boys' classroom.* (two or more boys, but one classroom)

We can put two words with apostrophes together, but we usually avoid this.

*Is that Ann's aunt's car? = Is this the car that belongs to Ann's aunt?*

- **Belonging to two people**

*This is Carol and Tony's house.*

- **Names ending in s**

*St James' Park* or *St James's Park*

### **of**

We can use *of* when we talk about things belonging to things.

*The roof of the house was damaged.*

We can put two nouns together without *of* and make a compound word. We often do this when one thing is part of another.

*I saw this dress in the shop window.*

*Of* is often used for formal names.

*The University of Westminster*

### **Own and belong**

You *own* something, but something *belongs to you*.

*I own this bike. Do you own this bike?*

*This bike belongs to me. Does this bike belong to you?*



To make a word plural we add only *s* or *es*. If there is no possession, we do not use an apostrophe.

There is no apostrophe in possessive pronouns: *yours, hers, its, ours, theirs*.

**1 Add apostrophes to these sentences if necessary.**

- 1 Is that book yours or Sams? ..... *is that book yours or Sam's?* .....
- 2 Davids sisters cats name is Syrup. ....
- 3 Have you met Pats brothers? .....
- 4 Are those shoes hers? .....
- 5 These are the girls fathers. ....
- 6 Those are the teachers cars. ....
- 7 These sandwiches are ours, not yours. ....
- 8 My books are in my friends bag. ....
- 9 Whose gloves are these? .....
- 10 That is Jacks fathers bike. ....

**2 Write compound words.**

- 1 the window of the shop ..... *the shop window* .....
- 2 the leg of the table .....
- 3 the door of the car .....
- 4 the playground of the school .....
- 5 the wheel of the bicycle .....
- 6 the handle of the door .....

**3 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 This desk belongs to Jim.  
This *is Jim's desk* .....
- 2 That belongs to her.  
That's .....
- 3 Does this belong to you or him?  
Is this ..?
- 4 Who does this ruler belong to?  
Whose ..?
- 5 Do the empty seats belong to them?  
Are the ..?
- 6 We own this house.  
This ..... **us**.
- 7 Joe and Ella own this caravan.  
This is ..
- 8 Does that bag belong to Sarah's teacher?  
Is that ..... bag?

## Adjectives

- Adjectives tell you more about the size, shape, colour, etc. of nouns. They do not have plural *s* or other changes.

*It was a lovely day. These are tasty apples.*  
*He is tall. She is tall. They are tall.*

- When we use an adjective with a noun, the adjective must come before the noun.

*Look at my new coat! What a lovely hat! You lucky thing!*  
*an old man a young woman*

- The article belongs to the noun, not the adjective. So, it is not possible to say: *what a lovely, you lucky, an old, a young.*

### What's it like?

We use this question when we ask someone to give an opinion about, or describe, something or someone. We use an adjective in the answer.

*What's your teacher like? She's fantastic!*  
*What's Joe's house like? It's enormous!*

### Classes and nationalities

We can use *the* + adjective to describe a group of people.

- Groups of people  
*the young the old the rich the poor*
- Some nationalities  

|                     |                       |                    |                    |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>the French</i>   | <i>the Chinese</i>    | <i>the English</i> | <i>the Spanish</i> |
| <i>the Japanese</i> | <i>the Portuguese</i> | <i>the Dutch</i>   | <i>the Welsh</i>   |
| <i>the Swiss</i>    | <i>the British</i>    | <i>the Irish</i>   | <i>the Danish</i>  |
- Other nationalities use noun plurals.  
*the Italians the Turks the Greeks the Germans the Americans*

### Verbs of sensation

We use adjectives with verbs of sensation: *feel, look, taste, smell, sound.*

*This tastes good. I feel ill. It looks great.*  
*It feels very soft. This cheese smells bad.*  
*The washing-machine sounds terrible.*

### too and enough

We use *too* + adjective and *not* + adjective + *enough* to show that an action is impossible, or wrong.

*The water is too cold. The water is not warm enough. (We can't swim here.)*  
*Stop! You're going too fast!*

**1 Write questions with *What ... like?***

- 1 *What's your teacher like?* .....  
My teacher? She's a very nice person.
- 2 .....  
The end of the film? Wait and see!
- 3 .....  
My parents? When you meet them, you can decide!
- 4 .....  
The weather in my country? It rains a lot.
- 5 .....  
My next door neighbours? They make a lot of noise!
- 6 .....  
Helen's new boyfriend? I haven't met him yet.
- 7 .....  
The city centre? There are some shops and a cinema.
- 8 .....  
The desks in my classroom? Old and uncomfortable!

**2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 Mm, this tastes ..... *good!* ..... . How did you cook it?
- 2 The ..... come from Switzerland.
- 3 The ..... sometimes feel ill and lonely.
- 4 You look ..... . Do you feel all right?
- 5 The ..... come from Japan.
- 6 The ..... usually live in enormous houses.
- 7 The ..... come from China.
- 8 Your bike sounds ..... . Is there something wrong with it?

**3 Complete each sentence with *too* or *enough*.**

- 1 I can't work today. It's ..... *too* ..... hot!
- 2 I'd like to buy those shoes, but they are ..... expensive.
- 3 We need another ladder. This one isn't long ..... .
- 4 I can't do this exercise because it's ..... difficult.
- 5 Nobody bought my bike because it was ..... old.
- 6 We had to change rooms because our room wasn't big ..... .
- 7 John didn't win the race because his car wasn't fast ..... .
- 8 Don't play near the railway line. It's ..... dangerous.

## Order of adjectives *happy, rich and famous*

### Adjectives with *-ed* or *-ing* *tired, tiring*

#### More than one adjective

- We can join adjectives with *and*.  
*Jim has become happy **and** rich.*
- If we join more than two adjectives with commas we usually put *and* between the last two.  
*Jim has become happy, rich **and** famous.*

#### Order of adjectives

- If we use more than one adjective, the order is important. There are four main groups of adjectives, numbered here 1 to 4.
  - One or more of these types of adjective:
    - Opinion: *beautiful*
    - Size: *large*
    - Age: *old*
    - Shape: *round*
    - Temperature: *cold*
  - Colours: *green, blue, etc.*
  - Material (what it is made of): *wooden, plastic, etc.*
  - Purpose (what it is for): *a **running** shoe*
  - Noun
 

|  |   |   |   |                            |
|--|---|---|---|----------------------------|
| 1c   | 3 | 4 | 5 |                            |
| <i>an old, leather, football boot</i>          |   |   |   | (notice the use of commas) |
| 1c   | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5                          |
| <i>some new, orange, lycra, cycling shorts</i> |   |   |   |                            |
| 1a   | 2 | 3 | 5 |                            |
| <i>a beautiful, green, silk shirt</i>          |   |   |   |                            |
- A word, usually a noun (e.g. *football*), can be used as an adjective.  
*football boot tennis racket*

#### Adjectives ending *-ed* or *-ing*

Some adjectives have forms ending in *-ed* and *-ing* with different meanings.

*I am tired.*                      (*I feel tired.*)

*My work is tiring.*          (*It makes me tired.*)

|               |                    |                 |                 |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>bored</i>  | <i>interested</i>  | <i>excited</i>  | <i>worried</i>  | <i>fascinated</i>  |
| <i>boring</i> | <i>interesting</i> | <i>exciting</i> | <i>worrying</i> | <i>fascinating</i> |

## GRAMMAR 58 ORDER OF ADJECTIVES; ADJECTIVES WITH -ED OR -ING

### 1 Write the words in the correct order.

- 1 shirt cotton a new lovely ..... *a lovely new cotton shirt*
- 2 large wooden old a house .....
- 3 apples large two green beautiful .....
- 4 film an new interesting science-fiction .....
- 5 green vase old a beautiful .....
- 6 short a coat red plastic .....
- 7 carpet a old beautiful blue .....
- 8 puppy little a sweet black .....

### 2 Write compound words.

- 1 a boot for playing football ..... *a football boot*
- 2 a shoe for running in .....
- 3 a road in the country .....
- 4 a stadium for athletics .....
- 5 a costume for swimming .....
- 6 a village on a mountain .....
- 7 a student at university .....
- 8 a bus for the school .....

### 3 Complete each sentence with a word ending in -ed or -ing.

- 1 I think this film is ~~boring~~..... .
- 2 I don't find politics i..... .
- 3 Walking makes me t..... .
- 4 This book is really e..... .
- 5 Kate is doing her exams and is w..... .
- 6 Are you i..... in basketball?
- 7 Dick always feels b..... at the beach.
- 8 Jane finds computers very c..... .

### 4 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 I couldn't concentrate at school today because I was very tired / tiring.
- 2 Sarah was shocked / shocking by her friend's news.
- 3 There's an amazed / amazing robot display at the Science Museum.
- 4 We were very disappointed / disappointing with our poor exam results.
- 5 I don't understand this film. It's very confused / confusing.
- 6 It's been a long, tired / tiring day and now I want to go home and relax.
- 7 Joe's parents were really worried / worrying when he ran away from home.
- 8 My brother told a very amused / amusing joke at dinner last night.

## Making comparisons 1:

### comparative adjectives

*Lisa is older than Clara.*

- Comparative adjectives compare two things. We use *than* with comparative adjectives.

*Lisa is **older than** Clara.*

*Paula is **a faster swimmer than** Jane.*

- We use *(just) as ... as* when the things compared are equal.

*Harry is **(just) as good as** Jack.*

*Harry is **(just) as good a player as** Jack.*

- We use *not as ... as* when we compare things negatively.

*Cathy is **not as good as** Mary.*

*Cathy is **not as good a player as** Mary.*

- We use *more ... than* and *less ... than* for longer adjectives.

*This game is **more interesting than** the last one.*

*I think this game is **less interesting than** that one.*

### Forming comparative adjectives

- One-syllable words: add *-er* to the adjective.

*long* → *longer*

- One-syllable words ending with one consonant: double the final consonant.

*big* → *bigger*

- Words ending in consonant + *y*: change *y* to *i*.

*dry* → *drier*

- Two or more syllables: use *more*.

*interesting* → *more interesting*

### Exceptions

- Some adjectives with two syllables can be formed in either way.

*healthy* → *healthier* OR *more healthy*

Others include: *quiet*, *tired* and words ending *-ow*, *-y*, *-le* and *-er*.

### Irregular adjectives

*good* → *better*    *bad* → *worse*

*little* → *less*

- To talk about family members, *old* has an irregular comparative → *elder*

*This is my **elder** sister.*

## GRAMMAR 59 MAKING COMPARISONS 1: COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

1 Write a sentence for each picture. Use the comparative form of the adjective in brackets.



1 (tall)

The girl is taller than the boy.....



2 (young)

.....



3 (expensive)

.....



4 (short)

.....



5 (small)

.....



6 (big)

.....



## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 2 Write the comparative form of each adjective.

- 1 big ..... *bigger* .....
- 2 happy .....
- 3 beautiful .....
- 4 angry .....
- 5 bad .....
- 6 important .....
- 7 dry .....
- 8 good .....
- 9 hot .....
- 10 expensive .....

### 3 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.


- 1 This book is better ..... *than* ..... the other one.
- 2 Jim is not ..... tall as his sister.
- 3 I don't like running. It's ..... interesting than swimming.
- 4 This film is funnier ..... the last one we saw.
- 5 Do this exercise first. It's ..... important.
- 6 These boots are cheaper ..... the other ones.
- 7 Don't worry! It's not ..... bad as you think!
- 8 This road is longer ..... I thought.

### 4 Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use a comparative form of the adjective in brackets.


- 1 Tim is older than Sarah. (young)  
Sarah is *younger than Tim* .....
- 2 Our house is larger than yours. (small)  
Your house is .....
- 3 Bill is not as tall as David. (short)  
Bill is .....
- 4 Jack's marks are worse than mine. (good)  
My marks .....
- 5 This book is the same price as that one. (expensive)  
That book is .....
- 6 Your bike is slower than mine. (fast)  
My bike .....

## GRAMMAR 59 MAKING COMPARISONS 1: COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

- 5 Read the information about France and Spain. Complete the sentences about the countries, using a comparative form of the words in brackets.

| France             |               |  |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| Size               | 550,000 sq km |  |
| Population         | 64 million    |  |
| Summer temperature | 18° C         |  |
| Winter temperature | 5° C          |  |
| Rainfall           | 650mm         |  |

| Spain              |               |  |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| Size               | 500,000 sq km |  |
| Population         | 40 million    |  |
| Summer temperature | 24° C         |  |
| Winter temperature | 11° C         |  |
| Rainfall           | 300mm         |  |

- 1 France ..... ~~is bigger than~~ ..... Spain. (big)
- 2 Spain ..... France. (small)
- 3 Spain's population ..... France's population. (large)
- 4 France's population ..... not ..... Spain's population. (small)
- 5 Spain ..... France, in summer. (hot)
- 6 Spain ..... not ..... France, in winter. (cold)
- 7 Spain ..... not ..... France. (rainy)
- 8 France ..... Spain. (rainy)

# 60

## GRAMMAR

### Making comparisons 2:

#### superlative adjectives *She is the fastest runner.*

- Comparative adjectives compare two things.  
*She is a faster runner **than** John.*
- Superlative adjectives compare one thing in a group with all the other things in that group.  
*She is the fastest runner in **the world**. He is the tallest man I know.*
- We can use a superlative without a noun.  
*Which cake is **the biggest**? I think this dress is **the prettiest**.*
- We usually use *the* before a superlative, but we can use a possessive (*my, your, his, her* etc.).  
*Jane is wearing **her best** dress. Peter is **my youngest** brother.*

#### Forming superlative adjectives

- One-syllable word: add *-est* to the adjective.  
*long* → *longest*  
*This is **the longest** river in our country.*
- One-syllable words ending with one consonant: double the final consonant.  
*big* → *bigger*
- Words ending in consonant + *y*: change *y* to *i*.  
*dry* → *drier*
- Most adjectives with two or more syllables: use *most* + adjective  
*modern* → *most modern*  
*interesting* → *most interesting*  
*This is **the most interesting** book in the shop*

#### Exceptions

- Adjectives with two or more syllables ending in consonant + *y*: add *est*.  
*happy* → *happiest*
- Some adjectives with two syllables can be formed in either way.  
*common* → *commonest* or *most common*  
Others include: *quiet, tired* and words ending *-ow, -y, -le* and *-er*.

#### Irregular superlatives

*good* → *best*    *bad* → *worst*  
*little* → *least*    *old* → *eldest* (for family members)

## GRAMMAR 60 MAKING COMPARISONS 2: SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

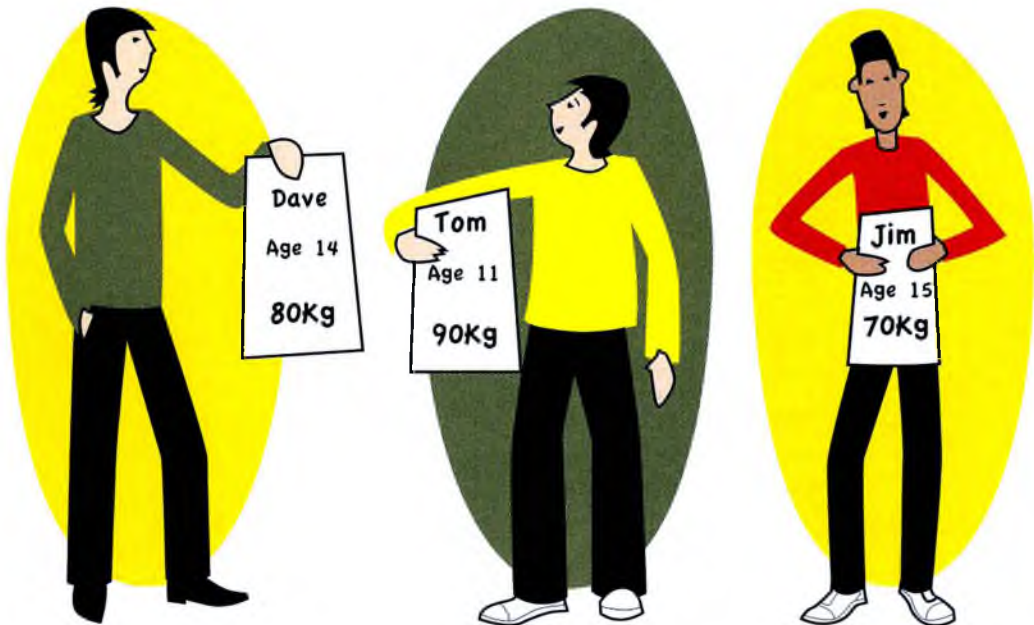
### 1 Write the superlative form of each adjective.

- 1 long ..... the longest .....
- 2 fit .....
- 3 funny .....
- 4 terrible .....
- 5 good .....
- 6 wide .....
- 7 nasty .....
- 8 strange .....

### 2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 This is the *better* / *best* restaurant in the town.
- 2 This castle is one of the *older* / *oldest* in Europe.
- 3 Your hotel is *more* / *most* comfortable than ours.
- 4 This is the *worse* / *worst* holiday I have ever had!
- 5 Bill is the *richer* / *richest* person in the world.
- 6 George is *happier* / *happiest* than he was.
- 7 This film is *more* / *most* interesting than the last one.

### 3 Look at the picture and write sentences using the superlative form of the words in brackets.



- 1 Dave (tall) ..... Dave is the tallest .....
- 2 Tom (short) .....
- 3 Jim (old) .....
- 4 Tom (young) .....
- 5 Tom (heavy) .....
- 6 Jim (light) .....

## CHECKPOINT 10

### Units 55–60

#### 1 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- Excuse me, does this umbrella belong to you?
- Kate is ..... tallest in the class.
- Sorry, but your work isn't good .....
- Jane is older ..... Peter.
- Kate hasn't ..... any money for the bus.
- My bike isn't ..... fast as yours.
- ..... bike is this? Is it Helen's?
- Both stories are good, but I think this one is ..... than the other.

#### 2 Rewrite each sentence twice using the words in brackets. Do not change the meaning.

- This pen belongs to me.  
This is my pen. ..... (my)  
This pen is mine. ..... (mine)
- Those bags belong to the students.  
..... (their)  
..... (theirs)
- Tom owns that house.  
..... (Tom's)  
..... (Tom)
- That's Paul and Julie's baby.  
..... (their)  
..... (theirs)
- Who owns this farm?  
..... (belong)  
..... (whose)
- Does that bike belong to you?  
..... (your)  
..... (yours)
- Oscar and Cathy own that boat.  
..... (Oscar and Cathy's)  
..... (their)

**3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 We stayed in a ~~B~~ house.  
A country beautiful old    B beautiful old country    C old beautiful country
- 2 'Did you like the film?' 'No, I thought it was .....'  
A boring    B bores    C bored
- 3 Is your friend Tom ..... ?  
A England    B an English    C English
- 4 Ann bought a ..... skirt.  
A lovely blue    B blue lovely    C blue and lovely
- 5 Brian and Julia are a .....  
A young couple married    B young married couple    C married young couple
- 6 This is ..... school in the country.  
A a best    B the best    C best

**4 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 My tea isn't hot enough. **cold**  
..... *My tea is too cold.* .....
- 2 That film was great! **what**  
.....
- 3 You are too young to see this film. **old**  
.....
- 4 Describe your brother. **like**  
.....
- 5 This piece of string is too short. **long**  
.....
- 6 I don't find sport interesting. **interested**  
.....

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 Adjectives come after the noun they describe.
- 2 Superlatives are stronger than comparatives.
- 3 We do not add an apostrophe to plural nouns when we make a possessive form.

## Adverbs: formation and position

*Jim wrote quickly.*

Adverbs generally give us more information about an action and tell us how it was done.

*Jim wrote the letter **quickly**.*

### Forming adverbs

Add *-ly* to an adjective. Adjectives ending in *-y*: change *y* to *-ily*. Adjectives ending in *-ic*: add *-ally*.

*beautiful* → *beautifully*  
*happy* → *happily*  
*terrific* → *terrifically*

### Position of adverbs

- Adverbs usually come after the subject or after the object.

*Jim **quickly** wrote the letter.* (Jim is the subject.)

*Jim wrote the letter **quickly**.* (The letter is the object.)

We cannot say: *Jim wrote ~~quickly~~ the letter.* ✗

- When the verb does not have an object, the adverb goes after the verb.

*Tom runs **quickly**.*

We cannot say: *Tom ~~quickly~~ runs.* ✗

- Some sentences include a phrase describing place or manner:

*Jim ran up the stairs.*

The adverb usually goes before the verb, or after the phrase.

*Jim **quickly** ran up the stairs.*

*Jim ran up the stairs **quickly**.*

### Irregular adverbs

|           |             |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| adjective | <i>good</i> | <i>fast</i> | <i>hard</i> |
| adverb    | <i>well</i> | <i>fast</i> | <i>hard</i> |

#### → SEE ALSO

**Grammar 2:** Frequency adverbs

**Grammar 18:** Present perfect and past simple: time expressions

## GRAMMAR 61 ADVERBS: FORMATION AND POSITION

### 1 Write the adverb form of each adjective.

- 1 quick      quickly.
- 2 fast      .....
- 3 wonderful      .....
- 4 happy      .....
- 5 bad      .....
- 6 special      .....
- 7 good      .....
- 8 slow      .....
- 9 beautiful      .....
- 10 sad      .....

### 2 Complete each sentence with an adverb from the box.

|            |                |             |           |
|------------|----------------|-------------|-----------|
| completely | <u>freshly</u> | frequently  | greatly   |
| specially  | well           | beautifully | sincerely |

- 1 All the food in our restaurant is .....freshly..... prepared.
- 2 I am ..... grateful for your help.
- 3 The head teacher was ..... loved by the whole school.
- 4 Lydia passed the test because she was ..... prepared.
- 5 This is a ..... made piece of jewellery.
- 6 We made this cake ..... for you.
- 7 The game is not ..... finished yet.
- 8 Buckingham Palace is one of London's ..... visited sights.

### 3 Change each sentence. Use the underlined word to make an adverb.

- 1 Jim is a good worker.  
Jim works well.....
- 2 Ann is a wonderful dancer.  
.....
- 3 Carol is an accurate writer.  
.....
- 4 Tina is a bad singer.  
.....
- 5 Sam is a secret smoker.  
.....
- 6 Ruth is a fast runner.  
.....
- 7 Pablo is a careful driver.  
.....
- 8 Liz is a quick reader.  
.....



## *It* and *there* as subjects

### *it, its* and *it's*

- *It* can be a subject or object pronoun.  
*It stops here. Do you like it?*
- The possessive form of *it* is *its*.  
*Look at this fish. Look at its beautiful eyes!*
- *It's* can be the contracted form of *it is* or *it has*.  
*It's on the shelf. It's got six legs.*  
*It is on the shelf. It has got six legs.*

### Expressions with *it*

We often use *it* with the verb *be* in expressions which have no subject.

*It's raining.*

*It's snowing.*

*It's cold / hot / sunny.*

*It's a lovely day.*

*It's half past two.*

*It's late.*

*It's lovely to be here.*

*It's a pity about the weather.*

*It's a good idea to arrive early.*

*It doesn't matter.*

Other tenses are also possible.

*It was three o'clock.*

*It didn't matter.*

### *there, their* and *they're*

- We can use *there* to say that something exists.  
*There is a strange dog in the garden.*
- *Their* is the possessive form of *they*.  
*Tim and Ann have brought their car.*
- *They're* is the contracted form of *they are*.  
*'Where are my gloves?' 'They're on the seat.'*

### *there is/are*

We can use *there is* or *there are* to say that something exists.

*There's a spider in the bath.*

*There are lots of trees in your street.*

We use *it is/they are* when we talk about something that we have already mentioned.

*There's a spider in the bath. It's not very big.*

*There are lots of trees in your street. They're beautiful!*

**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Is there / *their* / *they're* any milk left?
- 2 Oh no! *It's* / *Its* snowing again.
- 3 Tim and Jean have lost *there* / *their* / *they're* tickets.
- 4 We're nearly at the cinema. *It's* / *Its* not far.
- 5 *There* / *Their* / *They're* are lots of people here today.
- 6 This isn't your bag. I think *it's* / *its* Tom's.
- 7 Most of my friends say *there* / *their* / *they're* happy.
- 8 The dog hurt *it's* / *its* leg so we took it to the vet.
- 9 When *there* / *their* / *they're* letter arrives, can you tell me what they say?
- 10 I'm sorry, *it's* / *its* too late to go out now.

**2 Complete each sentence with *it, its, it's, there, their* or *they're*.**

- 1 The others are outside. ~~...they're...~~ waiting for us.
- 2 The school has invited all ..... old pupils to a party.
- 3 What an awful day! ..... raining again!
- 4 ..... doesn't matter about money. You can pay me back later.
- 5 ..... is no way I can get to school before 8.30.
- 6 Some people lose ..... keys very easily!
- 7 ..... a lovely day today.
- 8 I like your new shoes. .... very fashionable!
- 9 Kate stopped and listened. .... was something wrong!
- 10 ..... a pity about John's accident.

**3 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 .....!t..... wasn't a good idea to ring the doorbell.
- 2 Are ..... any good restaurants in this town?
- 3 Is ..... any cheese in that sandwich?
- 4 Has anyone forgotten ..... homework?
- 5 ..... was a pity that we missed the beginning of the film.
- 6 Is ..... a cinema near here, please?
- 7 Is that an Indian elephant? ..... has got very small ears.
- 8 The dog has left ..... bone in my bed again!
- 9 Is ..... any chance of meeting David tonight?
- 10 ..... was snowing when we arrived.

## Have, have got, get

### have (possession)

- When we use the present perfect, *have* is the auxiliary or 'helping' verb.  
*I have eaten a pizza. Has Jim written his letters?*
- We also use *have* as a main verb, to talk about possession.  
*I have a new bike. Carlos has a lot of homework.*
- When *have* is the main verb it uses *do/does* to make questions and negatives.  
*Do you have a sister? No, I don't have any sisters or brothers.*

#### Present simple

| Statements                | Negative                        | Questions                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>I/you/we/they have</i> | <i>I/you/we/they don't have</i> | <i>Do I/you/we/they have?</i> |
| <i>he/she/it has</i>      | <i>he/she/it doesn't have</i>   | <i>Does he/she/it have?</i>   |

#### Past simple

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>Statements</b> | <i>I/you/he/she/it/we/they had</i>         |
| <b>Negative</b>   | <i>I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't have</i> |
| <b>Questions</b>  | <i>Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they have?</i>   |

### have got

- We can also use *have got* to talk about possession.  
*Ann has got a new car. Has Ann got a new car?*

| Statements                    | Negative                | Questions                      |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>I/you/we/they have got</i> | <i>I haven't got</i>    | <i>Have I/you/we/they got?</i> |
| <i>he/she/it has got</i>      | <i>he/she/it hasn't</i> | <i>Has he/she/it got?</i>      |

- There are no past forms of *have got*, we use the past forms of *have*.  
*Did Ann have a car? Ann didn't have a car.*
- US English prefers *have* to *have got*.  
British English: *I've got a dog and two cats.*  
US English: *I have a dog and two cats.*

### get

We use *get* in informal speech. It has a number of different meanings.

|                                  |          |                                      |           |
|----------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Can you get me some milk?</i> | (buy)    | <i>I got a letter this morning.</i>  | (receive) |
| <i>Are you getting tired?</i>    | (become) | <i>How much do you get?</i>          | (earn)    |
| <i>When did you get here?</i>    | (arrive) | <i>I'll just go and get my coat.</i> | (collect) |
| <i>How far have you got?</i>     | (reach)  |                                      |           |

**1 Change the statements into questions or negatives.**

- 1 Jane has got a new car. (question)  
Has Jane got a new car?.....
- 2 I've got a stamp. (negative)  
 .....
- 3 Jim had a cold last week. (question)  
 .....
- 4 We've got a problem. (question)  
 .....
- 5 You have a test today. (negative)  
 .....
- 6 Paul has a sister. (question)  
 .....

**2 Change each sentence or question into the past tense.**

- 1 I've got a cat.  
I had a cat......
- 2 Have you got a bike?  
 .....
- 3 Jim hasn't got any time.  
 .....
- 4 David's got an exam.  
 .....
- 5 We haven't got a house.  
 .....
- 6 Has Tina got a cold?  
 .....

**3 Replace the underlined words with a verb from the box.**

arrive in      become      buy      collect      ~~earn~~      receive

- 1 How much do you get .....~~earn~~..... in your new job?
- 2 Did you get ..... any letters this morning?
- 3 Could you get ..... me some stamps when you go shopping?
- 4 Put your coat on. You don't want to get ..... cold.
- 5 I have to get ..... my trousers from the cleaner's today.
- 6 What time do we get to ..... London?

**Make, do, go go shopping****Phrasal verbs look it up****make and do**

Generally, we *do* an action but we *make* something that was not there before. *Do* and *make* are also used in expressions. Always check in a dictionary.

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>do your work/homework</i>        | <i>make a cake</i>              |
| <i>do the cooking/ironing, etc.</i> | <i>make a mistake</i>           |
| <i>do your hair/teeth, etc.</i>     | <i>make a noise</i>             |
| <i>do nothing</i>                   | <i>make a cup of tea/coffee</i> |
| <i>do exercises</i>                 | <i>make an offer</i>            |

**What do you do? and How do you do?**

*What do you do?* (What's your job?)

*How do you do?* (a greeting: the reply is *How do you do?*)

**go/come + -ing**

We use *go/come* with *...ing* for these activities:

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>to go/come shopping</i> | <i>to go/come sailing</i>  |
| <i>to go/come skating</i>  | <i>to go/come fishing</i>  |
| <i>to go/come skiing</i>   | <i>to go/come swimming</i> |

**Phrasal verbs**

- These are verbs with one or two words, and a meaning which we cannot usually guess.
- Examples with two words:
 

|   |   |                      |
|---|---|----------------------|
| <i>get up</i> (in the morning)            | = | leave your bed       |
| <i>look up</i> (a word in the dictionary) | = | try to find          |
| <i>fill in</i> (a form)                   | = | write the details on |
| <i>go on</i> (doing something)            | = | continue             |
| <i>come across</i> (something)            | = | find                 |
- Examples with three words:
 

|  |   |                          |
|--|---|--------------------------|
| <i>get on</i> (well) <i>with</i> (someone) | = | have good relations with |
| <i>look forward to</i> (something)         | = | think you will enjoy     |
| <i>run out of</i> (something)              | = | have no more of          |
- Always check in a dictionary when you come across a new example.

**1 Complete each sentence with a suitable form of *make* or *do*.**

- 1 Wait a minute. I'm ....*doing*... my hair at the moment.
- 2 Please don't ..... so much noise!
- 3 My father ..... most of the cooking in our house.
- 4 Oh dear, I think I've ..... a mistake.
- 5 Are you going to ..... Michael a birthday cake?
- 6 They ..... Harry an offer which he couldn't refuse.
- 7 Don't forget to ..... your homework before you go out.
- 8 When you have ..... this exercise, try the next one.

**2 Complete each sentence with a suitable form of *go* or *come*. More than one answer may be possible.**

- 1 Pat and Sam ....*went*... shopping in New York last month.
- 2 Do you want to ..... swimming with us tomorrow?
- 3 My brother ..... to my house yesterday.
- 4 Kate usually ..... skiing in Switzerland.
- 5 I used to ..... swimming a lot, but I stopped.
- 6 Mary loves ..... shopping with her sister.
- 7 I ..... skating last year for the first time.
- 8 Do you feel like ..... fishing tomorrow?

**3 Match each sentence (1–8) with a sentence (a–h) which means the same.**

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 I tried to find the word in a dictionary.           | ..... <i>f</i> ..... |
| 2 I have good relations with my neighbours.           | .....                |
| 3 I wrote down all my personal details on the form.   | .....                |
| 4 The teacher asked me to stop talking, but I didn't. | .....                |
| 5 I think I'm going to enjoy my holiday.              | .....                |
| 6 I haven't got any more food.                        | .....                |
| 7 I spent my childhood near London.                   | .....                |
| 8 I've stopped eating sweets.                         | .....                |

- a) I filled it in.
- b) I get on well with them.
- c) I've given them up.
- d) I'm looking forward to it.
- e) I've run out.
- f) I looked it up.
- g) I went on talking.
- h) I grew up there.

## Verbs with prepositions, gerund or infinitive

### Verbs followed by prepositions

#### about

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| <i>dream</i> | <i>I <b>dreamt about</b> Switzerland last night.</i>  |
| <i>know</i>  | <i>Do you <b>know</b> a lot <b>about</b> physics?</i> |
| <i>talk</i>  | <i>What are you <b>talking about</b>?</i>             |

#### at

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| <i>look</i> | <i><b>Look at</b> these lovely flowers.</i> |
|-------------|---|

#### for

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <i>apologize</i> | <i>I <b>apologize for</b> being late.</i> |
| <i>pay</i>       | <i>Tim <b>paid for</b> my ticket.</i>     |
| <i>wait</i>      | <i>I'll <b>wait for</b> you outside.</i>  |

#### in

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <i>believe</i> | <i>Do you <b>believe in</b> ghosts?</i> |
|----------------|---|

#### to

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <i>belong</i>  | <i>Does this <b>belong to</b> you?</i>                         |
| <i>explain</i> | <i>Could you <b>explain</b> something <b>to</b> me please?</i> |
| <i>lend</i>    | <i>Kate <b>lent</b> her pen <b>to</b> me.</i>                  |
| <i>listen</i>  | <i>You're not <b>listening to</b> me!</i>                      |
| <i>talk</i>    | <i>Jill was <b>talking to</b> her sister.</i>                  |

### Verbs followed by -ing

Examples: *dislike, enjoy, fancy, can't stand*

|   |
|---|
| <i>I <b>dislike getting up</b> early.</i>       |
| <i>Pat <b>enjoys using</b> a computer.</i>      |
| <i>Do you <b>fancy going</b> to the cinema?</i> |
| <i>I <b>can't stand travelling</b> by bus.</i>  |

### Verbs followed by infinitive + to

Examples: *ask, choose, help, manage, offer, refuse, want*

|   |
|---|
| <i>I <b>chose to walk</b> to the station.</i>     |
| <i>Sue <b>asked us to wait</b>.</i>               |
| <i>Jack <b>helped me (to) do</b> my homework.</i> |
| <i>I <b>managed to find</b> a taxi.</i>           |
| <i>Helen <b>offered to help</b> me.</i>           |
| <i>Joe <b>refused to sit</b> down.</i>            |
| <i>Paula <b>wanted to go</b> home.</i>            |

## GRAMMAR 65 VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONS, GERUND OR INFINITIVE

### 1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 I hate walking / walk in the rain.
- 2 I fancy to go / going to the cinema tonight.
- 3 Don't listen to Bob. He's talking of / about cars again.
- 4 Sue offered to / at find me a job.
- 5 Kevin can't stand to cook / cooking.
- 6 Harry believes on / in magic!
- 7 Carl doesn't want to go / going home yet.
- 8 We apologized for / to the noise made by the children.
- 9 All children dislike doing / to do homework.
- 10 Please wait to / for me in the restaurant.

### 2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- 1 I've lost my wallet, so I can't pay .....for..... my ticket.
- 2 Do you ..... going to the cinema this evening?
- 3 What do you ..... about the Eiffel Tower?
- 4 Alan doesn't ..... to get up before midday.
- 5 You don't really ..... in ghosts, do you?
- 6 I really dislike ..... homework!
- 7 The customer didn't like the meal, and ..... to pay.
- 8 Could you lend a pen ..... Jim? He's lost his.
- 9 Do these books belong ..... you?
- 10 I must apologize ..... being late. I'm very sorry.

### 3 Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

|               |             |        |       |      |      |        |
|---------------|-------------|--------|-------|------|------|--------|
| apologize     | can't stand | choose | enjoy | know | lend | listen |
| <u>manage</u> | refuse      | wait   |       |      |      |        |

- 1 Students who do not .....manage..... to finish now, can come back later.
- 2 Jan ..... doing the washing-up.
- 3 If drivers ..... to stop, the police arrest them.
- 4 I ..... for damaging your bike.
- 5 Do think you could ..... for me outside?
- 6 Did you ..... to the football match on the radio?
- 7 I don't really ..... working at weekends.
- 8 Ann and Pat ..... a lot about wild animals.
- 9 Tim used to ..... his calculator to his friends.
- 10 Some students ..... to study Spanish instead of French.



## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 4 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

- 1 Jim said that he would pay for my ticket.  
Jim offered to pay for my ticket .....
- 2 Tony really doesn't like playing football  
Tony can't .....
- 3 Could you give me an explanation of this?  
Could ..... me?
- 4 'Please wait,' the teacher asked us.  
The teacher asked us .....
- 5 You were in my dreams last night.  
I dreamt .....
- 6 Carol would like to go to the cinema tonight.  
Carol wants .....
- 7 Ann wants to go to the park.  
Ann fancies .....
- 8 Is this pencil yours?  
Does ..... ?
- 9 Clare finished the race in three minutes!  
Clare managed .....
- 10 The waiter offered me some cakes. I took the chocolate one.  
I chose .....

### 5 Correct each sentence or question.

- 1 Do you fancy ~~to go~~ swimming tomorrow?  
Do you fancy going swimming tomorrow .....
- 2 Can you lend to me your phone, please?  
..... ?
- 3 We managed sailing home despite the bad weather.  
.....
- 4 She apologized stealing the money.  
.....
- 5 Tim paid to the sandwiches.  
.....
- 6 I want for visiting the museum this afternoon.  
.....
- 7 They don't know very much in British history.  
.....
- 8 Sue doesn't enjoy to watch television.  
.....

## GRAMMAR 65 VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONS, GERUND OR INFINITIVE

### 6 Choose the most suitable word for each space.



I want to tell you the story of a dream I had last night. I dreamt (1) ..... Australia. I was staying in Sydney with my uncle and aunt and we were going to drive across Australia by car. This was really strange because I can't stand (2) ..... by car, I prefer trains. Anyway I refused (3) ..... get in the car and my uncle got very cross with me. He said he wanted (4) ..... to Perth and it would be an adventure for us all. I tried to explain (5) ..... him that I was always very sick in a car, but he wasn't listening (6) ..... me.

My aunt said I would enjoy (7) ..... across the desert, seeing all the animals and birds. I thought that maybe she was right so I apologized (8) ..... being rude and we all got in the car to drive across Australia.

When I woke up the next morning, my mum was talking (9) ..... her sister in Australia. My uncle and aunt were really planning to drive across the desert. It was so strange – do you believe (10) ..... dreams? 🌐

- |             |           |              |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 A about   | B at      | C for        |
| 2 A travel  | B travels | C travelling |
| 3 A to      | B with    | C in         |
| 4 A going   | B to go   | C go         |
| 5 A for     | B about   | C to         |
| 6 A with    | B to      | C too        |
| 7 A driving | B drive   | C drives     |
| 8 A at      | B about   | C for        |
| 9 A to      | B in      | C at         |
| 10 A with   | B in      | C about      |

## Be with adjectives and prepositions

### be + adjective followed by a preposition

#### about

*excited* We were all **excited about** the match.  
*right* You were **right about** it.  
*sorry* I'm **sorry about** that.

#### at

*bad* Sorry, I'm **bad at** adding up!  
*good* Bill is really **good at** cooking.

#### for

*famous* Our country is **famous for** its mountains.  
*late* Sam was **late for** school yesterday.  
*ready* Are you **ready for** your lunch?

#### from

*different* This house is **different from** ours.

#### in

*interested* Are you **interested in** computers?

#### of

*afraid* Michael is **afraid of** spiders.  
*frightened* Lisa is **frightened of** the dark.  
*full* My sleeping bag is **full of** ants!  
*tired* I'm **tired of** the same old things!

#### on

*keen* I'm not very **keen on** fried food.

#### to

*married* Ellen is **married to** Jack.

#### with

*angry/annoyed* I'm really **angry/annoyed with** you.  
*bored* We're **bored with** this film.  
*pleased* Kate's teacher is **pleased with** her.



Many adjectives have different meanings with different prepositions. Always check in a dictionary.

**1 Underline the correct word.**

- 1 Brazil is famous for / in its beautiful beaches.
- 2 I'm not very good for / at maths.
- 3 Your computer is different from / with mine.
- 4 Kate is afraid of / for mice.
- 5 My teacher was very pleased with / to me.
- 6 Helen was very excited for / about her prize.
- 7 Peter isn't very keen on / for playing golf.
- 8 My town is famous for / with its soap factory.
- 9 Why are you so angry for / with me?
- 10 Is your brother interested in / to football?

**2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 Are you ....ready.... for bed yet? It's very late.
- 2 Stop shouting! Why are you ..... with me?
- 3 Joe's school bag is ..... of dirty pieces of paper!
- 4 I'm ..... of doing the same old things every day!
- 5 Diana is ..... at physics and always gets top marks.
- 6 Paula has decided to get married ..... the boy next door.
- 7 You were ..... about my wallet. It was on my desk, as you said.
- 8 Lots of people I know are ..... of the dark.
- 9 I'm not very ..... on Chinese food.
- 10 David is really ..... with his new bike. He says it's great.

**3 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 George arrived at school late. **for**  
George was late for school......
- 2 I find staying at home boring. **with**  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 Ann and Chris are married. **to**  
 .....  
 .....
- 4 I apologize for my behaviour. **about**  
 .....  
 .....
- 5 Jack is a very good cyclist. **at**  
 .....  
 .....
- 6 Do you find history interesting? **in**  
 .....  
 .....

## CHECKPOINT 11

### Units 61–66

#### 1 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- I like your new bike. ~~It's~~ really fast!  
A Its                      B It's                      C It
- Oh no! ..... a huge traffic jam!  
A There's                B Its                      C It has
- ..... seems to be something wrong with my camera.  
A It                      B There                C It's
- Hurry up! ..... half past seven already.  
A There's                B Its                      C It's
- Tina's house is very large. .... got six bedrooms.  
A It is                    B There is              C It has
- ..... no doubt about it. Helen is the winner!  
A There's                B It's                      C It
- Someone has left ..... watch in the classroom.  
A there                B their                    C they're
- You can phone from here. .... a phone in the corridor.  
A It has                B There's                C It's

#### 2 Complete each sentence with an adverb from the box.

|            |      |        |          |         |          |      |
|------------|------|--------|----------|---------|----------|------|
| carelessly | hard | loudly | politely | quickly | secretly | well |
|------------|------|--------|----------|---------|----------|------|

- I slept .....~~well~~..... , thank you.
- Deborah studied ..... for her exams.
- Paul did his homework .....
- Mary took the money .....
- Harry drove ..... to the hospital.
- David always behaves .....
- Ann shouted .....

#### 3 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- The police told Jim to stop, but he ~~refused~~ to obey them.
- Nobody ..... to Tim when he starts talking.
- I don't ..... in magic and ghosts and things like that.
- Jane is very ..... with her new car. She likes it a lot.
- Luckily, when it started raining we ..... a place to wait.
- Susan is really ..... at making clothes.

**4 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Birds frighten Ann. **of**  
 ..Ann is frightened of birds.....
- 2 Tina arrived at school late yesterday. **for**  
 .....
- 3 I'm sorry I missed you. **apologize**  
 .....
- 4 Harry finds his lessons boring. **is**  
 .....
- 5 I don't like getting up early. **stand**  
 .....
- 6 There are lots of people in the cinema. **full**  
 .....
- 7 Ricardo is a very bad footballer. **at**  
 .....

**5 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 Paula ....~~went~~.... swimming yesterday afternoon.
- 2 Why don't you look ..... the word in your dictionary?
- 3 I really hate ..... up early.
- 4 I'm looking ..... to going on holiday.
- 5 Are you interested ..... computers?
- 6 I think we've ..... out of milk.
- 7 Have I ..... any mistakes?
- 8 Do you fancy ..... to the theatre?

**Think about grammar!**

**Are the sentences true or false?**

- 1 We can usually use *do* or *make* in the same way.
- 2 There is no difference in meaning between *have you got* and *do you have*.
- 3 Adverbs usually follow the verb.

## Functions 1

### Asking for advice

*What do you think I should do?*

*What would you do?*

### Giving advice

*I think you should (go to the doctor's).*

*If I were you, I'd (go to the doctor's).*

*Why don't you (go to the doctor's)?*

*What about (going to the doctor's)?*

*How about (going to the doctor's)?*

### Agreeing

*I think the film was too long. Yes, I agree.*

*The music was the best part. Yes, you're right.*

To say we feel the same we can use *so* + the auxiliary verb in the first statement.

A: *I **am** tired.* B: ***So am I.*** (= I am tired too.)

A: *I **have** seen this film!* B: ***So have I!*** (= I have seen this film too.)

If the first statement has no auxiliary, we use *do* in the answer.

A: *I **like** this film.* B: ***So do I.*** (= I like it too.)

To agree with a negative statement we use *neither* in the same way:

A: *I'm **not** tired.* B: ***Neither am I*** (= I am not tired.)

A: *I **haven't** seen this film.* B: ***Neither have I.*** (= I have not seen the film.)

A: *I **don't like** this film.* B: ***Neither do I.***

### Disagreeing

To disagree with someone's opinion we can say *I don't agree* or *I don't think so*.

A: *That was a terrible film!* B: ***I don't agree.** / **I don't think so** – I liked it.*

### Apologizing

*I'm sorry.*

*Sorry, it was my fault.*

*I'm very sorry.*

### Replying

*Never mind.*

*That's all right.*

*Don't worry.*

- We say *Excuse me* when we want to pass someone who is in the way. The usual reply is *Sorry*.
- We say *Excuse me* at the beginning of questions to strangers.

1 Match the pictures (a–f) with the sentences (1–6).



a)



b)



c)



d)



e)



f)

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 Never mind. f                   | 4 Sorry, I've broken this cup.            |
| 2 How about trying a larger size? | 5 If I were you, I'd go to the dentist's. |
| 3 So do I.                        | 6 What do you think I should do?          |

2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.

- 1 I've lost your football. ....sorry...
- 2 How about ..... to the cinema?
- 3 'This film is good, isn't it?' 'No, I don't think .....
- 4 Sorry about the mess. It's my .....
- 5 If I ..... you, I'd stay at home today.
- 6 'I really love this place.' 'So ..... I.'
- 7 ..... me, I can't get in.
- 8 What's your advice? What do you think I ..... do?

3 Choose the best reply (a–f) for each sentence (1–6).

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 What's your advice? d                | a) Neither do I.                                |
| 2 I really enjoy going to the beach.   | b) So do I.                                     |
| 3 Who broke the window?                | c) Don't worry.                                 |
| 4 If I were you, I'd use a dictionary. | d) Why don't you talk to your teacher about it? |
| 5 I don't like doing homework!         | e) I did. Sorry!                                |
| 6 Sorry, I've lost your book.          | f) Good idea!                                   |



## Functions 2

### Asking for a description and replying

**Question**

*What's George like?*

*What's Cairo like?*

*What does Tina look like?*

**Reply**

*He's very friendly.*

*It's a big city.*

*She's tall and she's got long hair.*

### Asking for directions

*Where's (the bus station)?*

*Excuse me, do you know the way to (the bus station)?*

*Excuse me, could you tell me the way (to the bus station)?*

(informal)



(formal)

### Giving directions

*Go down this street and turn left / right.*

*It's at the end of this street.*

*It's on the left / on the right.*

*It's opposite / next to (the supermarket).*

### Making excuses

*I'm sorry I'm late.*

*I'm sorry I'm late, but (I missed the bus).*

### Saying goodbye

*Bye!*

*Bye for now!*

*See you tomorrow.*

### Greeting and replying to greetings

**Greeting**

*How do you do?*

*Hello, how are you?*

**Reply**

*How do you do?*

*Fine, thanks. And you?*

(formal)

(informal)

### Asking and replying about health

**Question**

*How are you?*

*How do you feel?*

**Reply**

*I'm all right, thanks.*

*Not so good.*

*I feel fine / great / awful, etc.*

**1 Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Can you describe Jack?  
What *does Jack look* ..... like?
- 2 I apologize for being late.  
I'm ..... late.
- 3 Where's the Apollo cinema?  
Do you ..... to the Apollo cinema?
- 4 How are you today? Are you still ill?  
How do ..... today? Are you still ill?
- 5 Do you know the way to the city centre, please?  
Could ..... to the city centre, please?
- 6 What's your opinion of Paris?  
What ..... like?

**2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 ..... *Go* ..... down this street and turn right.
- 2 How ..... you do?
- 3 Do you know the ..... to the centre?
- 4 Bye! I'll ..... you tomorrow.
- 5 I'm ..... I'm late.
- 6 What is David ..... ?
- 7 'Hello, ..... are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- 8 Could you ..... me the way to Green Street?

**3 Choose the most suitable reply (a–h) for the questions (1–8).**

- |                                 |                      |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 What does Sam look like?      | ..... <i>e</i> ..... |
| 2 How do you do?                | .....                |
| 3 Where's the bus station?      | .....                |
| 4 How do you feel?              | .....                |
| 5 Bye for now!                  | .....                |
| 6 How are you?                  | .....                |
| 7 Do you know the way to Paris? | .....                |
| 8 What's Jim like?              | .....                |

- a) It's opposite the hospital.
- b) Fine, thanks. How are you?
- c) He laughs a lot!
- d) Sorry, I don't.
- e) He's tall and thin.
- f) Not so good.
- g) I'll see you tomorrow.
- h) How do you do?

## Functions 3

### Asking for information

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <i>Do you know the time?</i>                  | (informal) |
| <i>Excuse me, could you tell me the time?</i> | (formal)   |
| <i>What does this mean, please?</i>           |            |
| <i>How do you say (...) in English?</i>       |            |

### Inviting

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <i>Do you want to (go to the cinema)?</i>      | (informal) |
| <i>Do you feel like (going to the cinema)?</i> | (informal) |
| <i>Would you like to (go to the cinema)?</i>   | (formal)   |

### Replying

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>accepting</b> | <i>Thanks, I'd love to (go).</i>             |
| <b>refusing</b>  | <i>I'm sorry but (I'm going to a party).</i> |
|                  | <i>I'm afraid I can't.</i>                   |

### Making an offer

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| <i>Can I help (you)?</i>   |
| <i>Shall I help (you)?</i> |

### Offering something

|                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| <i>Do you want (some tea)?</i>    | (informal) |
| <i>Would you like (some tea)?</i> | (formal)   |

### Asking for, giving and refusing permission

| Asking                                     | Giving                  | Refusing                         |
|--|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Can I (leave early)?</i>                | <i>Yes, you can.</i>    | <i>No, you can't.</i>            |
| <i>Is it all right if I (leave early)?</i> | <i>Sure. That's OK.</i> | <i>Sorry, no. (informal)</i>     |
| <i>May I (leave early)?</i>                | <i>Yes, you may.</i>    | <i>No, you may not. (formal)</i> |
| <i>Do you mind if I (open the window)?</i> | <i>That's fine.</i>     | <i>Sorry, but (I'm cold).</i>    |

**1 Choose the best reply (a–f) for the questions (1–6).**

- 1 What does this mean? .....e.....
- 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow? .....
- 3 Shall I help you with those books? .....
- 4 Would you like some ice-cream? .....
- 5 Do you mind if I sit here? .....
- 6 Could you pass me the salt, please? .....

- a) That's very kind of you. Thanks very much.
- b) Thanks, but I'd rather have a drink.
- c) Why don't you use the dictionary?
- d) Sure, here you are.
- e) I'm sorry, but I'm afraid I'm going to the cinema.
- f) That's fine, please do.

**2 Rewrite each question beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Let's go to the cinema.  
How about going to the cinema? .....
- 2 Would you like a sandwich?  
Do .....
- 3 Do you want to sit down?  
Would .....
- 4 Can you open the window, please?  
Would you mind .....
- 5 Do you want me to carry your bag?  
Shall .....
- 6 Do you know the time?  
Could .....

**3 Read the answers. Write a question for each answer.**

- 1 Would you mind helping me? .....
- No, of course I wouldn't mind helping you.
- 2 .....
- Yes, I'd like to go to the disco.
- 3 .....
- No, I'm afraid you can't leave early.
- 4 .....
- Thank you, my books are very heavy.
- 5 .....
- No, not the park. Let's go shopping instead.

## Functions 4

### Preferences

*I prefer (tea) to (coffee).*

*I'd rather have (tea) than (coffee).*

### Promises

*I'll be home at 8.30.*

*I won't be late again!*

### Reminders

*Don't forget to (bring your dictionary on Wednesday).*

*Remember to (bring your dictionary on Wednesday).*

### Making requests

*Can you (open the window), please?* (informal)

*Could you (open the window), please?*

*Would you mind (**opening** the window), please?* (formal)

### Replying to requests

*Can you ... / Could you ...?* *Of course. Sure.*

*Would you mind ...?* (no answer; an action is enough)

### Making suggestions

*Shall we (go for a walk)?*

*Let's (go for a walk).*

*Why don't we (go for a walk)?*

*What about (**going** for a walk)?*

*How about (**going** for a walk)?*

### Warning

*Be careful!*

*Watch out!*

*Look out!*

*Mind out!*

*Careful!*

**1 Underline the most suitable reply.**

- |                                    |                         |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Do you want tea or coffee?       | A I would have tea.     | B <u>I'd rather have tea.</u> |
| 2 Could you open the door, please? | A Sure.                 | B Yes, I could open.          |
| 3 Will you be late?                | A I'll be home at 8.00. | B I come home at 8.00.        |
| 4 Do you have any ideas?           | A We go to the cinema.  | B Let's go to the cinema.     |
| 5 Shall we go to the shops?        | A Good idea.            | B Yes, we shall.              |
| 6 Would you prefer pizza or pasta? | A I'd prefer pizza.     | B I prefer pizza.             |

**2 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 What ~~about~~..... going for a ride on our bikes?
- 2 Would you ..... opening the window?
- 3 ..... you tell me the time, please?
- 4 How ..... having a party?
- 5 Look .....! You might fall!
- 6 ..... you help me carry this, please?
- 7 I ..... cake to biscuits.
- 8 ..... go to the cinema tonight.

**3 Choose a word or phrase from the box to complete each sentence. Use each word or phrase once only.**

|            |                |      |                      |       |           |
|------------|----------------|------|----------------------|-------|-----------|
| How about  | Could you      | I'll | <del>Look out!</del> | Shall | Of course |
| I'd rather | Would you mind |      |                      |       |           |

- 1 ..... Look out! ..... There's a bus coming.
- 2 ..... open the door for me, please?
- 3 ..... playing tennis this afternoon?
- 4 Don't worry. .... be home before 10.00.
- 5 'Can you help me?' '.....'
- 6 ..... carrying these books?
- 7 ..... we listen to my new CD?
- 8 ..... have an orange than a banana.

## Calendar

## Dates

## ● Writing

British English: 2/11/09    2 November    Monday 2 November, 2009  
 US: 11/2/09    November 2    Monday November 2, 2009

## ● Speaking

British English: *the second of November, 2009*    *November the second, 2009*  
 US: *November second*

## Years

| Writing |   | Speaking                     |
|---------|---|------------------------------|
| 1945    | = | <i>nineteen forty-five</i>   |
| 2009    | = | <i>two thousand and nine</i> |

## Days

## ● Days of the week

*Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday*  
*I'll see you **on** Monday.*

## ● Other times

Future: *tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week, next Monday*  
 Past: *yesterday, the day before yesterday, last week, last Monday*

## Months

*January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December*

## ● Short forms

*Jan Feb Mar Apr Aug Sept Oct Nov Dec*  
 (*May, June, July* do not have short forms)

## ● Month and time words

*I'll be back in March.*  
 Future: *next month*    Past: *last month*

## Seasons

*spring, summer, autumn, winter*  
*It's lovely here **in** spring. (= every spring)*  
*I'm going to Spain **in the** summer. (= summer of this year)*

## ● Season and time words

Future: *next summer, etc.*    Past: *last winter, etc.*

**1 Write the words as numbers.**

- 1 The twenty-second of October.      22/10
- 2 The first of January.      .....
- 3 The nineteenth of August.      .....
- 4 The fifth of June.      .....
- 5 The thirtieth of September.      .....
- 6 The fourteenth of May.      .....
- 7 The eighth of March.      .....
- 8 The thirteenth of November.      .....

**2 Write the dates as words.**

- 1 21/6      The twenty-first of June
- 2 19/3      .....
- 3 2/8      .....
- 4 31/10      .....
- 5 15/2      .....
- 6 1/5      .....
- 7 20/1      .....
- 8 16/11      .....

**3 Choose the correct word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Today is Monday. So Wednesday is ~~is~~.  
A the day before yesterday    B the day after tomorrow    C yesterday
- 2 How do you say the year 2009? .....  
A two thousand nine    B twenty hundred nine    C two thousand and nine
- 3 What are you going to do ..... ?  
A next summer    B last summer    C the summer
- 4 I'll talk to you again .....  
A yesterday    B last month    C tomorrow
- 5 It's really cold here .....  
A the winter    B last winter    C in the winter
- 6 I haven't seen James since .....  
A last Monday    B next Monday    C tomorrow
- 7 What do you usually do ..... ?  
A in August?    B August?    C next August?
- 8 'I'll see you on .....'  
A second of the June    B the June the second    C the second of June
- 9 What are you doing ..... ?  
A the Friday?    B on Friday?    C last Friday?
- 10 I'll see you .....  
A next September    B in next September    C the next September



## Time

**Parts of the day**

*in the morning in the afternoon in the evening*  
*at night at midday (noon) at midnight*

**am and pm**

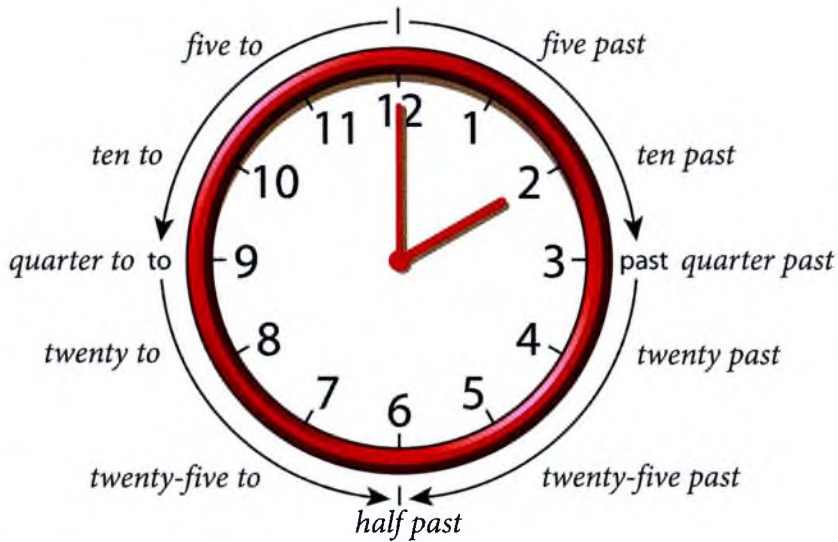
*midnight to midday = am 1.00 am midnight = 12.00 am*  
*midday to midnight = pm 4.45 pm midday = 12.00 pm*

**24-hour clock**

*14.45 fourteen forty-five (= 2.45 pm)*  
*18.15 eighteen fifteen (= 6.15 pm)*

**Telling the time**

*It's two o'clock.*



- **Other numbers**

*1.11 eleven minutes past one*  
*5.41 nineteen minutes to six*

- **Digital system**

|             |                          |             |                       |
|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>1.10</i> | <i>one ten</i>           | <i>2.15</i> | <i>two fifteen</i>    |
| <i>3.25</i> | <i>three twenty-five</i> | <i>4.30</i> | <i>four thirty</i>    |
| <i>5.40</i> | <i>five forty</i>        | <i>6.45</i> | <i>six forty-five</i> |

- **Asking the time**

*What's the time? It's three o'clock.*  
*What time is it? It's ten to eight.*  
 We cannot say: *They are six o'clock. X*

**1 Write the times as numbers.**

- 1 Ten to nine. .....8.50.....
- 2 A quarter past eleven. .....
- 3 Twenty past five. .....
- 4 A quarter to six. .....
- 5 Twenty-five past eight. .....
- 6 Five to five. .....
- 7 Ten past eleven. .....
- 8 Twenty-five to twelve. .....

**2 Write the time. Use *past* and *to*.**

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>1</p>  <p>.....half past two.....</p> | <p>2</p>  <p>.....</p>   | <p>3</p>  <p>.....</p>   |
| <p>4</p>  <p>.....</p>                 | <p>5</p>  <p>.....</p> | <p>6</p>  <p>.....</p> |

**3 Write the times. Write one word in each space.**

- 1 8.45 .....(a)..... quarter .....to..... nine
- 2 7.00 am Seven o'clock .....
- 3 12.00 pm .....
- 4 2.30 Half .....
- 5 8.30 pm Half past eight .....
- 6 2.56 Four ..... three
- 7 12.00 am .....
- 8 1.35 Twenty - .....

## CHECKPOINT 12

### Units 67–72

#### 1 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 'I really love ice-cream!' 'And I too. / So do I.'
- 2 'What does Tony like / What's Tony like?' 'He's very friendly.'
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late / Excuse me that I'm late.
- 4 It's half past three / thirty past three.
- 5 I'm sorry the window is broken. It was my blame / my fault.
- 6 If I were you, I am going to the doctor's / I'd go to the doctor's.
- 7 'Today is 20 of November / the 20th of November.'
- 8 'What is Edinburgh like / How is Edinburgh?' 'It's an interesting city.'

#### 2 Underline the correct reply.

- 1 Is it all right if I wait here?  
A All right.                      B Sure, that's OK.                      C Yes, you are.
- 2 Do you want to play basketball tonight?  
A I'm afraid I'm not.              B Sorry, I can't.                      C I wouldn't love to.
- 3 How do you do?  
A I do fine.                      B Very well, thanks.                      C How do you do?
- 4 Shall I help you with that?  
A Yes, you will.                      B Thanks a lot.                      C Yes, you do.
- 5 Do you mind if I leave my bike here?  
A Of course.                      B Fine thanks.                      C Go ahead.
- 6 What's the time?  
A Yes, it is.                      B Five o'clock.                      C Yes, the time is.
- 7 How do you feel?  
A Terrible!                      B Yes, I do.                      C Yes, I feel.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

- 1 If I ....~~were~~..... you, I'd have a rest.
- 2 What's Helen .....? Is she very friendly?
- 3 Excuse me, could you tell me the ..... to the police station?
- 4 ..... you like some orange juice? Or do you want some water?
- 5 I've got a good idea. .... go to the park and play football.
- 6 ..... forget to bring your dictionary tomorrow.
- 7 3.44: it's nearly a quarter ..... four.
- 8 Would you ..... opening the window?

**4 Underline the correct word(s) in each sentence.**

- 1 Do you feel like go / going to the theatre?
- 2 Don't forget arriving / to arrive early tomorrow.
- 3 I haven't seen you for ages. How do you do / How are you?
- 4 That's heavy. Do / Shall I help you?
- 5 The film finishes / has finished at midnight.
- 6 Do you mind if I open / will open the window?
- 7 I don't drink coffee. I think I'd rather have / I like tea, please.
- 8 Bye for now. I'll see / see you later.

**5 Rewrite each sentence using the words in bold. Do not change the meaning.**

- 1 Can you close the door, please? **would**  
would you mind closing the door, please?.....
- 2 Tell me about Paris. **like**  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 May I close the door? **mind**  
 .....  
 .....
- 4 Do you want to go swimming? **feel**  
 .....  
 .....
- 5 Do you want some chocolate? **like**  
 .....  
 .....
- 6 Let's have a party on Friday. **don't**  
 .....  
 .....

**6 Correct the underlined words in each sentence.**

- 1 Do you know way to station? the way to the station.....
- 2 Let's meet three o'clock.  
 .....
- 3 What is the look of your English teacher?  
 .....
- 4 Why don't you going to bed early?  
 .....
- 5 'I think you should buy it now.' 'I don't think.'  
 .....
- 6 Could you telling me the way to the city centre?  
 .....
- 7 How about you go to the theatre?  
 .....

**Think about grammar!**

Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 The British and the Americans write the date in the same way.
- 2 *Could* is more polite than *can*.
- 3 There are fifteen minutes in a quarter of an hour.

# Punctuation

Punctuation helps the reader to understand what we write, and is an important part of writing.

| Basic punctuation |                              |   |  |
|-------------------|------------------------------|---|--|
| Symbol            | Name                         | Use                                     | Example  |
| .                 | full stop                    | – end of sentence<br>– in abbreviations | <i>This is a sentence.</i><br>e.g.                                       |
| ,                 | comma                        | separates clauses<br>in lists.          | <i>If it rains, we'll get wet.</i><br><i>It was dark, wet and windy.</i> |
| ?                 | question mark                | end of questions                        | <i>What's your name?</i>   |
| '                 | apostrophe                   | – contractions<br>– possessives         | <i>I'm not happy.</i><br><i>Peter's room.</i>                            |
| !                 | Exclamation mark<br>informal | for emphasis                            | <i>I've won!</i>   |

- Full stops are often left out in *Mr* and *Mrs*. It is now also more common to leave out full stops in other abbreviations, e.g. *USA*, *EU*, *am*, *pm*.
- ***it's* and *its***  
The possessive form of *it* is *its*.  
*I like its colour.*  
*It's* is the contracted form of *it is* or *it has*.  
*It's a lovely day!*  
*It's rained three times this week.*
- Apostrophe with ***o'clock***.  
*It's six o'clock.*  
*It's nine o'clock.*

→ **SEE ALSO**

**Grammar 56:** Possession 2

**1 Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.**

- 1 A Have you seen my pen, I'm looking for it?  
 B Have you seen my pen I'm looking for it?  
 C Have you seen my pen? I'm looking for it. ✓
- 2 A We bought some oranges some apples and, a loaf.  
 B We bought some oranges, some apples and a loaf.  
 C We bought, some oranges, some apples, and a loaf.
- 3 A What's the matter? with your bike, is it broken?  
 B What's the matter? with your bike? Is it broken?  
 C What's the matter with your bike? Is it broken?
- 4 A Two boys in football shirts ran across the playground.  
 B Two boys, in football shirts, ran, across the playground.  
 C Two boys in football shirts ran, across the playground.
- 5 A Go down this street turn left and then cross the road.  
 B Go down this street, turn left, and then cross the road.  
 C Go down, this street, turn left, and then, cross the road.
- 6 A Look out! You'll fall off the bus if you're not careful.  
 B Look out? You'll fall off the bus if, you're not careful.  
 C Look out you'll fall off the bus, if you're not careful!
- 7 A First of all I think, this idea is wrong.  
 B First of all, I think, this idea is wrong.  
 C First of all, I think this idea is wrong.
- 8 A If I, were you, I'd go to bed earlier.  
 B If I were you, I'd go to bed earlier.  
 C If I were you I'd go, to bed earlier.
- 9 A Its got a lovely colour, but seems very expensive.  
 B It's got a lovely colour, but seems very expensive.  
 C Its' got a lovely colour, but seems very expensive.
- 10 A These are Paul's magazines and Jame's books.  
 B These are Paul's magazine's and James' books.  
 C These are Paul's magazines and James' books.

**2 Add the punctuation in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.**

- 1 Whats the matter with you you look ill ( ' / ? / . )  
 .....  
 .....*What's the matter with you? You look ill.*.....
- 2 Helens shoes had holes in them so her mother gave her some money to buy new ones. ( ' / , )  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 Whats your name and where do you come from ( ' / ? / , )  
 .....
- 4 Wow Annas won two prizes in the painting competition ( ' / ! / ! )  
 .....
- 5 In the end Jack decided to go home he went back to the bus station bought an icecream and waited for the next bus. ( , / , / . )  
 .....

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 3 Add apostrophes if necessary.

1 Its six o clock. Its time for the news.

*It's six o'clock. It's time for the news.*

2 Ive decided to buy Jims old boots.

.....

3 Whose books are these? Are they yours?

.....

4 Sues borrowed Carols paints.

.....

5 This new boats ours. Its got sails and oars.

.....

6 My sisters are going to Janes party.

.....

7 I think the dogs hurt one of its legs.

.....

8 Wheres Helens brothers bike?

.....

### 4 Correct each sentence or question. Write the punctuation where necessary.

1 Whats the matter with Mrs Smiths dog

*What's the matter with Mrs. Smith's dog?*

2 Carols got two brothers a sister and three cousins

.....

3 Thats not yours Its mine

.....

4 I bought some bananas two apples and some sandwiches

.....

5 Dont worry The boys will borrow their friends bikes

.....

6 Theres something wrong with Anns car

.....

7 Have you seen the swimming pool Its fantastic

.....

8 Its eight o clock Its time for the bus

.....

9 Helen hasnt met Davids sister has she

.....

10 Look at the tree Its leaves are a strange colour

.....

**5 Add commas where necessary.**

- 1 There was a big, red bus.
- 2 We had meat potatoes and vegetables for lunch.
- 3 He was a tall handsome man.
- 4 We took a book a pen and a ruler.
- 5 My brother sister and mother were there.
- 6 We watched an old scary film.
- 7 The teacher shouted screamed and ran out of the class.
- 8 I got a new blue jumper.

**6 Rewrite this letter. Add punctuation where necessary.**

Dear Miss Green

Im writing to you to tell you that Steven isnt coming to school today because hes not feeling very well Hell be in class again on Friday morning If youd like to talk to me you can call me at home

When is the last day of term

Best wishes

John Roberts

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Spelling 1

### How to improve your spelling

Always use a dictionary to check the spelling of new words. Use the spelling of other words you know to help you. Make lists of the words you usually spell wrongly. When you come across words which are difficult to spell, follow these four steps. First, look at the correct spelling. Then cover it. Next write the word. Finally check your word.

### Adding *-ing* to verbs

- One-syllable words which end in one vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*) and one consonant – double the last consonant.

*swim*      *swimming*                      *put*      *putting*

Compare with these words with two vowels or one vowel and two consonants which do not double the consonant:

*shoot*      *shooting*                      *lift*      *lifting*

- Two-syllable words which end in one vowel and one consonant – double the last consonant when the stress is on the second syllable.

*begin*      *beginning*                      *control*      *controlling*

Compare with these words with the stress on the first syllable:

*wonder*      *wondering*                      *threaten*      *threatening*

Exceptions to this rule in British English are verbs ending in *-l*.

*travel*      *travelling*                      *cancel*      *cancelling*

- Words which end in one vowel, one consonant and *-e*: drop the final *-e*.

*write*      *writing*                      *drive*      *driving*

### Words ending in *-ful*

The suffix *-ful* has only one *-l*.

*beautiful*      *successful*

When *-ly* is added for adverbs, there are then two *-lls*.

*beautifully*      *successfully*

### *ie* or *ei*?

There is a useful rule: *i* before *e* except after *c*, when the sound is *\i:\*.

*field*      *niece*      *but*      *receive*      *receipt*

### Words often spelled wrongly 1

|                      |                  |                     |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>accommodation</i> | <i>beautiful</i> | <i>diary</i>        |
| <i>address</i>       | <i>beginning</i> | <i>different</i>    |
| <i>advertisement</i> | <i>believe</i>   | <i>disappear</i>    |
| <i>almost</i>        | <i>biscuit</i>   | <i>disappointed</i> |
| <i>answer</i>        | <i>careful</i>   |                     |
| <i>argument</i>      | <i>chocolate</i> |                     |

**1 Write new words. Use -ing, -ful or -ly.**

- |                       |                           |                        |       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------|
| 1 swim + <i>ing</i>   | .... <u>swimming</u> .... | 5 beauty + <i>ful</i>  | ..... |
| 2 write + <i>ing</i>  | .....                     | 6 success + <i>ful</i> | ..... |
| 3 begin + <i>ing</i>  | .....                     | 7 wonder + <i>ful</i>  | ..... |
| 4 decide + <i>ing</i> | .....                     | 8 careful + <i>ly</i>  | ..... |

**2 Underline the correct spelling.**

- 1 Would you like some *chocolate* / chocolate?
- 2 It's a really *beautiful* / beatiful day today.
- 3 Gerry *awnsered* / answered all the questions.
- 4 Could you give me your *adress* / address?
- 5 We're looking for *accommodation* / acommodation.
- 6 We missed the *begining* / beginning of the film.
- 7 We were *almost* / allmost late for the concert.
- 8 Helen was very *dissapointed* / disappointed when she failed the exam.

**3 There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.**

- 1 I don't ~~believe~~ that aliens have ever visited our planet. ....believe...
- 2 Mary writes in her secret dairy every night. ....
- 3 Would you like a chocolate buiscit? They're very tasty. ....
- 4 Put your books in the cuboard at the end of the lesson. ....
- 5 Helen is still changeing her clothes. ....
- 6 George and I go to diferrent schools. ....
- 7 This swimming pool is deepper than the other one. ....
- 8 When I cut myself, there was a lot of blud on the floor! ....

**4 Underline the correct spelling.**

- 1 Suddenly the glass of water disappeared / *dissappeared*!
- 2 I'm sorry, but I just can't *believe* / *beleive* your lies.
- 3 Harry gets really *angry* / *angery* sometimes.
- 4 I like the television *advertisment* / advertisement for Choco-Bars.
- 5 Mandy and her sister belong to *diferrent* / different sports clubs.
- 6 An *apple* / *appel* a day keeps the doctor away.
- 7 How many people are *coming* / *comeing* to your party?
- 8 Tom's plane *arives* / arrives at 6.30.

**5 In your notebook, make a list of words you will learn to spell correctly tomorrow.**

## Spelling 2

**Same pronunciation, different spelling**

There are many words with the same pronunciation, but different spelling and different meanings. Check the meanings of these words.

|              |               |              |              |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>brake</i> | <i>break</i>  | <i>hour</i>  | <i>our</i>   |
| <i>know</i>  | <i>no</i>     | <i>meat</i>  | <i>meet</i>  |
| <i>past</i>  | <i>passed</i> | <i>piece</i> | <i>peace</i> |
| <i>right</i> | <i>write</i>  | <i>see</i>   | <i>sea</i>   |
| <i>some</i>  | <i>sum</i>    | <i>son</i>   | <i>sun</i>   |
| <i>steal</i> | <i>steel</i>  | <i>there</i> | <i>their</i> |
| <i>whose</i> | <i>who's</i>  | <i>won</i>   | <i>one</i>   |
| <i>week</i>  | <i>weak</i>   | <i>wood</i>  | <i>would</i> |
| <i>wear</i>  | <i>where</i>  |              |              |

**q and u**

The letter q is always followed by u.

|                 |              |                |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>question</i> | <i>squid</i> | <i>acquire</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|

**Words with a syllable which is not pronounced**

We pronounce some words without saying all the syllables. Check the pronunciation of these words.

|                    |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>temperature</i> | <i>library</i>     | <i>Wednesday</i>   |
| <i>vegetable</i>   | <i>interesting</i> | <i>comfortable</i> |

**Nouns and verbs with c and s**

|       |               |                 |                |
|-------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Noun: | <i>advice</i> | <i>practice</i> | <i>licence</i> |
| Verb: | <i>advise</i> | <i>practise</i> | <i>license</i> |

**Words often spelled wrongly 2**

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>discuss</i>     | <i>fruit</i>       |
| <i>doctor</i>      | <i>half</i>        |
| <i>February</i>    | <i>hundred</i>     |
| <i>foreign</i>     | <i>immediately</i> |
| <i>fortunately</i> | <i>independent</i> |
| <i>forty</i>       | <i>know</i>        |
| <i>friend</i>      | <i>laugh</i>       |

**1 Underline the correct spelling.**

- 1 George left at the end of February / Febuary.
- 2 Tim invited all his freinds / friends to his party.
- 3 Hurry up! It's half past eight / eighth.
- 4 There were over three hunndred / hundred people at the concert.
- 5 We sat around the table and discussed / discused the problem.
- 6 More than harf / half the students passed the exam.
- 7 The Little Princess used to be my favourite / faverite book.
- 8 Please bring me my lunch immediatly / immediately.

**2 There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.**

- 1 More than ~~fourty~~ people needed accommodation. .... forty....
- 2 Helen knows more than ten forein languages. ....
- 3 We had a light lunch of friut and salad. ....
- 4 Tim crashed into a tree, but fortunatly he wasn't injured. ....
- 5 Can I have something to eat? I'm really hungrey. ....
- 6 All Tina's friends visited her in hospittal when she was ill. ....
- 7 Make a gess if you don't know the answer. ....
- 8 We really enjoied ourselves at the party last night. ....
- 9 If your shoes are derty, take them off at the door. ....
- 10 Let me introduce you to the other members of my familly. ....

**3 Underline the correct word.**

- 1 Our team has won / one the school swimming competition.
- 2 Could you go to the butcher's and buy some meat / meet?
- 3 Jim is Mr Brown's son / sun.
- 4 I'd like to play football, but I feel really weak / week.
- 5 Joe and Dave were / where on opposite teams in the football match.
- 6 Sorry, I don't know / no the answer to that question.
- 7 Mary saw the old man steal / steel the box of biscuits.
- 8 Don't forget to right / write me a letter.
- 9 Excuse me. Who's / Whose bags are these?
- 10 Melanie was happy when she passed / past her driving test.

**4 In your notebook, make a list of words you will learn to spell correctly tomorrow.**

## Spelling 3



## Words often spelled wrongly 3

|                  |                      |                  |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>library</i>   | <i>said</i>          | <i>village</i>   |
| <i>minute</i>    | <i>science</i>       | <i>Wednesday</i> |
| <i>mountain</i>  | <i>should</i>        | <i>where</i>     |
| <i>necessary</i> | <i>success</i>       | <i>which</i>     |
| <i>neighbour</i> | <i>swimming</i>      | <i>wonderful</i> |
| <i>receive</i>   | <i>tomorrow</i>      | <i>writing</i>   |
| <i>remember</i>  | <i>uncomfortable</i> | <i>written</i>   |
| <i>right</i>     |                      |                  |

## GB and US spelling

There are many differences between British and American spelling.

| <b>British</b>         | <b>American</b> |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>centre</i>          | <i>center</i>   |
| <i>colour</i>          | <i>color</i>    |
| <i>defence</i>         | <i>defense</i>  |
| <i>dialogue</i>        | <i>dialog</i>   |
| <i>jewellery</i>       | <i>jewelry</i>  |
| <i>neighbour</i>       | <i>neighbor</i> |
| <i>practise (verb)</i> | <i>practice</i> |
| <i>programme</i>       | <i>program</i>  |
| <i>theatre</i>         | <i>theater</i>  |
| <i>traveller</i>       | <i>traveler</i> |
| <i>tyre</i>            | <i>tire</i>     |

**Task**

Keep a list of the words you often spell wrongly.

**1 Underline the correct spelling.**

- 1 Have you been to the library / libary?
- 2 I'll see you on Wenesday / Wednesday.
- 3 Is it really necessary / necessary to do this?
- 4 This new chair is really very uncomfortable / uncomfortible.
- 5 Helen has decided to become a sceintist / scientist.
- 6 Witch / Which one of you is Mrs Henley?
- 7 Will Jack be here tommorrow / tomorrow?
- 8 What do you think of our new neighbours / neibours?

**2 There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.**

- 1 I don't think you ~~shoud~~ do so much unnecessary work.      should
- 2 We discussed the possibility of going swiming tomorrow.      .....
- 3 There's an interesting programe on television tonight.      .....
- 4 I haven't written to my aunt to thank her for her invitation.      .....
- 5 I became a succesful businessman after studying economics.      .....
- 6 Ron has to complete his writeing before Wednesday.      .....
- 7 Were have you been? I've been looking for you all day.      .....
- 8 Tony has started puting on weight, so he is going on a diet.      .....

**3 There are two spelling errors in each sentence. Correct both words.**

- 1 I received three ~~letters~~ this morning but I haven't ~~writen~~ any.  
                   letters                      written
- 2 We're leaveing early in the morning, so set the alarme clock.  
                   .....
- 3 We're going on holliday to France with some old friends.  
                   .....
- 4 Did you rember to do your sience homework on Wednesday?  
                   .....
- 5 While we were chooseing our meal, the waiter brought some water.  
                   .....
- 6 I'm writting a letter to my penfreind with all my news.  
                   .....
- 7 I had a wonderfull journey to the mountains with my friends.  
                   .....
- 8 The first astronauts succesfully landded on the moon in 1969.  
                   .....

## Prefixes, suffixes, phrasal verbs, compound words

### Prefixes

A prefix goes at the front of a word to make a new word. It changes the meaning of the word.

*interesting*                      *uninteresting*  
*like*                                      *dislike*

The prefixes: **dis-**, **un-**, and **im-**

usually mean: *not*

The prefix: **re-**

usually means: *again*

### Suffixes

A suffix goes at the end of a word to make a new word. It changes the grammar of the word.

*danger* (noun)    *dangerous* (adjective)  
*care* (noun)        *careful* (adjective)

### Phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs can be difficult to remember. It is a good idea to keep a list of all the new phrasal verbs you see.

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>fill in</i> (an application form) | <i>look something up</i> (in a dictionary)    |
| <i>get up</i> (in the morning)       | <i>switch/turn on/off</i> (lights / computer) |
| <i>grow up</i>                       | <i>take off</i> (a plane)                     |
| <i>look after</i> (a child)          | <i>take part in</i>                           |
| <i>look forward to</i> (an event)    | <i>try on</i> (a dress)                       |

### Prepositions after adjectives and verbs

Keep a list of adjectives and verbs and the prepositions we use with them.

### Compound words

We can make new words by joining a noun with another noun, to show what a place or a thing is for, or what it is part of.

*bath* + *room* = *bathroom*  
*camp* + *site* = *campsite*

### have, make, go, do, take

|                      |                       |                    |                        |                     |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>have dinner</i>   | <i>make a mistake</i> | <i>go shopping</i> | <i>do the shopping</i> | <i>take a photo</i> |
| <i>have a shower</i> | <i>make a cake</i>    | <i>go swimming</i> | <i>do the ironing</i>  |                     |
|                      | <i>make a noise</i>   |                    |                        |                     |
|                      | <i>make friends</i>   |                    |                        |                     |
|                      | <i>make an excuse</i> |                    |                        |                     |

→ SEE ALSO

Grammar 64: *Make, do, go*; phrasal verbs

Grammar 65: Verbs with prepositions, gerund or infinitive

Grammar 66: *Be* with adjectives and prepositions

## GRAMMAR 77 PREFIXES, SUFFIXES, PHRASAL VERBS, COMPOUND WORDS

### 1 Write a prefix from the box in the space. You can use a prefix more than once.

dis-      un-      im-      re-

- 1 I can't answer this question. It's .....~~im~~possible.
- 2 Kate started crying because she was so .....happy.
- 3 Paul never waits in queues. He is too .....patient.
- 4 Stealing other people's pens is .....honest!
- 5 A million pounds was given to the hospital by a/an .....known person.
- 6 When you .....write this, make it a bit shorter.
- 7 Mary was wearing a/an .....usual hat, shaped like a giant flower.
- 8 I don't think you are right. I .....agree completely.

### 2 Write a suffix from the box in the space. Use each suffix once only.

-ing      -ed      -ance      -ful      -able      -ly      -ous      -er

- 1 Don't stand near the water! It's danger~~ous~~..... . You might fall in!
- 2 Thank you for your advice. You have been very help..... .
- 3 Our new science teach..... is very young.
- 4 Harry didn't think the book was very interest..... .
- 5 I don't like this fish. It's not very well cook..... .
- 6 I like this town. The people are very friend..... .
- 7 If you have a haircut, it will change your appear..... .
- 8 That was a great film! It was really enjoy..... .

### 3 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Do you believe *for* / *in* ghosts?
- 2 Dave is very good *at* / *for* tennis.
- 3 What's the difference *of* / *between* these two words?
- 4 Mr Smith is very different *of* / *from* the rest of our teachers.
- 5 I'm not very keen *on* / *at* outdoor sports.
- 6 Carol spent a lot of money *on* / *for* a new car.
- 7 Peter isn't very interested *in* / *of* basketball.
- 8 Bill likes listening *to* / *at* music late at night.



## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

### 4 Match each sentence half (1–10) with an ending (a–j).

- 1 When little Johnny grows .....<sup>f</sup>.....
- 2 Don't forget to turn .....
- 3 Can I try .....
- 4 Mary always takes .....
- 5 What time do you usually get .....
- 6 Jim is really looking .....
- 7 If you don't know a word, look it .....
- 8 Will you look .....
- 9 The plane took .....
- 10 Could you fill .....

- a) off more than two hours late.
- b) after my cat while I'm away?
- c) forward to his holiday in Spain.
- d) up at the weekend?
- e) in this application form, please?
- f) up, he wants to be a pilot.
- g) off the lights when you leave.
- h) on these trousers please?
- i) part in class activities.
- j) up in a good dictionary.

### 5 Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence.

|                 |      |        |      |       |     |      |      |
|-----------------|------|--------|------|-------|-----|------|------|
| <del>bath</del> | book | ground | home | motor | sea | suit | rain |
|-----------------|------|--------|------|-------|-----|------|------|

- 1 Tim is in the .....~~bath~~room having a shower.
- 2 The weather is really bad, so take your umbrella and wear a .....coat.
- 3 Our teacher didn't give us any .....work today.
- 4 Peter packed his .....case and left the hotel.
- 5 We went on holiday to the .....side and swam every day.
- 6 I went to the .....shop to buy a new dictionary.
- 7 The children went to the play .....to have a game of football.
- 8 Kate got on her .....bike and rode quickly away.

## GRAMMAR 77 PREFIXES, SUFFIXES, PHRASAL VERBS, COMPOUND WORDS

### 6 Complete each sentence with a word made from two words in the box.

ache arm bed bell ~~boat~~ box chair cloth days door  
farm hand head house ~~life~~ post school table time writing

- 1 The sailors were rescued from the sinking ship by a ~~lifeboat~~..... .
- 2 Make sure you put all the letters in the .....
- 3 It's 11.00, and that's past your .....! Time to go to sleep!
- 4 Everyone says that your ..... are the best time of your life.
- 5 Someone is ringing the ..... . Can you let them in?
- 6 You'll need the ....., some knives and forks and six plates.
- 7 The Thompson family live in a large ..... in the country.
- 8 David had a bad ....., so he took two aspirins.
- 9 I'm sorry, but I can't read your ..... .
- 10 Gina enjoys sitting in her comfortable .....

### 7 Choose the most suitable word for each space.

- 1 Would you like to ~~go~~ for a walk later?  
A go                      B have                      C make
- 2 Martin said he couldn't come and ..... an excuse.  
A did                      B made                      C took
- 3 Sue ..... friends with the family next door.  
A did                      B made                      C took
- 4 I'm going to ..... a bath now.  
A have                      B make                      C go
- 5 Did you ..... shopping yesterday?  
A do                      B go                      C make
- 6 Let's ..... some photos of the class.  
A do                      B make                      C take
- 7 I think I've ..... a mistake.  
A done                      B made                      C taken
- 8 What time are we ..... lunch?  
A doing                      B having                      C taking
- 9 I always ..... the ironing on Sunday afternoon.  
A go                      B make                      C do
- 10 Please don't ..... so much noise!  
A make                      B do                      C take
- 11 Joe ..... several stupid mistakes in his driving test.  
A did                      B took                      C made
- 12 In the winter, Alex ..... some photos of snow in the city.  
A made                      B took                      C did

### Units 73–77

#### 1 Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.

- 1 A This ones your's, but who's got their's?  
B This ones yours but whos got theirs?  
C This one's yours, but who's got theirs? ✓
- 2 A We got up late, had lunch, and watched television.  
B We got up, late had lunch, and watched television.  
C We got up late, had lunch and watched, television.
- 3 A Whats the matter with David's bike?  
B What's the matter with David's bike?  
C What's the matter, with Davids's bike?
- 4 A At the end of the film, we found the boys' coats under the seats.  
B At the end, of the film, we found the boys' coat's under the seats.  
C At the end of the film we found, the boys coats under the seats'.
- 5 A If I were you, I'd stop using yours and try hers'.  
B If I, were you, I'd stop using your's and try hers.  
C If I were you, I'd stop using yours and try hers.
- 6 A Jack's brother's name's Paul, isn't it?  
B Jack's brothers' name's Paul, isnt it?  
C Jack's brother's, names Paul, isn't it?
- 7 A If any letter's come here, I'll bring them, to Sam's house.  
B If any letters come here, I'll bring them to Sams's house.  
C If any letters come here, I'll bring them to Sam's house.
- 8 A Go down, this road, turn left, at the end, and then turn right.  
B Go down this road, turn left at the end, and then turn right.  
C Go down this road, turn left, at the end, and then turn right.
- 9 A Its nearly time for me to take the dog for its walk.  
B It's nearly time for me to take the dog for its walk.  
C It's nearly time for me to take the dog for it's walk.
- 10 A Watch out? You nearly hit that cyclist?  
B Watch out. You nearly hit that cyclist!  
C Watch out! You nearly hit that cyclist!

**2 There are two spelling errors in each sentence. Correct both words.**

- 1 It was a ~~lovly~~ afternoon, so we decided to spend the day at the ~~beech~~.  
 ..... lovely .....      ..... beach .....
- 2 The holiday was so succesful that we plan to go agian next summer.  
 .....
- 3 I have seen an advertismment for some holiday accomodation in the countryside.  
 .....
- 4 This answer isn't quite write. I believe it should be diferent.  
 .....
- 5 Last Febuary I had a wonderful time staying in my friend's vilage.  
 .....
- 6 My advise would be to discuss the problem with you're doctor.  
 .....

**3 There are two spelling errors in each sentence. Write each sentence correctly.**

- 1 I was very dissappointed when I couldn't awnser the questions.  
 ...I was very disappointed when I couldn't answer the questions.....
- 2 A climing holiday is diferent, but it's a bit dangerous.  
 .....
- 3 Fortunately, all Helen's freinds remebered her birthday.  
 .....
- 4 Peter trys to learn a new foriegn language every year.  
 .....
- 5 Are you comeing with us to the cinema tommorow?  
 .....
- 6 Do you beleive that people can travell through time?  
 .....
- 7 Jim has just writen two leters to his uncle.  
 .....
- 8 Oh bother! I've forgotten my keays. I'll have to go back.  
 .....
- 9 Carol likes walking in the countrey and seeing wild annimals.  
 .....
- 10 Which is your faverite avertisement on television?  
 .....

**4 Write one word in each space.**

- 1 I'd like to try .....on..... these shoes, please.
- 2 Tom grew ..... in France.
- 3 Mary is looking ..... to her party.
- 4 Why don't you look the word ..... in the dictionary?
- 5 Jack is still in bed. He hasn't got ..... yet.
- 6 What time does our plane take ..... ?
- 7 Anna looked ..... her dog for an hour, but couldn't find it.
- 8 I can't see. Can you turn ..... the light?

**5 Complete each sentence with a word made from the word in brackets.**

- 1 If the word is important, (line) .....underline..... it.
- 2 Thank you for inviting me. It was an (enjoy) ..... evening.
- 3 I enjoyed this programme. It was really (interest) ..... .
- 4 Harry was (honest) ..... and stole his friend's money.
- 5 Thank you very much. You've been very (help) ..... .
- 6 We've decided to spend two weeks at the (sea) ..... this year.
- 7 Mary cried all night, and felt very (happy) ..... .
- 8 David couldn't wait in the queue. He was too (patient) ..... .
- 9 You can buy cheap books from that (book) ..... .
- 10 Don't touch the lion! That's (danger) ..... .

**6 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

- 1 Would you like to A to the cinema later?  
A go                      B have                      C stay
- 2 We stayed in a ..... on our holiday.  
A beach                      B hotel                      C country
- 3 Jane is learning a new ..... language.  
A foregn                      B forein                      C foreign
- 4 Go down the street and turn right ..... the post office.  
A in                      B on                      C at
- 5 Can I have a ..... of cake, please?  
A piece                      B peace                      C peas
- 6 It costs ..... Euros.  
A fourty                      B forthy                      C forty
- 7 I'm going to be a doctor, when I grow ..... .  
A in                      B up                      C to
- 8 My little brother believes ..... ghosts.  
A of                      B about                      C in

**7 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

*Dear Jim*

*I am (1) ~~A~~ to tell you that I won't be able to come to lunch with your family next (2) ....*

*The (3) .... is my cat is very ill and I have to take her (4) .... the vet. I have asked my dad and he says he (5) .... take her, but he has to go to the dentist at the same time and (6) .... the same day. What a pain! I can't ask my mum as she is afraid (7) .... cats and won't go near Tibbles.*

*I would love to come, but maybe when you have a party I will be there.*

*Best (8) ....*

*Simon*

- |             |            |             |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 A writing | B writting | C to write  |
| 2 A Wensday | B Wendsday | C Wednesday |
| 3 A problem | B peroblem | C problim   |
| 4 A see     | B to see   | C seeing    |
| 5 A will    | B wouldn't | C would     |
| 6 A on      | B of       | C for       |
| 7 A for     | B of       | C at        |
| 8 A whishes | B wishers  | C wishes    |

**Think about grammar!**

Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 You can put a question mark anywhere in a sentence.
- 2 A dictionary can teach you how to spell.
- 3 British spelling is more difficult than American spelling.

# 1

## VOCABULARY

### Personal details

#### 1 Underline the correct word or phrase in each question.

- 1 What's your name / What do you call?
- 2 How *old* / *age* are you?
- 3 Where do you *stay* / *live*?
- 4 What's your *house* / *address*?
- 5 Which country do you *come* / *live* from?
- 6 What's your date of *birthday* / *birth*?
- 7 How long do you want to *stay* / *pass* here?
- 8 Have you got a *work* / *job*?

#### 2 Match the answers below to the questions in exercise 1.

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| a) 1146, Black Lion Drive | ..... <sup>4</sup> ..... |
| b) Three weeks            | .....                    |
| c) I'm nineteen.          | .....                    |
| d) In Los Angeles         | .....                    |
| e) No, I'm a student.     | .....                    |
| f) The United States      | .....                    |
| g) Ann-Marie Davis        | .....                    |
| h) 3 November, 1992       | .....                    |

#### 3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.

boy   children   family   foreigner   girl   friend   teenager   ~~woman~~

- 1 Our teacher is a tall ....~~woman~~..... called Mrs Green.
- 2 Is Helen your ..... ?
- 3 Who is that ..... ? Is it George?
- 4 Has Jean got any ..... ?
- 5 How many people are there in your ..... ?
- 6 Do you know that ..... ? Her name's Anna.
- 7 Now that I'm thirteen, I'm a .....
- 8 I don't come from this country. I'm a .....

**4 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

- 1 What's Tim like? He's .....  
A high                      B tall                      C big
- 2 Ann ..... glasses.  
A uses                      B carries                      C wears
- 3 Jane's only nine. She's .....  
A young                      B modern                      C new
- 4 Can you ..... Peter?  
A describe                      B look                      C appear
- 5 How many brothers and sisters ..... you got?  
A do                      B have                      C are
- 6 Are you ..... ?  
A study                      B a student                      C student
- 7 Where do you ..... from?  
A arrive                      B do                      C come
- 8 What colour ..... your hair?  
A has                      B is                      C are
- 9 Are you ..... or single?  
A doubled                      B married                      C marriage
- 10 I ..... sixteen years old.  
A have                      B get                      C am
- 11 James has ..... a beard.  
A wears                      B got                      C carries
- 12 ..... your address?  
A What                      B What's                      C Where's
- 13 What does Lucy look ..... ?  
A after                      B alike                      C like

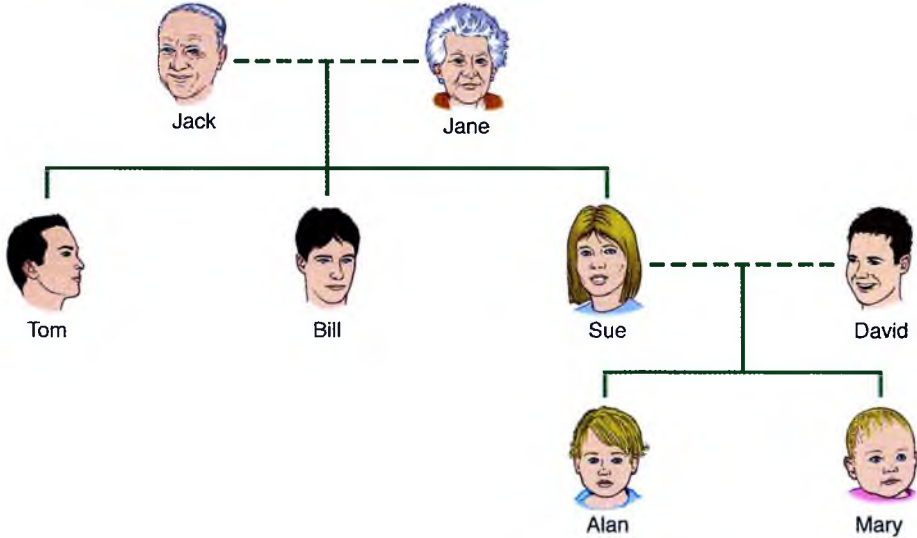
**5 Write one suitable word in each space.**

- 1 I was ..... born ..... in London.
- 2 My family left the UK when I was a ..... . I was only six.
- 3 Both my ..... worked in a university in Montreal, Canada.
- 4 I ..... up there and I really enjoyed it.
- 5 Most people there ..... French, so I learned it too.
- 6 When I was 10 we moved to France and we ..... two years in Lyon.
- 7 Then we moved back to the UK, and we've ..... here ever since.
- 8 Now I'm at music college but I haven't ..... home.
- 9 I come from a large ..... . I've got three brothers and a sister.
- 10 And I've got lots of ..... in Canada, and in France!



## Family matters

1 Look at the family tree. Write the answers.

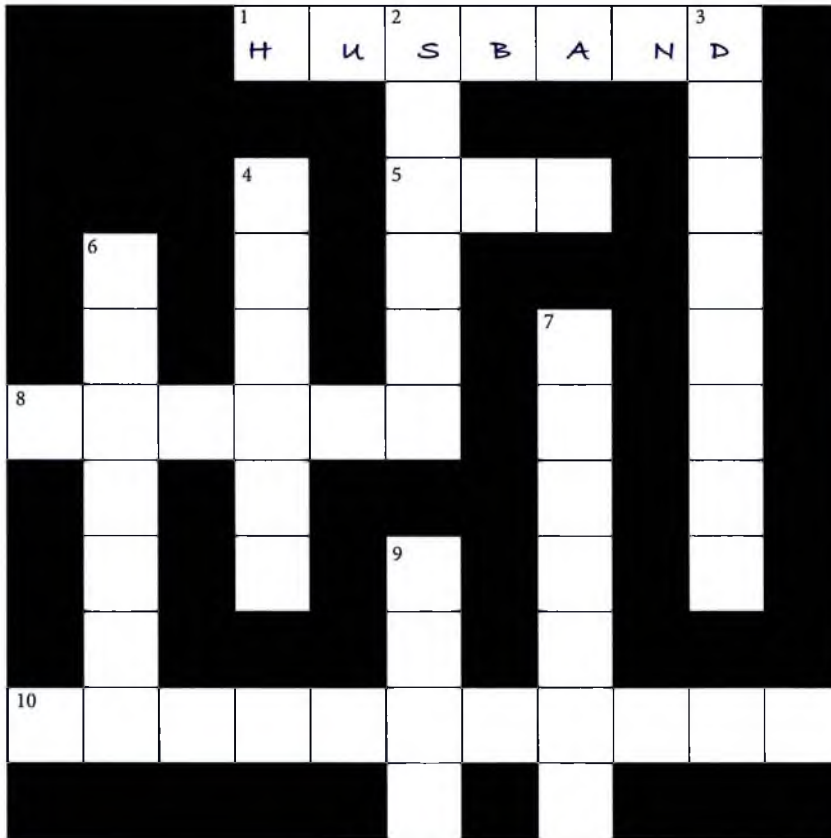


- |    |                                      |                   |
|----|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1  | Who are Jack and Jane's children?    | Tom, Bill and Sue |
| 2  | Who are Tom, Bill and Sue's parents? | .....             |
| 3  | Who are Jack and Jane's sons?        | .....             |
| 4  | Who is Jack and Jane's daughter?     | .....             |
| 5  | Who is Tom's brother?                | .....             |
| 6  | Who is Tom and Bill's sister?        | .....             |
| 7  | Who is Sue's husband?                | .....             |
| 8  | Who is Jack's wife?                  | .....             |
| 9  | Who is Alan and Mary's father?       | .....             |
| 10 | Who is Alan and Mary's grandfather?  | .....             |
| 11 | Who is Alan and Mary's mother?       | .....             |
| 12 | Who is Alan and Mary's grandmother?  | .....             |

2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Christine is married to / with an Italian.
- 2 More than fifty of Rick's parents / relatives came to the wedding.
- 3 Ann is the only people / person I really like!
- 4 The old / olds often think about the past.
- 5 I've never met him before. He's a stranger / foreigner.
- 6 I knew / met your new English teacher yesterday.
- 7 Sue and her sister Mary are twins / pairs.
- 8 My brother Mark is the eldest / elderly child in the family.

3 Use the family tree on page 208 to answer the clues and complete the crossword.



Clues

Across

- 1 Jack is Jane's ...
- 5 Tom is Jack's ...
- 8 Sue is Mary's ...
- 10 Jack is Alan's ...

Down

- 2 Mary is Alan's ...
- 3 Sue is Jack's ...
- 4 David is Mary's ...
- 6 Tom is Bill's ...
- 7 Sue and David are Mary and Alan's ...
- 9 Jane is Jack's ...

4 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.

brother children ~~daughter~~ husband sister son twins wife

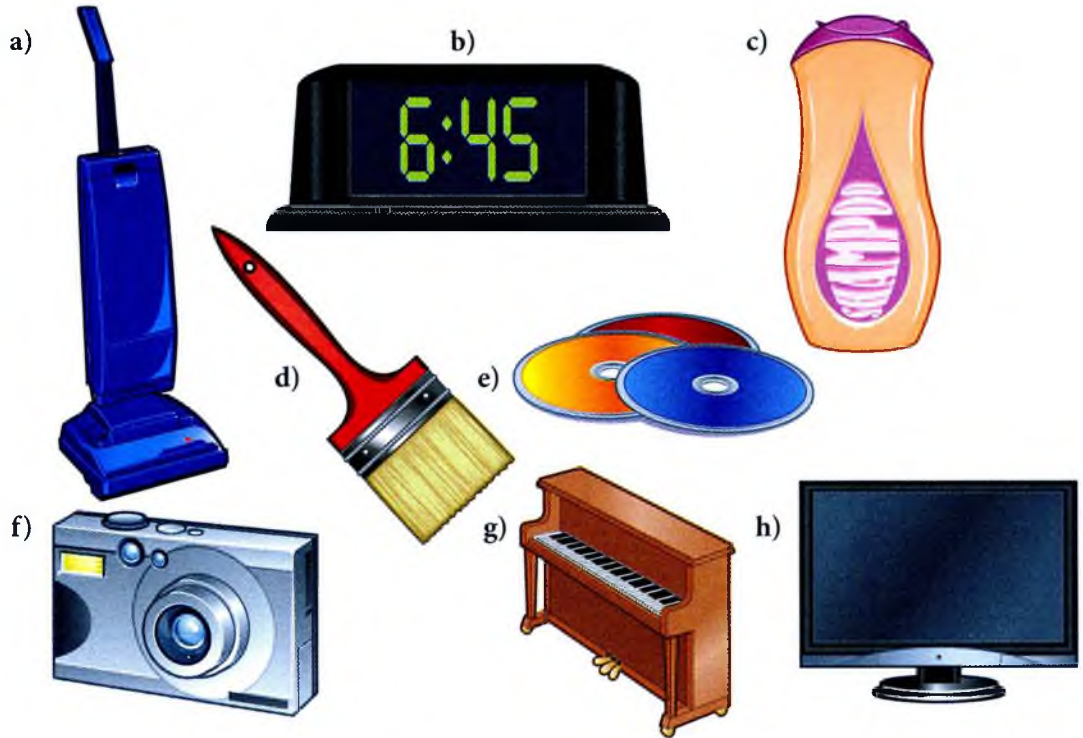
- 1 Ted and Alice were happy when Emily, their ~~daughter~~, was born.
- 2 Harry asked Ann to be his ....., and they got married six months later.
- 3 Jim and Mary's ....., David, was their second child.
- 4 Richard and Stephen are ....., but they don't look exactly the same.
- 5 Mark and his ..... Sue went shopping with their mother.
- 6 When the school bell rang, a crowd of ..... ran out of the school.
- 7 Jane met her ..... Philip at a friend's wedding.
- 8 Liz and her ..... Mike like listening to their grandmother's stories.

# 3

## VOCABULARY

### Free time

1 Choose the most suitable use (1–8) for each picture (a–h).



- |   |                     |               |
|---|---------------------|---------------|
| 1 | taking photos       | ..... f ..... |
| 2 | doing the housework | .....         |
| 3 | listening to music  | .....         |
| 4 | playing the piano   | .....         |
| 5 | waking up           | .....         |
| 6 | washing your hair   | .....         |
| 7 | watching television | .....         |
| 8 | painting a wall     | .....         |

2 Underline the correct words in each sentence.

- 1 Are you interested *for* / *in* photography?
- 2 This is my *best* / *favourite* book. It's *David Copperfield*, by Dickens.
- 3 I've decided to *make* / *join* the local swimming club.
- 4 Kate usually *passes* / *spends* most of her time reading.
- 5 Tim has a very interesting *fun* / *hobby*. He builds small boats.
- 6 What do you like doing in your *empty* / *spare* time?
- 7 Wendy is a *member* / *team* of the drama club.
- 8 Sue likes going *to the cinema* / *cinema*.

**3 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

*What do you like doing best (1) C your spare time? My cousin Paul likes going (2) ..... in the country and (3) ..... photos. Sometimes he (4) ..... with his friends, and they (5) ..... at the park or at the beach. They always (6) ..... a good time. His brother Chris isn't (7) ..... on walking. He spends most of the (8) ..... at home.*

- |                |           |           |            |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1 A for        | B when    | C in      | D at       |
| 2 A for walks  | B walks   | C a walk  | D to walk  |
| 3 A making     | B having  | C taking  | D doing    |
| 4 A travels    | B gets up | C sees    | D goes out |
| 5 A enjoy      | B hobby   | C go      | D have fun |
| 6 A have       | B make    | C do      | D like     |
| 7 A interested | B out     | C decided | D keen     |
| 8 A other      | B time    | C people  | D money    |

**4 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 You need a pencil if you want to make a C .  
 A painting                      B planning                      C drawing
- 2 Kate's mother thinks that skateboarding is ..... .  
 A danger                      B dangerous                      C in danger
- 3 Sarah has a wonderful ..... collection.  
 A stamping                      B stamp                      C stamps
- 4 Does your sister play ..... ?  
 A the piano                      B pianos                      C a piano
- 5 Carol writes pop ..... in her spare time.  
 A songs                      B sings                      C singing
- 6 Harry spends a lot of time playing ..... .  
 A computer's games                      B games of computer                      C computer games

# 4

## VOCABULARY

### Rooms

1 Use a word from the box to complete each label (1-8).



ceiling    chair    light    door    floor    wall    window    radiator

- |   |                            |   |       |
|---|----------------------------|---|-------|
| 1 | ..... <u>ceiling</u> ..... | 5 | ..... |
| 2 | .....                      | 6 | ..... |
| 3 | .....                      | 7 | ..... |
| 4 | .....                      | 8 | ..... |

2 Choose the most suitable word for each sentence.

kitchen    dining room    ~~bedroom~~    living room    bathroom    study

- |   |  |                |
|---|--|----------------|
| 1 | You usually sleep in this room.                        | <u>bedroom</u> |
| 2 | You sit at your desk in this room.                     | .....          |
| 3 | You sit on the sofa and watch television in this room. | .....          |
| 4 | You cook meals in this room.                           | .....          |
| 5 | You take a shower in this room.                        | .....          |
| 6 | You eat in this room.                                  | .....          |

**3 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Don't forget to turn off / close the light when you leave.
- 2 Can you shut / stop the door? It's cold in here.
- 3 Jim and Tina usually have / get lunch in the kitchen.
- 4 Our house is dirty because nobody likes making / doing housework.
- 5 Someone is hitting / knocking at the door.
- 6 Why don't you put / take a picture on this wall?
- 7 Can you open / turn on the light? I can't see.
- 8 Tom is living / staying with his sister for a few days.

**4 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

armchair bathroom ceiling desk floor furniture upstairs window

- 1 Our house has two floors, and my bedroom is upstairs.
- 2 If I stand on a chair, I can touch the .....
- 3 Peter does his homework at his ..... in his bedroom.
- 4 I can't move in your room! There is too much .....
- 5 From my ....., I can see the park at the end of the street.
- 6 Kate dropped a glass on the ..... and it broke.
- 7 Jack is in the ..... . He's taking a shower.
- 8 When I read, I like sitting in a comfortable .....

**5 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

*I like my house because it has lots of (1) ~~B~~. It's a flat, and it has a hall, a (2) ....., three bedrooms, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is small, but I can see the park from my (3) ....., I've got posters on the (4) ....., and a carpet on the (5) ....., There isn't a lot of (6) ....., just (7) ....., a bed and a (8) ..... for my clothes. I used to (9) ..... the room with my brother, but he's a student now and lives in a student (10) .....*

- |                 |             |            |                   |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|-------------------|
| 1 A place       | B space     | C floors   | D area            |
| 2 A living room | B bedsit    | C cottage  | D saloon          |
| 3 A door        | B mirror    | C curtain  | D window          |
| 4 A bed         | B chair     | C bookcase | D walls           |
| 5 A wall        | B floor     | C window   | D ceiling         |
| 6 A furniture   | B table     | C armchair | D central heating |
| 7 A an office   | B a library | C a desk   | D a study         |
| 8 A cupboard    | B curtain   | C carpet   | D wardrobe        |
| 9 A live        | B part      | C share    | D double          |
| 10 A hostel     | B home      | C college  | D accommodation   |

# 5

## VOCABULARY

### Places

#### 1 Choose the correct name for each place.

|             |        |             |           |               |
|-------------|--------|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| baker's     | bank   | butcher's   | chemist's | greengrocer's |
| newsagent's | market | post office |           |               |



- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 You can buy fresh fruit and vegetables here.   | .greengrocer's. |
| 2 You can put money in your account here.        | .....           |
| 3 You can buy things outside in the street here. | .....           |
| 4 You can buy medicine here.                     | .....           |
| 5 You can buy bread and cakes here.              | .....           |
| 6 You can buy meat here.                         | .....           |
| 7 You can buy stamps, and send letters here.     | .....           |
| 8 You can buy magazines and sweets here.         | .....           |

#### 2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- Have you been to Grimton? It's not a very nice *part* / place.
- It's good to get away from the city and visit the *field* / *country*.
- Paris is the *head* / *capital* of France.
- You can get a bus from here to the city *central* / *centre*.
- Would you rather live in a city, a small town or a *villa* / *village*?
- When you leave the *land* / *country*, you have to show your passport.
- David comes from a small *centre* / *town* in Wales.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the *world* / *earth*.

**3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Excuse me, how do I ~~go~~ to the post office from here?  
A find                      B get                      C come
- 2 When you come to the end of the street, turn .....  
A to left                      B left                      C the left
- 3 Could you tell me the ..... to the bus station, please?  
A road                      B direction                      C way
- 4 I don't know where we are. I'm completely .....  
A lost                      B missed                      C absent
- 5 ..... the next turning on the right.  
A Make                      B Go                      C Take
- 6 How ..... is it from here to the museum?  
A far                      B distance                      C journey
- 7 Go ..... at the traffic lights.  
A over                      B straight on                      C through
- 8 The cinema is ..... the left.  
A on                      B at                      C by

**4 Choose the correct name for each place.**

|                           |            |         |       |         |
|---------------------------|------------|---------|-------|---------|
| block of flats            | station    | cinema  | hotel | library |
| <del>police station</del> | restaurant | theatre |       |         |

- 1 You can ask for help here.                      police station
- 2 You can stay here.                      .....
- 3 You can borrow books from here.                      .....
- 4 You can watch a film here.                      .....
- 5 You can catch a train here.                      .....
- 6 You can see a play here.                      .....
- 7 You can live here.                      .....
- 8 You can have dinner here.                      .....



# 6

## VOCABULARY

### Jobs

#### 1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 Mark works for an Australian *job* / *company*.
- 2 Ann got a job in an office as a *typewriter* / *typist*.
- 3 When I had toothache I went to the *doctor's* / *dentist's*.
- 4 Bob trained as an *electrician* / *electric*.
- 5 My mother used to work as a *cook* / *cooker* in a school.
- 6 Do you like our new English *teacher* / *professor*?
- 7 The police *was* / *were* waiting for Jim outside the bank.
- 8 Helen has found a *work* / *job* in a bank.

#### 2 Choose the best ending (a–h) for each sentence (1–8).

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 The mechanic  | a) milked the cows.                          |
| 2 The carpenter | b) sent the thief to prison.                 |
| 3 The vet       | c) gave Lisa some medicine for her sick cat. |
| 4 The judge     | d) brought Ann a drink on a tray.            |
| 5 The plumber   | e) repaired the table and chairs.            |
| 6 The farmer    | f) made Paul's new suit.                     |
| 7 The tailor    | g) repaired my car.                          |
| 8 The steward   | h) fixed the broken pipe in the bathroom.    |

#### 3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.

|       |                      |             |          |        |          |
|-------|----------------------|-------------|----------|--------|----------|
| actor | <del>architect</del> | electrician | gardener | lawyer | musician |
| nurse | sailor               | scientist   | soldier  |        |          |

- 1 Sam's new house was designed by a well-known .....architect.....
- 2 After he was arrested, Paul was allowed to phone his .....
- 3 Being a/an ..... is enjoyable, until there is a war.
- 4 A/an ..... looked after Bob when he was in hospital.
- 5 When all the lights went out, the manager called a/an .....
- 6 Once a week, a/an ..... comes and cuts the grass.
- 7 Helen trained as a/an ..... and now plays in an orchestra.
- 8 Ann is a famous ..... and works at a university.
- 9 The best ..... in the play played the part of the King.
- 10 David didn't enjoy being a/an ..... because he got seasick.

**4 Read these descriptions of jobs and complete the words.**

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 My dad helps children learn things.                | t e a c h e r             |
| 2 This person helps people who are ill.              | d _ _ _ _ _               |
| 3 He/She performs in the theatre, on TV or in films. | a _ _ _ _                 |
| 4 This person sells things in shops.                 | s _ _ _ a _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ |
| 5 I study in a university.                           | s _ _ _ _ _ _             |
| 6 This person writes books and plays.                | w _ _ _ _ _               |
| 7 My cousin looks after people's teeth.              | d _ _ _ _ _               |
| 8 He makes houses and other offices.                 | b _ _ _ _ _               |

**5 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

My sister has got a new (1) .A. in a hospital. She's not a nurse or a doctor. She (2) ..... in the kitchen, she's a (3) ..... . She prepares special food for the patients in the hospital.

She saw an (4) ..... in the paper, and wrote a letter telling them about her work cooking for people in a vegetarian restaurant. She has lots of (5) ..... working in a kitchen. The hospital (6) ..... asked her to come for an (7) ..... . They liked her very much, but before they (8) ..... her the job, they checked her (9) ..... .

She loves her new job and says that cooking for patients in a hospital is much better than working in a small (10) ..... .

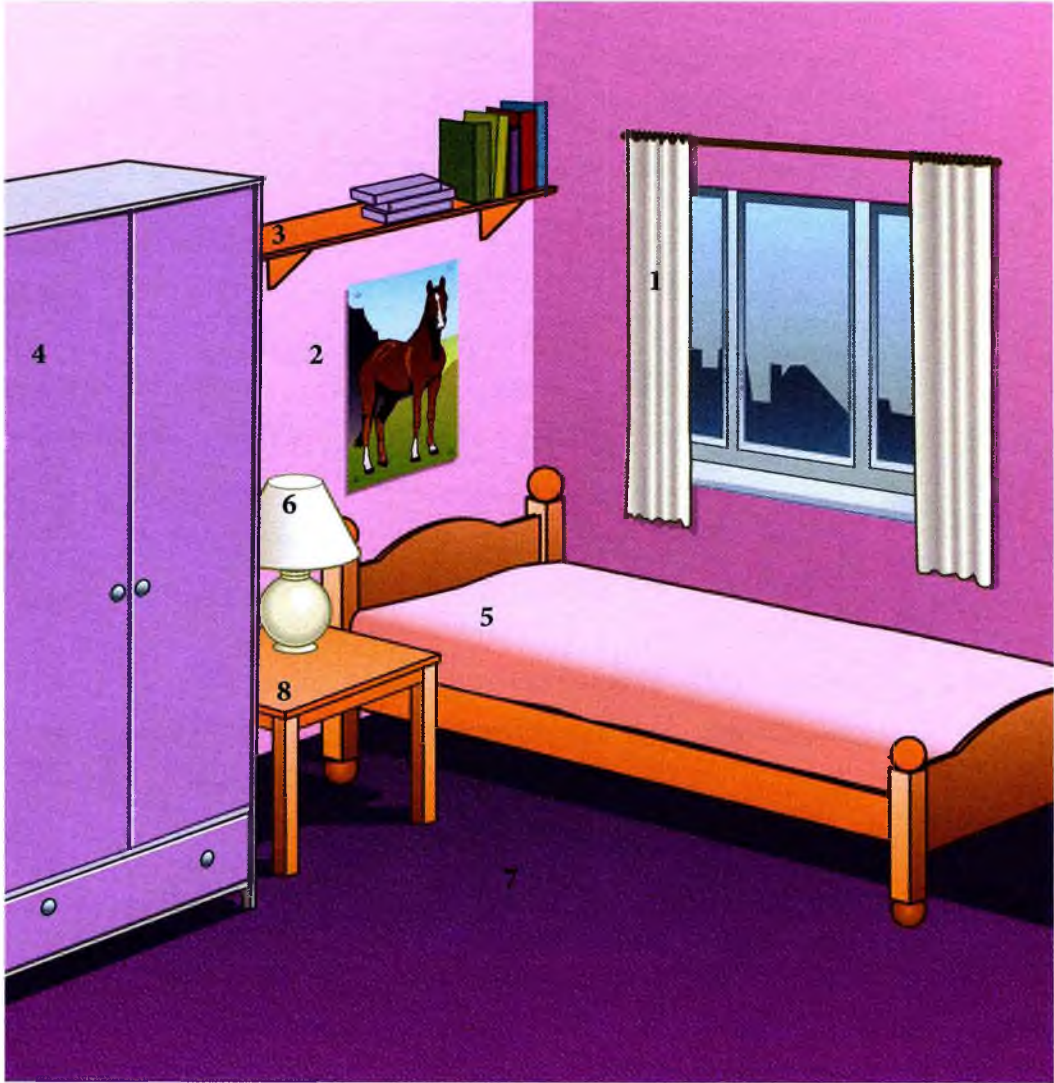
- |                |              |                 |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 A job        | B work       | C employment    |
| 2 A is         | B work       | C works         |
| 3 A cooker     | B cook       | C cooks         |
| 4 A sign       | B notice     | C advertisement |
| 5 A experience | B past       | C previous      |
| 6 A doctor     | B manager    | C dentist       |
| 7 A interview  | B review     | C references    |
| 8 A give       | B offered    | C told          |
| 9 A referee    | B references | C review        |
| 10 A company   | B job        | C cooker        |

# 7

## VOCABULARY

### Inside the house

1 Match a word from the box to each item (1–8).



poster   carpet   ~~curtains~~   lamp   shelf   table   bed   wardrobe

1 ..... *curtains* .....  
2 .....  
3 .....  
4 .....

5 .....  
6 .....  
7 .....  
8 .....

**2 Choose the things you usually find in each room.**

- |               |   |              |             |   |
|---------------|---|--------------|-------------|---|
| 1 kitchen     | <input checked="" type="radio"/> A cooker | B sofa       | C bath      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> D fridge |
| 2 bedroom     | A blanket                                 | B dustbin    | C wardrobe  | D pillow                                  |
| 3 living-room | A bed                                     | B armchair   | C carpet    | D table                                   |
| 4 bathroom    | A mirror                                  | B television | C bookshelf | D shower                                  |
| 5 study       | A bed                                     | B desk       | C bookshelf | D cooker                                  |
| 6 dining room | A table                                   | B bath       | C chair     | D wardrobe                                |

**3 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

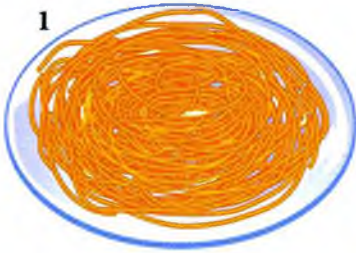
- 1 To stop the light coming in the window we need some ~~A~~.  
A curtains                      B radiators                      C shelves
- 2 It's very cold. Why don't you turn on the .... ?  
A central heating              B cooker                          C stove
- 3 In the evening I like to relax in ..... .  
A a chair                          B a seat                              C an armchair
- 4 Laura sat at her .... and turned on her computer.  
A study                              B desk                                  C office
- 5 My school books are in the .... in the living room.  
A library                              B bookcase                          C bookshelf
- 6 There was a lovely fire burning in the ..... .  
A chimney                          B central heating                  C fireplace
- 7 You can wash your hands in the .... in the bathroom.  
A basin                                  B shower                              C tap
- 8 The biscuits are in the .... in the kitchen.  
A table                                  B shelf                                  C cupboard

# 8

## VOCABULARY

### Food and drink

1 Match a word from the box to each item (1-8).



|               |            |                           |            |            |
|---------------|------------|---------------------------|------------|------------|
| some biscuits | some bread | a chicken                 | some chips | some fruit |
| a salad       | a sausage  | <del>some spaghetti</del> |            |            |

1 ..... *some spaghetti* .....  
2 .....  
3 .....  
4 .....

5 .....  
6 .....  
7 .....  
8 .....

**2 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

|           |           |                  |        |       |      |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|--------|-------|------|
| breakfast | take-away | dinner           | food   | lunch | meal |
| menu      | picnic    | <del>snack</del> | course |       |      |

- 1 When I get hungry and feel like a ~~snack~~... I eat an apple.
- 2 The waiter gave us the ..... and we chose our meals.
- 3 A good ..... is the best way of starting the day.
- 4 Peter has to take medicine an hour before every .....
- 5 I'm meeting Carol for ..... at 1.30, so I'll be back late this afternoon.
- 6 ..... is served every evening in the hotel dining room.
- 7 Michael really loves Greek .....
- 8 We took some fruit and sandwiches and had a ..... on the beach.
- 9 Helen didn't have time to cook so she phoned for a .....
- 10 After the starter we ordered our main .....

**3 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Boil / Cook some water, and pour it into the cup.
- 2 We usually *bake* / fry the fish in oil.
- 3 At the end of the meal we paid the *menu* / bill.
- 4 I always buy fresh food because I don't like *iced* / frozen food.
- 5 Lisa doesn't eat meat. She's a *vegetable* / vegetarian.
- 6 Don't forget to put *the meal* / the food in the fridge.
- 7 When the food is *made* / done, take it out of the oven.
- 8 Could we have some more *bread* / loaf please?
- 9 The *cook* / cooker put the meat in the oven.
- 10 Jack bought a fresh *chicken* / kitchen from the supermarket.

**4 Choose the most suitable word for each description.**

|     |     |      |       |       |                  |       |      |
|-----|-----|------|-------|-------|------------------|-------|------|
| cup | jug | fork | knife | plate | <del>spoon</del> | straw | tray |
|-----|-----|------|-------|-------|------------------|-------|------|

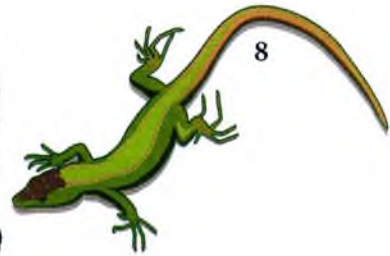
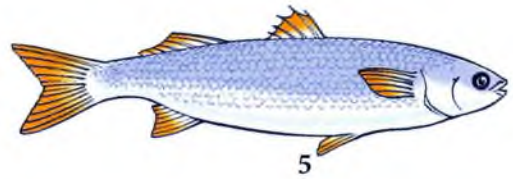
- 1 You can eat soup with this. ....spoon....
- 2 You can suck drinks through this. ....
- 3 You put food on this and eat from it. ....
- 4 You can carry things on this. ....
- 5 You can cut meat with this. ....
- 6 You drink tea or coffee from this. ....
- 7 You can carry food to your mouth with this. ....
- 8 You can pour water from this. ....

# 9

## VOCABULARY

### Animals

1 Match a word from the box to each item (1–8).



|      |     |         |     |      |       |        |        |
|------|-----|---------|-----|------|-------|--------|--------|
| bird | cat | chicken | dog | fish | horse | lizard | monkey |
|------|-----|---------|-----|------|-------|--------|--------|

- |   |                          |   |       |
|---|--------------------------|---|-------|
| 1 | ..... <i>horse</i> ..... | 5 | ..... |
| 2 | .....                    | 6 | ..... |
| 3 | .....                    | 7 | ..... |
| 4 | .....                    | 8 | ..... |

**2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Can you take / run the dog for a walk, please?
- 2 This is my pet / toy lizard, Larry.
- 3 When someone knocks at the door, the dog shouts / barks.
- 4 Some birds can run / fly for thousands of kilometres.
- 5 Lions and tigers are wild / country animals.
- 6 Do you know how to ride / drive a horse?
- 7 Monkeys are good at climbing / living trees.
- 8 Helen has two birds, and feeds / eats them every day.
- 9 There are many fish living deep / low in the sea.
- 10 My cat has a really long leg / tail.

**3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

bite catch ride hunt jump like live feed make sing

- 1 Don't worry! The dog won't .....bite..... you.
- 2 Monkeys can ..... from one tree to another.
- 3 Fish can't ..... out of water.
- 4 Parrots ..... a lot of noise.
- 5 Not many people ..... snakes.
- 6 Most birds ..... in the morning.
- 7 Cats usually ..... at night and sleep during the day.
- 8 You can use a net or a hook to ..... a fish.
- 9 Can you ..... a horse?
- 10 Let's got to the park and ..... the ducks.

**4 Choose the best ending (a–j) for each sentence (1–10).**

- |                           |                                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A small blue fish í     | a) laid an egg in the kitchen.        |
| 2 The fat white cat       | b) barked when I knocked at the door. |
| 3 The friendly horse      | c) was green and two metres long.     |
| 4 Mickey Mouse            | d) took the nuts and ran away.        |
| 5 Suddenly a small bird   | e) flew across the garden.            |
| 6 Mary's pet chicken      | f) went to sleep on the armchair.     |
| 7 A large black dog       | g) ate some grass from Tim's hand.    |
| 8 The snake               | h) lay asleep on the rock in the sun. |
| 9 The monkey              | i) was swimming in the glass bowl.    |
| 10 The small green lizard | j) was the star of many cartoons.     |

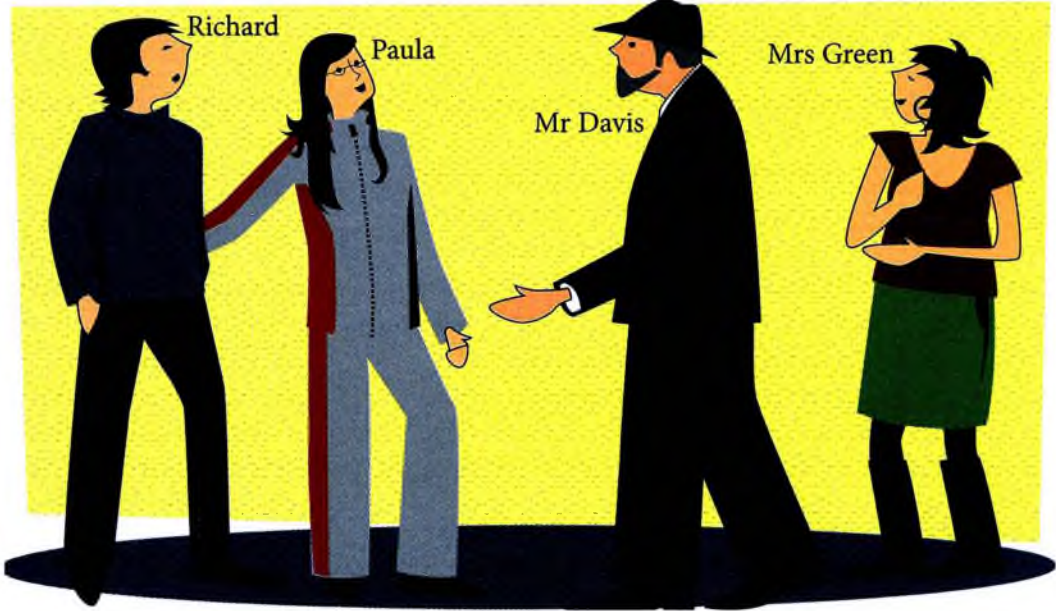


# 10

## VOCABULARY

### Clothes

1 Look at the picture and read the descriptions. Write the names.



- 1 She's middle-aged and she's wearing a skirt. ..... *Mrs Green* .....
- 2 He's got a beard. .....
- 3 She's got long hair and glasses. .....
- 4 He's wearing jeans and a pullover. .....
- 5 She's wearing a tracksuit. .....
- 6 He's wearing a suit. .....
- 7 She's wearing earrings. .....
- 8 He's old and he's tall, and he's wearing a hat. .....

2 Choose the most suitable word from the box for each description.

belt   costume   earring   glove   hat   overcoat   ~~sock~~   underwear

- 1 You put one of these on each foot. ..... *sock* .....
- 2 You wear this over your clothes in cold weather. .....
- 3 You wear this on your head. .....
- 4 This stops your trousers falling down. .....
- 5 You wear this in your ear. .....
- 6 You wear one of these on each hand in cold weather. .....
- 7 You wear this when you go swimming. .....
- 8 You wear this under your clothes. .....

**3 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Maria usually ~~A~~ sports clothes.  
A wears                      B carries                      C dresses
- 2 I don't like these shoes. They hurt my ..... .  
A hands                      B arms                      C feet
- 3 Peter always wears a tie and a white ..... .  
A shirt                      B blouse                      C skirt
- 4 Helen went to the shops and bought ..... .  
A a trouser                      B a pair of trousers                      C two trousers
- 5 David has decided to buy ..... .  
A a new cloth                      B a new dress                      C new clothes
- 6 This coat is the wrong ..... . It's too big.  
A size                      B large                      C number
- 7 Your clothes are wet! I think you should ..... them off.  
A dress                      B take                      C wear
- 8 When it's hot, I usually wear ..... and a t-shirt.  
A shorts                      B a short                      C short ones
- 9 I want to buy a new pair of ..... .  
A earring                      B ring                      C earrings
- 10 It's very cold outside. You must ..... on your coat.  
A take                      B put                      C wear

**4 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

assistant    bargain    counter    customer    label    ~~sale~~    size    shoplifter

- 1 Peter bought his jacket cheap in a .....~~sale~~..... .
- 2 These shoes are ..... 44. Are they big enough for you?
- 3 Kevin left his wallet on the ..... when he paid for his trousers.
- 4 The ..... says this dress is size 10, but I think it's smaller.
- 5 Jane forgot to pay for the shirt, and she was arrested for being a .....
- 6 I only paid £5 for these shoes! They were a .....
- 7 Emma had to wait while the assistant served another .....
- 8 Helen asked the ..... to help her choose a skirt.

## Weather



**1 Choose the most suitable description (1–6) for each picture (a–f).**

- 1 It's hot.                    .....*d*.....  
 2 It's snowing.             .....  
 3 It's windy.                 .....  
 4 It's raining.                .....  
 5 It's cold.                    .....  
 6 It's cloudy                 .....



**2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

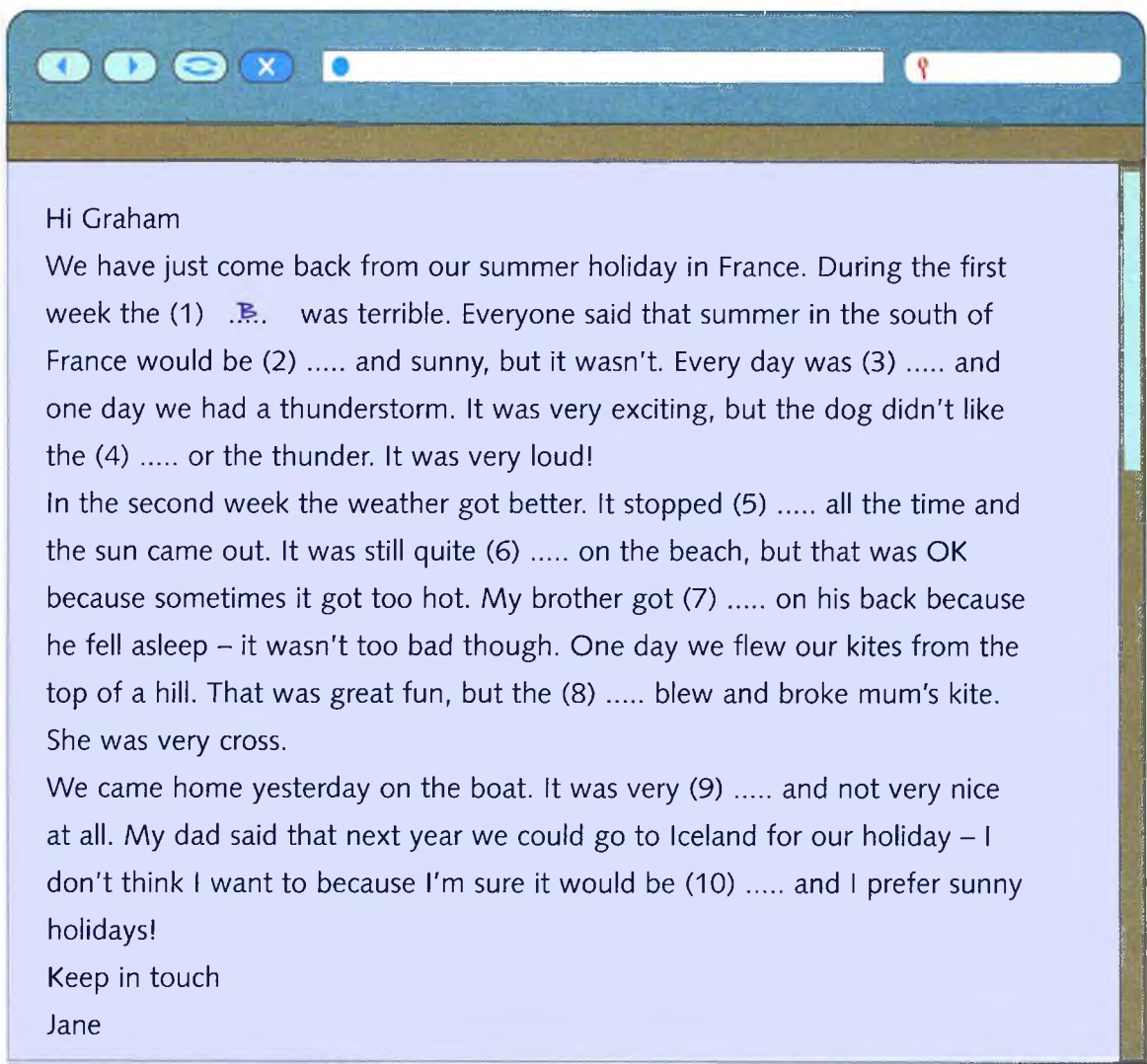
- 1 The sky was full of dark clouds / rain.  
 2 Before the storm started, we heard booming / thunder.  
 3 It was very cold and the river was frozen / iced.  
 4 It won't rain for a long time. It's only a shower / bath.  
 5 When the wind whistles / blows, all the trees move.  
 6 We sat on the beach and enjoyed the sunshine / sunburn.  
 7 It started raining, and everyone got watery / wet.  
 8 During the storm the sky lit up with rain / lightning.

**3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

freezing    lightning    rain    raining    snowing    sunny    windy

- 1 As it's raining, take your umbrella.  
 2 If it's ..... tomorrow, we'll go to the beach.  
 3 Suddenly there was a flash of ..... and then loud thunder.  
 4 I'm .....! Can I borrow a thick pullover?  
 5 It was very ..... yesterday, so Jim flew his kite.  
 6 We had very heavy ..... yesterday and I got very wet.  
 7 Look, it's .....! All the cars are white!

## 4 Choose the most suitable word for each space.



Hi Graham

We have just come back from our summer holiday in France. During the first week the (1) ..... was terrible. Everyone said that summer in the south of France would be (2) ..... and sunny, but it wasn't. Every day was (3) ..... and one day we had a thunderstorm. It was very exciting, but the dog didn't like the (4) ..... or the thunder. It was very loud!

In the second week the weather got better. It stopped (5) ..... all the time and the sun came out. It was still quite (6) ..... on the beach, but that was OK because sometimes it got too hot. My brother got (7) ..... on his back because he fell asleep – it wasn't too bad though. One day we flew our kites from the top of a hill. That was great fun, but the (8) ..... blew and broke mum's kite. She was very cross.

We came home yesterday on the boat. It was very (9) ..... and not very nice at all. My dad said that next year we could go to Iceland for our holiday – I don't think I want to because I'm sure it would be (10) ..... and I prefer sunny holidays!

Keep in touch

Jane

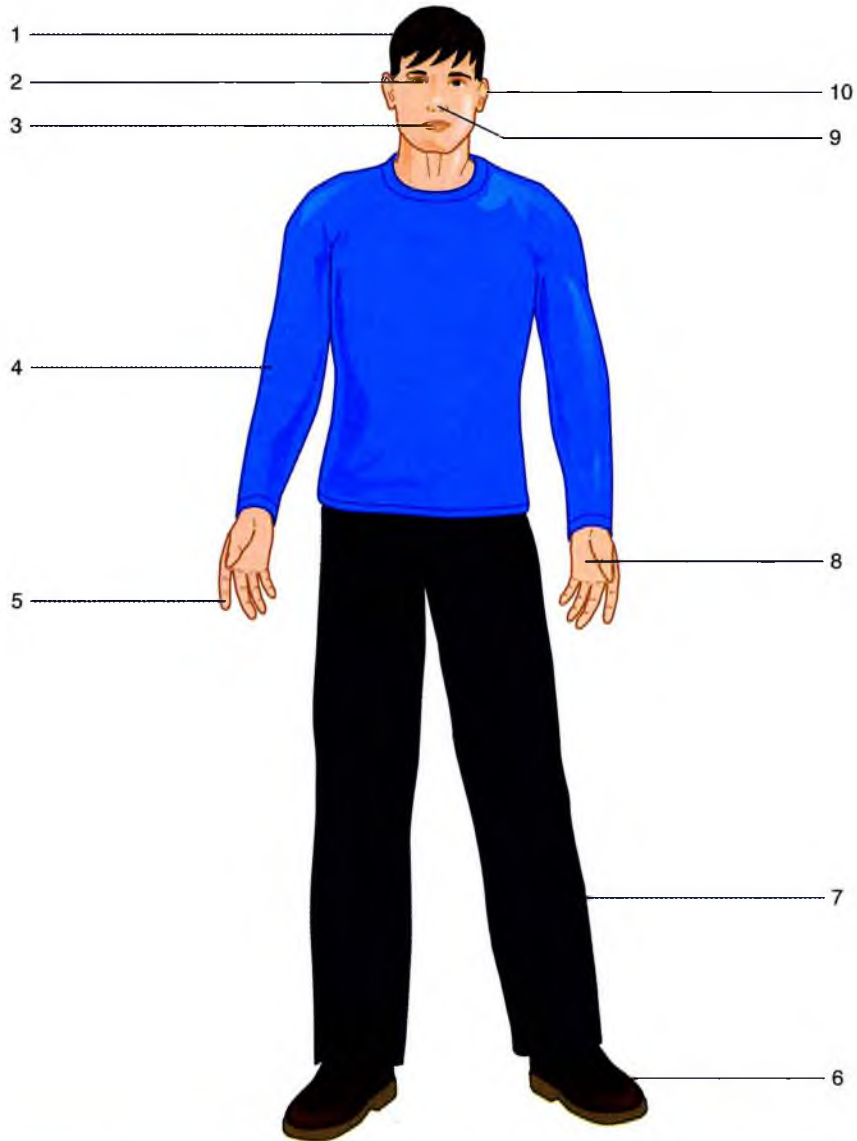
- |              |            |             |
|--------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 A day      | B weather  | C weeks     |
| 2 A hot      | B rainy    | C cold      |
| 3 A watery   | B cloudy   | C weathery  |
| 4 A booming  | B raining  | C lightning |
| 5 A raining  | B snow     | C cloudy    |
| 6 A wet      | B windy    | C wind      |
| 7 A sunshine | B sunburn  | C sunny     |
| 8 A cloud    | B rain     | C wind      |
| 9 A wet      | B snow     | C sun       |
| 10 A iced    | B freezing | C snow      |

# 12

## VOCABULARY

### The body

1 Match a word from the box to each part of the body (1–10).



arm ear eye finger foot ~~hair~~ hand leg mouth nose

- |   |                         |    |       |
|---|-------------------------|----|-------|
| 1 | ..... <i>hair</i> ..... | 6  | ..... |
| 2 | .....                   | 7  | ..... |
| 3 | .....                   | 8  | ..... |
| 4 | .....                   | 9  | ..... |
| 5 | .....                   | 10 | ..... |

**2 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Horses have got four legs / arms.
- 2 The little girl was holding her mother's foot / hand.
- 3 Tony always lies on his back / head when he sleeps.
- 4 Gina has beautiful long ears / hair.
- 5 Jack has got a cold and his knee / nose is red.
- 6 Anna can't write because she has broken two fingers / toes.
- 7 I've got five fingers / toes on each foot.
- 8 A giraffe has got a very long mouth / neck.

**3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

|     |     |     |      |      |      |     |       |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|-----|-------|
| arm | ear | eye | foot | hand | head | leg | waist |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|-----|-------|

- 1 Peter broke his .....leg..... and couldn't walk for a month.
- 2 When David met Mrs Greenwood, he shook her .....
- 3 I tried on the shoe but my ..... got stuck!
- 4 I can't see! I've got something in my .....
- 5 The teacher was carrying a lot of books under his .....
- 6 I need new trousers, because my ..... is getting bigger!
- 7 My ..... feels cold in winter, so I wear a hat.
- 8 Our teacher's words go in one ..... and out the other!

**4 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

- 1 You .....C..... with your foot.  
A laugh            B click            C kick
- 2 You ..... with your teeth.  
A stamp            B bite            C smell
- 3 You ..... with your finger.  
A point            B smell            C wink
- 4 You ..... with your nose.  
A blink            B kick            C smell
- 5 You ..... with one eye.  
A point            B wink            C bite
- 6 You ..... with both eyes.  
A blink            B kiss            C shout

## Staying healthy

### 1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 I can't see! There is something wrong with my left *ear* / *eye*.
- 2 I couldn't wash because there wasn't any *soap* / *soup*.
- 3 The doctor told me that I have to *have* / *do* an operation.
- 4 These shoes are too small for me. I've got wide *feet* / *legs*.
- 5 I didn't go to school because I had *cold* / *a cold*.
- 6 Mary decided to *do* / *have* a hot bath.
- 7 Peter is *ill* / *bad* and has gone to the doctor's.
- 8 Don't forget to *wash* / *clean* your hands!

### 2 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.

- 1 I've got a ~~flu~~ in my leg.  
A hurt                      B pain                      C damage
- 2 Tom was very ill, and had to go to .....  
A hospital                  B medicine                  C doctor
- 3 George broke his leg in a/an .....  
A chance                      B problem                      C accident
- 4 Kate had a ..... of 41°C.  
A temperature              B heat                      C thermometer
- 5 Ellen stayed at home because she didn't feel very .....  
A ill                              B well                              C better
- 6 Little Jimmy was crying because he had a/an .....  
A ill ear                      B earache                      C ear pain
- 7 The doctor didn't expect his poor ..... to pay a lot.  
A patients                      B customers                      C users
- 8 When Michael ....., everyone said, 'Bless you!'  
A hurt                              B fell                              C sneezed
- 9 You should put a ..... on that cut.  
A bleeding                      B wound                              C plaster
- 10 Peter has decided to give up .....  
A smoke                              B smoking                              C smoker

3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.

bleeding broken dangerous fit healthy injured sore well

- 1 A healthy diet includes lots of fruit and vegetables.
- 2 John is very ill and won't come to school until he is .....
- 3 Helen's leg was ..... so the doctor put it in plaster for a month.
- 4 It is ..... to take more than four of these tablets in 24 hours.
- 5 George has cut his hand and it's .....
- 6 David keeps ..... by doing exercises in the gym twice a week.
- 7 Edward walked all day in his new boots, and now his feet are .....
- 8 The bus crashed into a tree, but luckily nobody was .....

4 Match a word from the box to each picture (1-8).

headache sore throat back ache broken arm  
stomach ache cold fever dizzy



- |   |                  |   |       |
|---|------------------|---|-------|
| 1 | <u>back ache</u> | 5 | ..... |
| 2 | .....            | 6 | ..... |
| 3 | .....            | 7 | ..... |
| 4 | .....            | 8 | ..... |



### The world around us

1 Match a word from the box to each picture (1–8).

bush    fence    field    flower    lake    hill    stream    tree



- |   |                         |   |       |
|---|-------------------------|---|-------|
| 1 | ..... <u>hill</u> ..... | 5 | ..... |
| 2 | .....                   | 6 | ..... |
| 3 | .....                   | 7 | ..... |
| 4 | .....                   | 8 | ..... |

2 Complete each sentence using a word from Exercise 1, in singular or plural.

- 1 In the front garden, there are a few small bushes with white flowers.
- 2 We swam from one side of the ..... to the other.
- 3 The dog jumped over the ..... at the end of the garden and ran away.
- 4 Alex got in the window by climbing up the ..... which grew next to the house.
- 5 We could see some cows eating grass in the .....
- 6 The class gave their teacher some ..... on her birthday.
- 7 When Sue reached the top of the ....., she could see a town in the distance.
- 8 The ..... wasn't very wide, and so we jumped across it.

**3 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Go along this road and up the hill / mountain at the end.
- 2 We travelled down the river / stream by boat to the sea.
- 3 Beside the road there were fields / gardens full of animals and plants.
- 4 Helen spent her holiday on a small Greek island / land.
- 5 The boys camped next to a small lake / ocean in Scotland.
- 6 The children enjoyed playing on the beach / seaside.
- 7 Kate stayed in a small village in the country / outside.
- 8 From the ship, Mark could see the distant coast / side of France.

**4 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Sarah spent the summer at / on / to an island.
- 2 There is a castle at / in / above the top of the hill.
- 3 It was cold so I didn't put my feet on / in / to the water.
- 4 At midday, we sat at / below / under a tree and had a picnic.
- 5 Caroline spent a lovely day at / on / in the seaside.
- 6 Would you like to have lunch in / on / next to the garden?
- 7 George and his friends camped in / on / under the beach.
- 8 We decided to have a weekend at / in / with the country.

**5 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

|   |
|---|
| beach    field    forest    hill    island    mountain <b>river</b> sea |
|---|

- 1 We couldn't cross the ....river..... because there wasn't a bridge.
- 2 At the back of the farm was a large ..... with five horses.
- 3 Most fish live in the .....
- 4 Maria climbed the ..... and looked down from the top.
- 5 The hill was covered with a thick ..... of tall trees.
- 6 Tina lived on a small ..... in the middle of the Aegean Sea.
- 7 Our school is on the top of a small .....
- 8 After his swim, Jim rested on the .....

## Transport



**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 The bus to the shops leaves from the *station* / *stop* outside our house.
- 2 Sue got *into* / *onto* her car and drove away.
- 3 Enjoy your *travel* / *trip*! I'll see you next week!
- 4 It's much quicker to go *by* / *on* foot.
- 5 I'd like a *back* / *return* ticket to London, please.
- 6 Jane arrives *home* / *at home* at 4.00.
- 7 What time does the train *leave* / *part*?
- 8 If you don't hurry, we'll *lose* / *miss* the bus.

**2 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 There was a notice at the airport which said, '... to Greece.'  
A Well come      B Well came      C Welcome
- 2 We missed the train so we decided to ..... a bus.  
A go                      B get                      C have
- 3 Jim's ..... to Argentina left at 6.00.  
A fly                      B flight                      C flying
- 4 As the bus left, Helen's friends said, 'Have a good .....'  
A journey              B travel                      C voyage
- 5 Carol ..... to Birmingham on the motorway.  
A ran                      B drove                      C led
- 6 Excuse me. What time does this train ..... London?  
A arrive                      B reach                      C come
- 7 Could you tell me the ..... to the bus station?  
A street                      B path                      C way
- 8 I got on the bus and bought my .....  
A ticket                      B paper                      C cheque
- 9 If you don't have a ticket, you might be .....  
A penalised              B fined                      C refused
- 10 Sarah never travels by plane because she is scared of .....  
A flying                      B flights                      C flight

3 Match the words from the box to the pictures (1–8).

bike boat bus car plane ship taxi train



- |                   |         |
|-------------------|---------|
| 1 ..... bus ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 .....           | 6 ..... |
| 3 .....           | 7 ..... |
| 4 .....           | 8 ..... |

4 Complete each sentence. Use the words from Exercise 3.

- 1 When the ...plane... took off, Tom felt nervous.
- 2 Ann's ..... broke down while she was driving on the motorway.
- 3 Peter enjoyed his voyage across the Atlantic in an old sailing .....
- 4 Tina got off her ..... and pushed it up the hill.
- 5 Carlos saw the sights of London from the top of a double-decker .....
- 6 Helen and Sue hired a ..... and rowed across the lake.
- 7 When the ..... came into the station, Kate was waiting.
- 8 Joe saw a ..... coming down the street. He shouted, and it stopped.

# 16

## VOCABULARY

### Useful things

1 Match a word from the box to each picture (1–8).

|            |            |            |        |              |
|------------|------------|------------|--------|--------------|
| tin opener | calculator | dishwasher | camera | mobile phone |
| DVD player | MP3 player | kettle     |        |              |



- |   |            |   |       |
|---|------------|---|-------|
| 1 | calculator | 5 | ..... |
| 2 | .....      | 6 | ..... |
| 3 | .....      | 7 | ..... |
| 4 | .....      | 8 | ..... |


**2 Choose the most suitable word from the box in Exercise 1.**

- 1 You can use this to watch your favourite films. ....DVD player...
- 2 You can use this to open cans. ....
- 3 You can take interesting photos with this. ....
- 4 You can make calls from this, wherever you are. ....
- 5 You can do the washing-up with this. ....
- 6 This helps you if you have problems with maths. ....
- 7 You can take music with you everywhere with this. ....
- 8 This boils water for you. ....

**3 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 My *pen* / *pencil* is broken. Have you got a sharpener?
- 2 Ann couldn't cut Mary's hair because she didn't have any *knife* / *scissors*.
- 3 We can't get in. The door is *locked* / *closed*, and I haven't got a key.
- 4 When the lights *went out* / *closed*, Jan couldn't see a thing.
- 5 Put the dirty clothes in the *washing* / *wash* machine.
- 6 Dave has got a bad cold and needs some *tissues* / *papers*.
- 7 If you want to draw a straight line, use a *file* / *ruler*.
- 8 There's a *clock* / *watch* on the wall over there.

**4 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Terry put a large  full of apples on the table.  
A envelope                      B saucer                      C bowl
- 2 Jim put some oil into the ..... and cooked the eggs in it.  
A frying pan                      B cooker                      C bowl
- 3 Can you turn on the ..... ? I can't see very well.  
A candle                      B lamp                      C bulb
- 4 Kate filled the ..... with water, and boiled some potatoes.  
A oven                      B kettle                      C saucepan
- 5 Do you want your coffee in a cup or a ..... ?  
A mug                      B plastic                      C jar
- 6 Paul had a cup of coffee in one hand and a ..... of cakes in the other.  
A pan                      B saucer                      C plate

## Other countries

### 1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.

- 1 You usually need a passport / *permission* to go from one country to another.
- 2 Have you ever been to a *stranger* / *foreign* country?
- 3 Europe and Asia are both *countries* / *continents*.
- 4 Have you got a *map* / *plan* of Germany?
- 5 We all enjoy *singing* / *eating* our National Anthem.
- 6 Most people would like to travel *outside* / *abroad*.
- 7 What is your national *meal* / *dish*? Ours is spaghetti!
- 8 I've always wanted to take a *trip* / *travel* to South America.
- 9 The plane *takes off* / *takes on* at midday.
- 10 The Alps and the Himalayas are both mountain *areas* / *ranges*.

### 2 Complete each sentence with *in*, *to* or *at*.

- 1 Have you ever been .....~~to~~..... Turkey?
- 2 What time does our plane arrive ..... Paris?
- 3 I met an old friend ..... Frankfurt Airport.
- 4 Is Milan ..... the south of Italy?
- 5 It's very cold ..... Poland at the moment.
- 6 Cathy has decided to go ..... Spain for a holiday.
- 7 Anna lives ..... Slovenia.
- 8 Tim is studying ..... London University.

### 3 Complete the list.

- 1 I'm italian . . . I come from Italy.
- 2 I'm ..... . I come from Spain.
- 3 I'm ..... . I come from Germany.
- 4 I'm ..... . I come from France.
- 5 I'm ..... . I come from Greece.
- 6 I'm ..... . I come from Brazil.
- 7 I'm ..... . I come from Switzerland.
- 8 I'm ..... . I come from Turkey.
- 9 I'm ..... . I come from Poland.
- 10 I'm ..... . I come from Argentina.

**4 Match the countries (1–8) with the people (a–h).**

- |            |       |                   |
|------------|-------|-------------------|
| 1 Norway   | ..... | a) The Dutch      |
| 2 Hungary  | ..... | b) The Norwegians |
| 3 Mexico   | ..... | c) The Swedes     |
| 4 Holland  | ..... | d) The Scots      |
| 5 Ireland  | ..... | e) The Mexicans   |
| 6 Sweden   | ..... | f) The Hungarians |
| 7 Egypt    | ..... | g) The Irish      |
| 8 Scotland | ..... | h) The Egyptians  |

**5 Test yourself! Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

- 1 A is in Spain.  
A Madrid                      B Manchester                      C Montreal
- 2 ..... is in Egypt.  
A Caracas                      B Cairo                      C Cardiff
- 3 ..... is the Polish capital.  
A Washington                      B Wellington                      C Warsaw
- 4 ..... is an Argentinian city.  
A Berlin                      B Budapest                      C Buenos Aires
- 5 ..... is in Portugal.  
A Liverpool                      B Los Angeles                      C Lisbon
- 6 ..... is the Greek capital.  
A Atlanta                      B Athens                      C Alice Springs
- 7 ..... is in Switzerland.  
A Berne                      B Brasilia                      C Beijing
- 8 ..... is in the United States of America.  
A Santiago                      B Stockholm                      C San Francisco

**6 Put these countries into the correct column according to their stress pattern.**

|        |             |                |         |           |         |
|--------|-------------|----------------|---------|-----------|---------|
| Brazil | Malaysia    | <b>Holland</b> | Japan   | Singapore | Austria |
| Iraq   | New Zealand | Bangladesh     | England | Pakistan  |         |
| Poland | Germany     | Mexico         | Morocco |           |         |

|                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



## In the classroom

**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 I have to *read* / *study* hard because I have a test tomorrow.
- 2 If you don't understand a word, *look it out* / *look it up* in a dictionary.
- 3 Please do the rest of this exercise for *homework* / *housework*.
- 4 Mrs Jackson *learns* / *teaches* us geography.
- 5 At the end of the lesson, put the books back on the *bookshelf* / *library*.
- 6 Paul tried *hard* / *hardly* this year, and made progress.
- 7 Why were you *absent* / *missing* yesterday, Angela?
- 8 Jim *lost* / *failed* the maths test.
- 9 Sue asked the *teacher* / *professor* to explain what the word meant.
- 10 David was asked to read the first paragraph *loud* / *aloud*.
- 11 Please *put up* / *rise up* your hand if you want to answer.
- 12 Anna makes too many *faults* / *mistakes* in her written work.

**2 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Could you tell me what *it* means?  
A does this word mean      B means this word      C this word means
- 2 What's the difference ..... 'say' and 'tell'?  
A between                      B of                              C from
- 3 If you don't know the answer, ..... a guess.  
A do                              B make                          C say
- 4 Please pay ..... to what I am saying.  
A meaning                      B knowledge                  C attention
- 5 If you're not sure, ..... a question.  
A make                          B ask                              C do
- 6 I don't understand. Can you give me a/an ..... ?  
A example                      B sample                        C model
- 7 Please ..... yourself, John.  
A behaving                      B behaviour                      C behave
- 8 I'm sorry, but I don't ..... the question.  
A know                          B understand                      C realise
- 9 Please stop talking and ..... to your teacher.  
A hear                              B attend                          C listen
- 10 Could you ..... that, please?  
A resay                              B repeat                          C retell

**3 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

|          |         |      |           |      |      |
|----------|---------|------|-----------|------|------|
| copy     | explain | fail | have      | make | mean |
| practise | share   | take | underline |      |      |

- 1 We have to .....share..... books because there aren't enough for one each.
- 2 Don't worry if you ..... the exam. You can take it again in December.
- 3 I must remember to ..... this book back to the library today.
- 4 During the exam, Jack tried to ..... Sarah's work.
- 5 Some teachers don't ..... things very clearly.
- 6 What exactly does this word ..... ?
- 7 We didn't ..... a history lesson today, because our teacher was ill.
- 8 It's a good idea to ..... important words with a pencil.
- 9 If you don't ..... a foreign language, you soon forget it.
- 10 I can't ..... up my mind about the answer to this question.

**4 Complete each sentence. Use a word from the box.**

|            |       |           |                   |       |         |
|------------|-------|-----------|-------------------|-------|---------|
| attendance | break | class     | <del>lesson</del> | notes | project |
| subject    | term  | timetable | uniform           |       |         |

- 1 We had an interesting .....lesson..... today about Ancient Egypt.
- 2 At the end of the ..... our teachers write reports about us.
- 3 Please make ..... as you read chapter two.
- 4 This is a very small ..... . There are only eight students.
- 5 Kate's ..... been good. She has only missed one lesson.
- 6 Our ..... has changed, and now we have English on Monday at 11 o'clock.
- 7 The boys usually play football outside when they have a .....
- 8 Chris has to wear a ..... at his new school.
- 9 Physics was Rebecca's favourite ..... when she was at school.
- 10 I went to the library to find some information for my history .....

## Going out



**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 Why don't we *write* / *record* our song on disc?
- 2 Do you want to come *for swimming* / *swimming* tomorrow?
- 3 All the girls in the group are very good *singers* / *songs*.
- 4 Would you *like* / *want* to play basketball?
- 5 George and I are going *to the cinema* / *the cinema* this afternoon.
- 6 Ann loves listening to *classical* / *classic* music.
- 7 The children saw a Mickey Mouse *cartoon* / *comic* at the cinema.
- 8 In the World Cup, Italy *beat* / *won* Germany 2-0.
- 9 Do you want to go *a walk* / *for a walk* this evening?
- 10 Jack *excused* / *made an excuse*, and said he couldn't come to the party.

**2 Make compound words by joining a word from the box to a word (1-10). More than one answer may be possible.**

|                 |       |        |       |      |       |         |       |      |
|-----------------|-------|--------|-------|------|-------|---------|-------|------|
| <del>club</del> | court | course | field | pool | slope | stadium | track | rink |
|-----------------|-------|--------|-------|------|-------|---------|-------|------|

- |    |          |                         |
|----|----------|-------------------------|
| 1  | health   | ..... <u>club</u> ..... |
| 2  | football | .....                   |
| 3  | tennis   | .....                   |
| 4  | running  | .....                   |
| 5  | swimming | .....                   |
| 6  | playing  | .....                   |
| 7  | cycle    | .....                   |
| 8  | golf     | .....                   |
| 9  | skating  | .....                   |
| 10 | ski      | .....                   |

**3 Choose the best place from Exercise 2 for each activity.**

- |    |                       |                                |
|----|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1  | an exercise programme | ..... <u>health club</u> ..... |
| 2  | diving competition    | .....                          |
| 3  | a speed trial         | .....                          |
| 4  | a marathon            | .....                          |
| 5  | school sports         | .....                          |
| 6  | a downhill event      | .....                          |
| 7  | a cup final           | .....                          |
| 8  | ice hockey            | .....                          |
| 9  | a doubles match       | .....                          |
| 10 | a round of 18 holes   | .....                          |

4 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.



Last week I phoned one of my friends. 'Why don't you (1) B. to my house?' he said. 'We can play some computer games, if you (2) ..... .' 'I don't feel (3) ..... doing that,' I said. 'How about (4) ..... fishing?' He wasn't very (5) ..... on the idea, so we decided to (6) ..... to the cinema, although we didn't know what was (7) ..... . When we (8) ..... there, there was a science fiction film on, and so we (9) ..... our minds. We can't (10) ..... that kind of film.

- |                |              |              |           |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1 A turn up    | B come round | C cross over | D go past |
| 2 A know       | B can        | C do         | D like    |
| 3 A for        | B I'm        | C like       | D well    |
| 4 A the        | B going      | C a          | D it      |
| 5 A interested | B much       | C keen       | D liking  |
| 6 A go         | B pass       | C see        | D try     |
| 7 A on         | B it         | C there      | D playing |
| 8 A reached    | B were       | C saw        | D got     |
| 9 A discussed  | B changed    | C made       | D found   |
| 10 A like      | B hate       | C stand      | D admire  |

### Shopping around

**1 Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

- 1 I think these trousers are the wrong size / number for me.
- 2 Helen wants to buy / take some new shoes.
- 3 Thank you very much. This is your recipe / receipt.
- 4 I'd like to buy this coat, but it costs a lot of money / cash.
- 5 I saw some red shoes in the window. Can I try / have them on?
- 6 I'm sorry, but the shop closes / ends in five minutes.
- 7 Could I have a small white bread / loaf, please?
- 8 Please name / sign on this line.
- 9 Could you put these things in a bag / sack, please?
- 10 Excuse me, could you tell me how much this costs / prices?

**2 Choose the best reply (a–j) for each sentence (1–10).**

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 Can I help you?           | a) Yes, the changing room is over there. |
| 2 Have you got size 7?      | b) At 5.30 today.                        |
| 3 How much is this?         | c) Try this larger one.                  |
| 4 Can I try this on?        | d) It doesn't go with your coat.         |
| 5 Do you take credit cards? | e) I'm afraid we don't have any left.    |
| 6 This one doesn't fit.     | f) No, I've spent every penny I had!     |
| 7 Have you got any money?   | g) Did you buy it here?                  |
| 8 Do you like this red one? | h) No thanks, I'm just looking.          |
| 9 Can I return this?        | i) Sorry, only cash or cheques.          |
| 10 What time do you close?  | j) It's € 8.                             |

**3 Answer the questions with a suitable word or phrase from the box.**

|                |                    |                       |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| At the baker's | At the grocer's    | At the travel agent's | At the newsagent's |
| At the café    | At the post office | At the chemist's      | At the butcher's   |

- 1 Where do you buy a newspaper? ..... At the newsagent's .....
- 2 Where do you post a parcel? .....
- 3 Where do you buy medicine? .....
- 4 Where do you buy meat? .....
- 5 Where do you buy bananas? .....
- 6 Where do you book a holiday? .....
- 7 Where do you buy a cake? .....
- 8 Where do you have a coffee? .....

**4 Choose the most suitable word or phrase for each space.**

- 1 Why don't we get a A of mineral water?  
A bottle                      B jar                      C bag
- 2 Why don't we buy Julia a ..... of flowers?  
A bunch                      B pile                      C crowd
- 3 I need a ..... of toothpaste.  
A box                      B packet                      C tube
- 4 Don't forget to buy Wendy a ..... of chocolate.  
A lump                      B bar                      C cube
- 5 I'd like ..... cheese, please.  
A a kilo of                      B half kilo                      C half kilo of
- 6 Could you buy me two ..... of biscuits?  
A packets                      B parcels                      C containers
- 7 I've decided to buy a new ..... of shoes.  
A couple                      B pair                      C double
- 8 We need a ..... of matches.  
A bag                      B box                      C bunch

**5 Choose the most suitable word for each space.**

Nowadays lots of people drive to large supermarkets to (1) D their shopping. These supermarkets have (2) B, so you can buy several (3) C of shopping. You can fill your (4) A, and then push it to your car. Some people prefer to use (5) D shops. These small shops are usually more (6) A than supermarkets. Some towns have an open air (7) C in the centre, where you can buy (8) B fruit and (9) D, but you have to (10) B your shopping home.

- |             |             |              |             |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 A make    | B take      | C have       | D do        |
| 2 A cars    | B car parks | C places     | D roads     |
| 3 A bags    | B shops     | C customers  | D bargains  |
| 4 A pocket  | B bag       | C trolley    | D wallet    |
| 5 A sale    | B local     | C centre     | D various   |
| 6 A cheaper | B often     | C parking    | D expensive |
| 7 A place   | B sale      | C square     | D market    |
| 8 A cheap   | B the       | C there      | D a         |
| 9 A fishes  | B meats     | C vegetables | D green     |
| 10 A walk   | B carry     | C manage     | D with      |



## FORMATION RULES

### 1 Tenses

#### Present simple

|           |                    |                  |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------|
| positive: | I/you/we/they like | he/she/it likes  |
| negative: | you don't like     | he doesn't like  |
| question: | Do you like...?    | Does he like...? |

#### Present continuous

|           |                                     |                        |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| positive: | I am going.<br>He/she/it is going.  | You/we/they are going. |
| negative: | I am not going.<br>She isn't going. | You aren't going.      |
| question: | Am I going?<br>Is she going?        | Are you going?         |

#### Present perfect

|           |                          |                     |
|-----------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| positive: | I/you/we/they have left. | He/she/it has left. |
| negative: | They haven't left.       | He hasn't left.     |
| question: | Have they left?          | Has he left?        |

#### Past simple

##### 1 Regular

|           |                                  |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| positive: | I/you/he/she/it/we/they started. |
| negative: | You didn't start.                |
| question: | Did you start?                   |

##### 2 Irregular

|           |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| positive: | I/you/he/she/it/we/they went. |
| negative: | You didn't go.                |
| question: | Did you go?                   |

#### Past continuous

|           |                        |                         |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| positive: | I/he/she/it was going. | You/we/they were going. |
| negative: | You weren't going.     | She wasn't going.       |
| question: | Were you going?        | Was she going?          |

## 2 Reported Speech

### Direct

'I always drink milk.'

'I'm leaving.'

'I'll be back soon.'

'I've forgotten it.'

'I took it.'

'I was reading.'

### Reported

He said (that) he always drank milk.

She said (that) she was leaving.

He said (that) he would be back soon.

She said (that) she had forgotten it.

He said (that) he had taken it.

She said (that) she had been reading.

## 3 Passive Tenses

### Active

He helps.

He has helped.

He helped.

He will help.

### Passive

He is helped.

He has been helped.

He was helped.

He will be helped.





## IRREGULAR VERBS

### Infinitive

be  
beat  
become  
begin  
bite  
blow  
break  
bring  
build  
burn  
buy  
catch  
choose  
come  
cost  
cut  
dig  
do  
draw  
dream  
drink  
drive  
eat  
fall  
feel  
fight  
find  
fly  
forgive  
get  
give  
go  
grow  
have  
hear  
hide  
hit  
hold  
hurt  
keep  
know

### Past simple

was/were  
beat  
became  
began  
bit  
blew  
broke  
brought  
built  
burnt/burned  
bought  
caught  
chose  
came  
cost  
cut  
dug  
did  
drew  
dreamt/dreamed  
drank  
drove  
ate  
fell  
felt  
fought  
found  
flew  
forgave  
got  
gave  
went  
grew  
had  
heard  
hid  
hit  
held  
hurt  
kept  
knew

### Past participle

been  
beaten  
become  
begun  
bitten  
blown  
broken  
brought  
built  
burnt/burned  
bought  
caught  
chosen  
come  
cost  
cut  
dug  
done  
drawn  
dreamt/dreamed  
drunk  
driven  
eaten  
fallen  
felt  
fought  
found  
flown  
forgiven  
got  
given  
gone  
grown  
had  
heard  
hidden  
hit  
held  
hurt  
kept  
known

**Infinitive**

lay  
lead  
learn  
leave  
lend  
let  
lie  
light  
lose  
make  
mean  
meet  
pay  
put  
read  
ride  
ring  
rise  
run  
say  
see  
sell  
send  
shoot  
shut  
sing  
sit  
sleep  
speak  
spell  
spend  
stand  
steal  
swim  
take  
teach  
tell  
think  
throw  
understand  
wake  
wear  
win  
write

**Past simple**

laid  
led  
learnt/learned  
left  
lent  
let  
lay  
lit  
lost  
made  
meant  
met  
paid  
put  
read  
rode  
rang  
rose  
ran  
said  
saw  
sold  
sent  
shot  
shut  
sang  
sat  
slept  
spoke  
spelled/spelt  
spent  
stood  
stole  
swam  
took  
taught  
told  
thought  
threw  
understood  
woke  
wore  
won  
wrote

**Past participle**

laid  
led  
learnt/learned  
left  
lent  
let  
lain  
lit  
lost  
made  
meant  
met  
paid  
put  
read  
ridden  
rung  
risen  
run  
said  
seen  
sold  
sent  
shot  
shut  
sung  
sat  
slept  
spoken  
spelled/spelt  
spent  
stood  
stolen  
swum  
taken  
taught  
told  
thought  
thrown  
understood  
woken  
worn  
won  
written



## WORDLIST

### Grammar 1

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| bag       | bæg          |
| bike      | baɪk         |
| cinema    | ˈsɪnəmə      |
| cold      | kəʊld        |
| dentist   | ˈdentɪst     |
| difficult | ˈdɪfɪk(ə)l   |
| easy      | ˈi:zi        |
| family    | ˈfæm(ə)li    |
| garden    | ˈgɑ:d(ə)n    |
| happy     | ˈhæpi        |
| home      | həʊm         |
| house     | haʊs         |
| ill       | ɪl           |
| late      | leɪt         |
| parent    | ˈpeərənt     |
| pen       | pen          |
| right     | raɪt         |
| street    | stri:t       |
| student   | ˈstju:d(ə)nt |
| teacher   | ˈti:tʃə      |

### Grammar 2

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| always    | ˈɔ:lweɪz  |
| arrive    | əˈraɪv    |
| chocolate | ˈtʃɒklət  |
| city      | ˈsɪti     |
| clean (v) | kli:n     |
| evening   | ˈi:vnɪŋ   |
| finish    | ˈfɪnɪʃ    |
| get up    | ˌget ˈʌp  |
| go        | gəʊ       |
| have      | hæv       |
| leave     | li:v      |
| like      | laɪk      |
| live (v)  | lɪv       |
| miss      | mɪs       |
| never     | ˈnevə     |
| often     | ˈɒf(ə)n   |
| play      | pleɪ      |
| relax     | rɪˈlæks   |
| rise      | raɪz      |
| snow (v)  | snəʊ      |
| sometimes | ˈsʌmtaɪmz |
| speak     | spi:k     |

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| start     | stɑ:t     |
| take      | teɪk      |
| teach     | ti:tʃ     |
| usually   | ˈju:ʒʊəli |
| walk      | wɔ:k      |
| wash      | wɒʃ       |
| watch (v) | wɒtʃ      |
| wear      | weə       |

### Grammar 3

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| drink          | drɪŋk            |
| ride           | raɪd             |
| orange         | ˈɒrɪndʒ          |
| face           | feɪs             |
| fruit          | fru:t            |
| lunch          | lʌntʃ            |
| eat            | i:t              |
| tennis         | ˈtenɪs           |
| school uniform | sku:l ˈju:nɪfɔ:m |
| basketball     | ˈbɑ:skɪt bɔ:l    |

### Grammar 4

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| baby          | ˈbeɪbi          |
| come          | kʌm             |
| computer game | kəmˈpjʊ:tə geɪm |
| cry           | kraɪ            |
| cut           | kʌt             |
| decide        | dɪˈsaɪd         |
| die           | daɪ             |
| lie (v)       | laɪ             |
| listen        | ˈlɪs(ə)n        |
| make          | meɪk            |
| move (v)      | mu:v            |
| rain (v)      | reɪn            |
| read          | ri:d            |
| sing          | sɪŋ             |
| sit           | sɪt             |
| stay          | steɪ            |
| study         | ˈstʌdi          |
| swim          | swɪm            |
| terrible      | ˈterəb(ə)l      |
| tie (v)       | taɪ             |
| wait          | weɪt            |
| write         | raɪt            |

**Grammar 5**

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| at the moment | æt ðə 'məʊmənt |
| beach         | bi:tʃ          |
| enjoy         | ɪn'dʒɔɪ        |
| fly (v)       | flaɪ           |
| a good time   | eɪ ɡʊd taɪm    |
| news          | nju:z          |
| noise         | nɔɪz           |
| place         | pleɪs          |
| right         | raɪt           |
| sandwich      | 'sæn(d)wɪdʒ    |
| turn off      | tɜ:n ɒf        |

**Grammar 6**

|             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| answer (n)  | 'ɑ:nsə      |
| bathroom    | 'bɑ:θ,ru:m  |
| believe     | bɪ'li:v     |
| busy        | 'bɪzi       |
| cost (v)    | kɒst        |
| fantastic   | fæn'tæstɪk  |
| ghost       | ɡəʊst       |
| great       | ɡreɪt       |
| hair        | heə         |
| interesting | 'ɪntrəstɪŋ  |
| know        | nəʊ         |
| maths       | mæθs        |
| outside     | ,aʊt'saɪd   |
| problem     | 'prɒbləm    |
| quiet       | 'kwaɪət     |
| road        | rəʊd        |
| someone     | 'sʌmwʌn     |
| station     | 'steɪʃ(ə)n  |
| story       | 'stɔ:ri     |
| think       | θɪŋk        |
| understand  | ,ʌndə'stænd |
| wrong       | rɒŋ         |

**Checkpoint 1**

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| attention | ə'tenʃ(ə)n    |
| beer      | bɪə           |
| begin     | bɪ'ɡɪn        |
| board     | bɔ:d          |
| centre    | 'sentə        |
| coat      | kəʊt          |
| desk      | desk          |
| every     | 'evri         |
| excuse me | ɪk'skju:s mi: |
| hard      | hɑ:d          |
| hate      | heɪt          |
| hotel     | həʊ'tel       |

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| in fact       | ɪn fækt        |
| know the way  | nəʊ ðə weɪ     |
| motorbike     | 'məʊtə,bɑɪk    |
| museum        | mju:'zi:əm     |
| pay attention | peɪ ə'tenʃ(ə)n |
| umbrella      | ʌm'brelə       |

**Grammar 7**

|           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| admit     | əd'mɪt     |
| bedtime   | 'bed,taɪm  |
| call      | kɔ:l       |
| carefully | 'keəf(ə)li |
| castle    | 'kɑ:s(ə)l  |
| dress     | dres       |
| fit       | fit        |
| marry     | 'mæri      |
| old       | əʊld       |
| party     | 'pɑ:ti     |
| phone (v) | fəʊn       |
| remember  | rɪ'membə   |
| visit     | 'vɪzɪt     |
| work (v)  | wɜ:k       |

**Grammar 8**

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| early      | 'ɜ:li     |
| invite     | ɪn'vaɪt   |
| learn      | lɜ:n      |
| letter     | 'letə     |
| phone call | fəʊn kɔ:l |
| shoe       | ʃu:       |
| shop       | ʃɒp       |
| yesterday  | 'jestədeɪ |

**Grammar 9**

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| bird        | bɜ:d         |
| bring       | briŋ         |
| clothes     | kləʊðz       |
| feel        | fi:l         |
| get         | ɡet          |
| go shopping | ɡəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ   |
| living room | 'lɪvɪŋ ru:m  |
| meet        | mi:t         |
| newspaper   | 'nju:z,peɪpə |
| nightclub   | 'naɪt,klʌb   |
| plate       | pleɪt        |
| pullover    | 'pʊləʊvə     |
| quickly     | 'kwɪkli      |
| run         | rʌn          |
| send        | send         |
| stand       | stænd        |

suddenly 'sʌd(ə)nli  
tell the time tel ðə taɪm

**Grammar 10**

breakfast 'brekfəst  
cake keɪk  
coat kəʊt  
country 'kʌntri  
fast fɑːst  
flower 'flaʊə  
hall hɔːl  
hat hæt  
mistake mɪ'steɪk  
money 'mʌni  
page peɪdʒ  
present (n) 'prez(ə)nt  
prize praɪz  
raincoat 'reɪn,kəʊt  
university juːm'vɜːsəti

**Grammar 11**

open (adj) 'əʊpən  
match (n) mætʃ  
warm wɔːm

**Grammar 12**

dinner 'dɪnə  
draw drɔː  
restaurant 'rest(ə)rɒnt

**Checkpoint 2**

airport 'eə,pɔːt  
bus-stop bʌs stɒp  
catch kætʃ  
door dɔː  
find faɪnd  
floor flɔː  
forget fə'get  
jeans dʒiːnz  
medicine 'med(ə)s(ə)n  
police pə'liːs  
stand up stænd ʌp  
summer 'sʌmə  
win wɪn  
window 'wɪndəʊ

**Grammar 13**

accident 'æksɪd(ə)nt  
break breɪk  
dig dɪg  
drive draɪv  
happen 'hæpən  
idea aɪ'diə  
notice 'nəʊtɪs  
past pɑːst  
turn on tɜːn ɒn  
wave weɪv

**Grammar 14**

afraid of ə'freɪd ɒv  
captain 'kæptɪn  
folk music fəʊk 'mjuːzɪk  
glasses 'glɑːsɪz  
jazz music dʒæz 'mjuːzɪk  
mobile phone 'məʊbaɪl fəʊn  
next door to nekst dɔː tuː  
short ʃɔːt  
tall tə:l  
team tiːm  
train (v) treɪn  
use juːz  
young jʌŋ

**Grammar 15**

awful 'ɔːf(ə)l  
copy (v) 'kɒpi  
dictionary 'dɪkʃən(ə)ri  
different 'dɪfrənt  
flat flæt  
hairdrier 'heə,draɪə  
lose luːz  
travel agent 'træv(ə)l 'eɪdʒ(ə)nt

**Grammar 16**

book (v) buk  
borrow 'bɒrəʊ  
choose tʃuːz  
dangerous 'deɪndʒərəs  
guide book gaɪd buk  
key kiː  
receive rɪ'siːv  
sightseeing 'saɪt,siːɪŋ  
suitcase 'suːt,keɪs  
ticket 'tɪkɪt  
timetable 'taɪm,teɪb(ə)l  
windsurfing 'wɪn(d),sɜːfɪŋ

**Grammar 17**

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| centre   | 'sentə   |
| famous   | 'feɪməs  |
| foot     | fʊt      |
| hurry up | 'hʌri ʌp |
| hurt     | hɜ:t     |
| score    | skɔ:     |
| sorry    | 'sɔ:ri   |
| wallet   | 'wɒlɪt   |

**Grammar 18**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| ago     | ə'gəʊ    |
| already | ɔ:l'redi |
| bite    | baɪt     |
| ever    | 'evə     |
| for     | fɔ:      |
| insect  | 'ɪnsɛkt  |
| just    | dʒʌst    |
| lion    | 'laɪən   |
| since   | sɪns     |
| town    | taʊn     |
| yet     | jet      |

**Checkpoint 3**

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| company         | 'kʌmp(ə)ni      |
| expensive       | ɪk'spensɪv      |
| hungry          | 'hʌŋɡri         |
| light (n)       | laɪt            |
| mountain        | 'maʊntɪn        |
| project         | 'prɒdʒekt       |
| room            | ru:m            |
| stair           | steə            |
| storm           | stɔ:m           |
| take a photo    | teɪk eɪ 'fəʊtəʊ |
| washing machine | 'wɒʃɪŋ mə'ʃi:n  |
| watch (n)       | wɒtʃ            |

**Grammar 19**

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| cook     | kʊk       |
| forecast | 'fɔ:kɑ:st |
| hit      | hɪt       |
| intend   | ɪn'tend   |
| market   | 'mɑ:kɪt   |
| married  | 'mæriɪd   |
| plan     | plæn      |
| village  | 'vɪlɪdʒ   |

**Grammar 20**

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| back         | bæk            |
| choose       | tʃu:z          |
| expect       | ɪk'spekt       |
| pass an exam | pɑ:s ən ɪg'zæm |
| perhaps      | pə'hæps        |
| probably     | 'prɒbəbli      |

**Grammar 21**

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| later   | 'leɪtə  |
| mine    | maɪn    |
| promise | 'prɒmɪs |

**Grammar 22**

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| dark     | dɑ:k     |
| dirty    | 'dɜ:ti   |
| relative | 'relətɪv |
| tired    | 'taɪəd   |
| world    | wɜ:ld    |
| weather  | 'weðə    |

**Grammar 23**

|             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| hairdresser | 'heə,dresə |
| meeting     | 'mi:tɪŋ    |

**Grammar 24**

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| after       | 'ɑ:ftə       |
| arrangement | ə'reɪndʒmənt |
| entrance    | 'entrəns     |
| free        | fri:         |
| front       | frʌnt        |
| library     | 'laɪbrəri    |
| moon        | mu:n         |
| soon        | su:n         |

**Checkpoint 4**

|            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| definitely | 'def(ə)nətli |
| heavy      | 'hevi        |
| hospital   | 'hɒspɪt(ə)l  |
| long       | lɒŋ          |
| worry      | 'wʌri        |

**Grammar 25**

|           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| all right | ɔ:l raɪt |
| fishing   | 'fɪʃɪŋ   |

**Grammar 26**

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| ancient       | 'eɪnʃ(ə)nt     |
| archaeologist | ˌɑ:kɪ'blɒdʒɪst |

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| bar            | bɑ:              |
| bridge         | brɪdʒ            |
| cancel         | 'kæns(ə)l        |
| coin           | kɔɪn             |
| deliver        | dɪ'livə          |
| discover       | dɪ'skʌvə         |
| fact           | fækt             |
| hold a meeting | həʊld eɪ 'mi:tiŋ |
| injured        | 'ɪndʒəd          |
| mouse          | maʊs             |
| pet            | pet              |
| planet         | 'plænɪt          |
| plant (v)      | plɑ:nt           |
| play (n)       | pleɪ             |
| safe           | seɪf             |

**Grammar 27**

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| alien       | 'eɪliən      |
| cut down    | kʌt daʊn     |
| galaxy      | 'gæləksi     |
| kidnap      | 'kɪdnæp      |
| mask        | mɑ:sk        |
| millionaire | ,mɪljə'neə   |
| pollution   | pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n  |
| robber      | 'rɒbə        |
| screwdriver | 'skru:drɑɪvə |
| special     | 'speʃ(ə)l    |
| tomb        | tu:m         |

**Grammar 28**

|             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| bored       | bɔ:d      |
| close (v)   | kləʊz     |
| come back   | kʌm bæk   |
| disco       | 'dɪskəʊ   |
| go away     | gəʊ ə'weɪ |
| press (v)   | pres      |
| pull        | pʊl       |
| run away    | rʌn ə'weɪ |
| turn (v)    | tɜ:n      |
| straight on | streɪt ɒn |
| stop        | stɒp      |

**Grammar 29**

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| allow     | ə'laʊ       |
| collect   | kə'lekt     |
| excellent | 'eksələnt   |
| forbidden | fə'bɪd(ə)n  |
| fun       | fʌn         |
| healthy   | 'helθi      |
| necessary | 'nesəs(ə)ri |

|           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| night     | naɪt    |
| park (n)  | pɑ:k    |
| rude      | ru:d    |
| sailing   | 'seɪlɪŋ |
| stamp (v) | stæmp   |

**Grammar 30**

|          |      |
|----------|------|
| lift (v) | lɪft |
| oar      | ɔ:   |
| sail (n) | seɪl |

**Checkpoint 5**

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| bother (v)   | 'bɒðə       |
| cheese       | tʃi:z       |
| fingerprint  | 'fɪŋgəprɪnt |
| gun          | gʌn         |
| photographer | fə'tɒgrəfə  |
| publish      | 'pʌblɪʃ     |
| waste (v)    | weɪst       |

**Grammar 31**

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| angry    | 'æŋgri   |
| burn     | bɜ:n     |
| button   | 'bʌt(ə)n |
| cold (n) | kəʊld    |
| improve  | ɪm'pru:v |
| practise | 'præktɪs |
| rest     | rest     |
| suggest  | sə'dʒest |
| touch    | tʌtʃ     |
| wet      | wet      |

**Grammar 32**

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| astronaut   | 'æstrə,nɔ:t  |
| fall asleep | fɔ:l ə'sli:p |
| helicopter  | 'helɪ,kɒptə  |
| land (v)    | lænd         |
| rob         | rɒb          |
| snake       | sneɪk        |
| toothache   | 'tu:θeɪk     |

**Grammar 33**

|            |          |
|------------|----------|
| amazing    | ə'meɪzɪŋ |
| cool       | ku:l     |
| drop (v)   | drɒp     |
| enormous   | ɪ'nɔ:məs |
| escape (v) | ɪ'skeɪp  |
| fat        | fæt      |
| gym        | dʒɪm     |
| improve    | ɪm'pru:v |

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| juice   | dʒu:s    |
| pleased | pli:zd   |
| railway | 'reɪlweɪ |
| sick    | sɪk      |
| sky     | skɑɪ     |

**Grammar 34**

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| food          | fu:d           |
| milk          | mɪlk           |
| pay           | peɪ            |
| post a letter | pəʊst eɪ 'letə |

**Grammar 35**

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| job      | dʒɒb       |
| laugh    | lɑ:f       |
| manager  | 'mænɪdʒə   |
| overcoat | 'əʊvə,kəʊt |

**Grammar 36**

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| bread           | bred                 |
| careful         | 'keəf(ə)l            |
| classical music | 'klæsɪk(ə)l 'mju:zɪk |
| complain        | kəm'pleɪn            |
| fun             | fʌn                  |
| lost            | lɒst                 |

**Checkpoint 6**

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| actually         | 'æktʃʊəli            |
| advise           | əd'vaɪz              |
| desert island    | ,dezət 'aɪlənd       |
| imagine          | ɪ'mædʒɪn             |
| pencil sharpener | 'pens(ə)l 'ʃɑ:p(ə)nə |
| rich             | rɪtʃ                 |
| sunbathing       | 'sʌn,betɪŋ           |

**Grammar 37**

|            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| impossible | ɪm'pɒsəb(ə)l |
| smile      | smaɪl        |

**Grammar 38**

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| advice     | əd'vaɪs   |
| change (v) | tʃeɪndʒ   |
| check      | tʃek      |
| opinion    | ə'pɪnjən  |
| passport   | 'pɑ:spɔ:t |

**Grammar 39**

|           |       |
|-----------|-------|
| fit (adj) | fɪt   |
| fizzy     | 'fɪzi |

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| shout | ʃaʊt  |
| sweet | swi:t |

**Grammar 40**

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| fire        | 'faɪə         |
| instruction | ɪn'strʌkʃ(ə)n |
| light (v)   | laɪt          |
| luck        | lʌk           |
| match (n)   | mætʃ          |
| plane       | pleɪn         |

**Grammar 41**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| kitchen | 'kɪtʃən  |
| serious | 'sɪəriəs |

**Grammar 42**

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| concentrate   | 'kɒns(ə)n,treɪt |
| identity card | aɪ'dentɪti kɑ:d |
| manage        | 'mænɪdʒ         |
| permission    | pə'mɪʃ(ə)n      |
| piano         | pi'ænəʊ         |
| repair        | rɪ'peə          |
| suit          | su:t            |
| tie (n)       | taɪ             |

**Checkpoint 7**

|               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| away          | ə'weɪ        |
| bill          | bɪl          |
| parking       | 'pɑ:kɪŋ      |
| ring          | rɪŋ          |
| search        | sɜ:tʃ        |
| shorts        | ʃɔ:ts        |
| succeed       | sək'si:d     |
| swimming pool | 'swɪmɪŋ pu:l |

**Grammar 43**

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| ache (v)  | eɪk       |
| autumn    | 'ɔ:təm    |
| bookshelf | 'bʊk,ʃelf |
| dish      | dɪʃ       |
| donkey    | 'dɒŋki    |
| feed      | fi:d      |
| knife     | naɪf      |
| leaf      | li:f      |
| life      | laɪf      |
| mouse     | maʊs      |
| potato    | pə'tetəʊ  |
| sheep     | ʃi:p      |
| thief     | θi:f      |
| tomato    | tə'mɑ:təʊ |



**Grammar 44**

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| information | ˌɪnfə'meɪʃ(ə)n |
| left (adj)  | left           |
| owe         | əʊ             |
| scissors    | 'sɪzəz         |

**Grammar 45**

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| box       | bɒks        |
| chicken   | 'tʃɪkɪn     |
| dry       | draɪ        |
| friendly  | 'frend(ɪ)li |
| furniture | 'fɜːnɪtʃə   |
| iron      | 'aɪən       |
| luggage   | 'lʌɡɪdʒ     |
| paper     | 'peɪpə      |
| rice      | raɪs        |
| stamp (n) | stæmp       |
| wood      | wʊd         |

**Grammar 46**

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| people    | 'pi:p(ə)l |
| fridge    | fɪdʒ      |
| brush (v) | brʌʃ      |
| seat      | si:t      |

**Grammar 47**

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| bit          | bɪt          |
| crowded      | 'kraʊdɪd     |
| disgusting   | dɪs'gʌstɪŋ   |
| lucky        | 'lʌki        |
| pepper       | 'pepə        |
| room (space) | ru:m         |
| salt         | sɔ:lt        |
| sleep (n)    | slɪ:p        |
| traffic jam  | 'træfɪk dʒæm |
| wardrobe     | 'wɔ:drəʊb    |

**Grammar 48**

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| hundred  | 'hʌndrəd   |
| million  | 'mɪljən    |
| thousand | 'θaʊz(ə)nd |

**Checkpoint 8**

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| afford      | ə'fɔ:d        |
| exactly     | ɪg'zæk(t)li   |
| lend        | lend          |
| lonely      | 'ləʊnli       |
| meal        | mi:l          |
| opportunity | ˌɒpə'tju:nəti |

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| run out of | rʌn aʊt əv |
| short of   | ʃɔ:t əv    |

**Grammar 49**

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| armchair   | 'ɑ:m,tʃeə     |
| bang       | bæŋ           |
| battery    | 'bæt(ə)ri     |
| corridor   | 'kɒrɪdɔ:      |
| cottage    | 'kɒtɪdʒ       |
| cupboard   | 'kʌbəd        |
| lift (n)   | lɪft          |
| neighbour  | 'neɪbə        |
| operation  | ˌɒpə'reɪʃ(ə)n |
| roundabout | 'raʊndə,baut  |

**Grammar 50**

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| behind      | bɪ'haɪnd      |
| comfortable | 'kʌmfətəb(ə)l |
| empty       | 'empti        |
| heavily     | 'hevɪli       |
| in front of | ɪn frʌnt əv   |
| message     | 'mesɪdʒ       |
| next to     | nekst tu:     |
| opposite    | 'ɒpəzɪt       |
| parcel      | 'pɑ:s(ə)l     |
| push        | pʊʃ           |

**Grammar 51**

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| engineer   | ˌendʒɪ'nɪə  |
| genius     | 'dʒi:nɪəs   |
| government | 'gʌvənmənt  |
| guitar     | gɪ'tɑ:      |
| idiot      | 'ɪdiət      |
| matter     | 'mætə       |
| poor       | pɔ:         |
| quartet    | kwɔ:'tet    |
| telescope  | 'telɪ,skəʊp |
| violin     | ˌvaɪə'lɪn   |

**Grammar 52**

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| leather | 'leðə     |
| plastic | 'plæstɪk  |
| prison  | 'prɪz(ə)n |
| smoking | 'sməʊkɪŋ  |
| steal   | sti:l     |

**Grammar 53**

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| biscuit | 'bɪskɪt |
| end (n) | end     |

|                     |             |
|---------------------|-------------|
| favourite           | 'feiv(ə)rət |
| lift (n) (in a car) | lɪft        |
| loaf                | ləʊf        |
| trousers            | 'traʊzəz    |
| turn (n)            | tɜ:n        |

**Grammar 54**

|           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| clap (v)  | klæp    |
| joke (n)  | dʒəʊk   |
| knock (v) | nɒk     |
| unhappy   | ʌn'hæpi |

**Checkpoint 9**

|        |         |
|--------|---------|
| bear   | bɛə     |
| collar | 'kɒlə   |
| island | 'aɪlənd |
| peace  | pi:s    |
| queue  | kju:    |
| round  | raʊnd   |

**Grammar 55**

|      |      |
|------|------|
| boat | bəʊt |
|------|------|

**Grammar 56**

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| damaged      | 'dæmɪdʒ       |
| glove        | glʌv          |
| handle       | 'hænd(ə)l     |
| race (n)     | reɪs          |
| railway line | 'reɪlweɪ laɪn |
| soft         | sɒft          |
| sound (v)    | saʊnd         |
| tasty        | 'teɪsti       |
| wheel        | wi:l          |

**Grammar 57**

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| taste | teɪst |
|-------|-------|

**Grammar 58**

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| amazed        | ə'meɪzd       |
| amused        | ə'mju:zd      |
| amusing       | ə'mju:zɪŋ     |
| boring        | 'bɔ:ɪŋ        |
| carpet        | 'kɑ:pɪt       |
| confused      | kən'fju:zd    |
| confusing     | kən'fju:zɪŋ   |
| disappointed  | ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd |
| disappointing | ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ |
| excited       | ɪk'saɪtɪd     |
| exciting      | ɪk'saɪtɪŋ     |
| fascinated    | 'fæsmeɪtɪd    |

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| fascinating     | 'fæsmeɪtɪŋ        |
| interested      | 'ɪntrəstɪd        |
| puppy           | 'pʌpi             |
| science fiction | 'saɪəns 'fɪkʃ(ə)n |
| shocked         | ʃɒkt              |
| shocking        | 'ʃɒkɪŋ            |
| tiring          | 'taɪəɪŋ           |
| wooden          | 'wʊd(ə)n          |
| worried         | 'wʌrɪd            |
| worrying        | 'wʌrɪŋ            |

**Grammar 59**

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| cheap       | tʃi:p           |
| elder       | 'eldə           |
| population  | ˌpɒpjʊ'leɪʃ(ə)n |
| rainy       | 'reɪni          |
| temperature | 'tempərɪtʃə     |

**Grammar 60**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| funny   | 'fʌni    |
| nasty   | 'nɑ:sti  |
| strange | streɪndʒ |

**Checkpoint 10**

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| couple | 'kʌp(ə)l |
| farm   | fɑ:m     |
| string | strɪŋ    |

**Grammar 61**

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| accurate     | 'ækjʊrət     |
| completely   | kəm'pli:tli  |
| frequently   | 'fri:kwəntli |
| grateful     | 'ɡreɪtɪf(ə)l |
| jewellery    | 'dʒu:əlri    |
| secret (adj) | 'si:kret     |
| sincerely    | sɪn'sɪəli    |
| terrific     | tə'rɪfɪk     |

**Grammar 62**

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| bone        | bəʊn           |
| fashionable | 'fæʃ(ə)nəb(ə)l |
| it's a pity | ɪts eɪ 'pɪti   |
| spider      | 'spaɪdə        |

**Grammar 64**

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| childhood | 'tʃaɪld'hʊd |
| fill in   | fɪl ɪn      |
| form (n)  | fɔ:m        |
| refuse    | rɪ'fju:z    |
| skating   | 'skeɪtɪŋ    |

**Grammar 65**

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| apologize   | ə'pɒlədʒaɪz      |
| calculator  | 'kælkjuˌleɪtə    |
| cross (adj) | kɹɒs             |
| desert      | 'dezət           |
| explanation | ˌɛksplə'neɪʃ(ə)n |
| fancy (v)   | 'fænsi           |
| magic       | 'mædʒɪk          |
| physics     | 'fɪzɪks          |
| wild        | waɪld            |

**Grammar 66**

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| add up    | æd ʌp     |
| ant       | ænt       |
| behaviour | bɪ'heɪvjə |
| factory   | 'fæktəri  |
| fried     | fraɪd     |
| soap      | səʊp      |

**Checkpoint 11**

|        |         |
|--------|---------|
| behave | bɪ'heɪv |
| doubt  | daut    |
| obey   | ə'bei   |

**Grammar 67**

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| agree      | ə'gri:      |
| fault      | fɔ:lt       |
| mess       | mes         |
| never mind | 'nevə maɪnd |
| size       | saɪz        |

**Grammar 68**

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| describe | dɪ'skraɪb |
| fine     | fain      |

**Grammar 69**

|          |        |
|----------|--------|
| carry    | 'kæri  |
| mean (v) | mi:n   |
| mind (v) | maɪnd  |
| pass (v) | pɑ:s   |
| rather   | 'rɑ:ðə |

**Grammar 70**

|           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| let's     | lets      |
| mind out  | maɪnd aʊt |
| watch out | wɒtʃ aʊt  |

**Grammar 72**

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| midday   | ˌmɪd'deɪ  |
| midnight | 'mɪdˌnaɪt |

**Checkpoint 12**

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| go ahead | gəʊ ə'hed |
|----------|-----------|

**Grammar 73**

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| boot  | bu:t    |
| scary | 'skeəri |
| windy | 'wɪndi  |

**Grammar 74**

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| accommodation | əˌkɒmə'deɪʃ(ə)n |
| address       | ə'dres          |
| advertisement | əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt   |
| blood         | blʌd            |
| threaten      | 'θret(ə)n       |

**Grammar 75**

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| foreign | 'fɔrɪn |
| meat    | mi:t   |

**Grammar 76**

|            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| alarm      | ə'lɑ:m       |
| journey    | 'dʒɜ:ni      |
| successful | sək'sesf(ə)l |
| weight     | wert         |

**Grammar 77**

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| look after      | lʊk 'ɑ:ftə      |
| look forward to | lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu: |
| take off        | teɪk ɒf         |
| try on          | traɪ ɒn         |

**Checkpoint 13**

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| climbing | 'klaɪmɪŋ |
|----------|----------|

**Vocabulary 1**

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| beard     | bɪəd        |
| foreigner | 'fɔrɪnə     |
| teenager  | 'ti:n,eɪdʒə |

**Vocabulary 2**

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| brother     | 'brʌðə         |
| daughter    | 'dɔ:tə         |
| grandfather | 'græn(d),fɑ:ðə |
| grandmother | 'græn(d),mʌðə  |
| husband     | 'hʌzbənd       |
| parent      | 'peərənt       |

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| sister  | 'sɪstə |
| son     | sʌn    |
| twin    | twin   |
| wedding | 'wedɪŋ |
| wife    | waɪf   |

**Vocabulary 3**

|             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| photography | fə'tɒgrəfi |
| spare time  | speə taɪm  |

**Vocabulary 4**

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| ceiling  | 'si:lɪŋ    |
| poster   | 'pəʊstə    |
| radiator | 'reɪdɪ,etə |
| shower   | 'ʃaʊə      |

**Vocabulary 5**

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| account        | ə'kaʊnt          |
| baker          | 'beɪkə           |
| butcher        | 'bʊtʃə           |
| greengrocer    | 'grɪ:n,grəʊsə    |
| newsagent      | 'nju:z,eɪdʒ(ə)nt |
| post office    | pəʊst 'ɒfɪs      |
| traffic lights | 'træfɪk laɪt     |

**Vocabulary 6**

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| carpenter   | 'kɑ:pɪntə      |
| electrician | ɪ,lek'trɪʃ(ə)n |
| farmer      | 'fɑ:mə         |
| judge       | dʒʌdʒ          |
| lawyer      | 'lɔ:jə         |
| mechanic    | mɪ'kænik       |
| nurse       | nɜ:s           |
| patient     | 'peɪʃ(ə)nt     |
| perform     | pə'fɔ:(r)m     |
| plumber     | 'plʌmə         |
| scientist   | 'saɪəntɪst     |
| soldier     | 'səʊldʒə       |
| steward     | 'stju:əd       |
| tailor      | 'teɪlə         |
| vet         | vet            |

**Vocabulary 7**

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| blanket | 'blæŋkɪt   |
| cooker  | 'kʊkə      |
| dustbin | 'dʌs(t)bɪn |
| mirror  | 'mɪrə      |
| pillow  | 'pɪləʊ     |

**Vocabulary 8**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| course  | kɔ:s     |
| fork    | fɔ:k     |
| jug     | dʒʌg     |
| oven    | 'ʌv(ə)n  |
| pour    | pɔ:      |
| sausage | 'sɔ:sɪdʒ |
| straw   | strɔ:    |
| suck    | sʌk      |
| tray    | treɪ     |
| waiter  | 'weɪtə   |

**Vocabulary 9**

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| bark       | bɑ:k      |
| hook       | hʊk       |
| hunt       | hʌnt      |
| lay an egg | lei ən eg |
| lizard     | 'lɪzəd    |
| monkey     | 'mʌŋki    |
| net        | net       |
| nut        | nʌt       |
| parrot     | 'pærət    |

**Vocabulary 10**

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| assistant | ə'sɪst(ə)nt |
| bargain   | 'bɑ:gɪn     |
| belt      | belt        |
| costume   | 'kɒstju:m   |
| counter   | 'kaʊntə     |
| customer  | 'kʌstəmə    |
| earring   | 'iəriŋ      |
| label     | 'leɪb(ə)l   |
| shoplift  | 'ʃɒp,lɪft   |
| skirt     | skɜ:t       |
| tracksuit | 'træk,su:t  |
| underwear | 'ʌndə,weə   |

**Vocabulary 11**

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| cloudy   | 'klaʊdi  |
| freezing | 'fri:zɪŋ |
| kite     | kɑɪt     |
| windy    | 'wɪndi   |

**Vocabulary 12**

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| ear    | ɪə     |
| eye    | aɪ     |
| finger | 'fɪŋgə |
| nose   | nəʊz   |
| waist  | weɪst  |

**Vocabulary 13**

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| bleeding     | 'bli:diŋ    |
| crash        | kræʃ        |
| dizzy        | 'dizi       |
| fever        | 'fi:və      |
| give up      | ɡɪv ʌp      |
| sore         | sə:         |
| stomach ache | 'stʌmək eɪk |

**Vocabulary 14**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| bush    | bʊʃ      |
| distant | 'dɪstənt |
| fence   | fens     |
| field   | fi:ld    |
| forest  | 'fɒrɪst  |
| lake    | leɪk     |
| stream  | stri:m   |

**Vocabulary 15**

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| break down    | breɪk daʊn      |
| double-decker | ˌdʌb(ə)l 'dekeɪ |
| hire          | 'haɪə           |
| motorway      | 'məʊtə,weɪ      |
| row (v)       | rəʊ             |
| scared        | skeəd           |

**Vocabulary 16**

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| boil       | bɔɪl          |
| camera     | 'kæm(ə)rə     |
| dishwasher | 'dɪʃ,wɒʃə     |
| kettle     | 'ket(ə)l      |
| sharpener  | 'ʃɑ:p(ə)nə    |
| straight   | streɪt        |
| tin opener | tɪn 'əʊp(ə)nə |

**Vocabulary 17**

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| capital | 'kæpɪt(ə)l |
|---------|------------|

**Vocabulary 18**

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| attendance | ə'tendəns |
| explain    | ɪk'spleɪn |
| fail       | feɪl      |
| guess      | ges       |
| progress   | 'prəʊɡres |
| project    | 'prɒdʒekt |
| share      | ʃeə       |
| subject    | 'sʌbdʒɪkt |
| term       | tɜ:m      |

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| try hard | traɪ hɑ:d  |
| uniform  | 'ju:nɪfɔ:m |

**Vocabulary 19**

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| court   | kɔ:t     |
| pool    | pu:l     |
| stadium | 'stædiəm |
| track   | træk     |

**Vocabulary 20**

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| cash        | kæʃ          |
| chemist     | 'kemɪst      |
| cheque      | tʃek         |
| credit card | 'kredit kɑ:d |
| go with     | ɡəʊ wɪð      |
| several     | 'sev(ə)rəl   |
| toothpaste  | 'tu:θ,peɪst  |



## GRAMMAR INDEX

- A/an* 43, 51
- Ability 37, 42
- Able to* 37
- Adjectives 57, 58, 59, 60
- Adverbs 2, 61
- Advising 67, 38, 39
- After* 24
- Ago* 18
- Agreeing / disagreeing 67
- Already* 18
- Any* 43
- Anyone, anybody, anything* 54
- Apologizing 67
- Apostrophes 73
- Articles
  - a/an, the* 51
  - zero 52
- Asking for information 69
- Be*
  - am, is, are* 1
  - was, were* 11
  - with adjectives and prepositions 66
- Be able to* 37
- Been and gone* 17
- Can* 37, 69
- Can't, cannot* 37, 41
- Certainty 41
- Comparative adjectives 59
- Compound words 77
- Conditional 1 sentences 31, 33
- Conditional 2 sentences 32, 33
- Contractions, *it's, they're, I'm, I've, he's,*  
etc. 30
- Could* 40, 41, 70
- Countable and uncountable nouns 44,  
45, 46, 47
- Dates 71
- Days, months, seasons 71
- Decisions 21
- Descriptions 68
- Direct speech 25
- Directions 68
- Disagreeing / agreeing 67
- Do and make* 64
- Enough*
  - not + adjective + enough* 57
  - (not) enough + noun* 47
- Ever* 18
- Everyone, everybody, everything* 54
- Excuses 68
- Expect* 20
- For* 18, 65, 66
- Frequency adverbs 2
- Functions 67, 68, 69, 70
- Future
  - going to* 19, 22
  - plans / intentions 19
  - predictions 19, 20
  - present continuous 23
  - will* 20, 21, 22
- Gerund (-ing) 4, 5, 23, 29
- Get* 63
- Go (swimming, etc.)* 77
- Going to* 19, 22
- Greetings 68
- Habits 2, 3, 14
- Had to* 40
- Have got* 55, 63
- Have to* 38, 39, 42
- How much/many* 46

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- If I were you* 32, 70
- If sentences* 31, 32, 33
- Imperatives 28, 31
- Impossibility 41
- Inviting 69
- Irregular verbs 9, 10, 15, 16
- It and there* 62
- Its and It's* 73
  
- Just* 18, 59
  
- Later* 24
  
- Make and do* 64
- Making arrangements 21, 24
- Making comparisons 59, 60
- Making offers 69
- May* 41, 69
- Might* 41
- Modals
  - ability/possibility 37
  - obligation 38
  - past 40
  - possibility/certainty 41
  - main points and contrasts 42
- Much and many* 46, 47
- Must* 38, 39, 41, 42
  
- Nationality words 57, 66
- Never* 18
- No one, nobody, nothing, none* 54
- Numbers 48
  
- Object
  - gerund as object 29
  - pronouns 53
  - questions 35
- Obligation 38, 39, 42
- Offering 69
- One, ones* 53
  
- Passive voice 26, 27
- Past continuous 12
  - and past simple 13
- Past perfect 25
- Past simple 7, 8, 9, 10
  - and past continuous 13
  - was, were* 11
- Perhaps* 20
- Permission 69
- Personal pronouns (*I, me, etc.*) 53
- Phrasal verbs 77
- Place and position 49, 50
- Plurals 43, 44, 45
- Possessive
  - adjectives (*my, etc.*) 55
  - apostrophe 56
  - of* 56
  - pronouns (*mine, etc.*) 53
- Possibility 37, 41
- Predictions 19, 20, 22
- Preferences 70
- Prefixes 77
- Prepositions/adverbials
  - after adjectives 66
  - after verbs 77
  - of place and position
  - in, on, at, to, into* 49
  - in front of* 50
  - next to, near* 50
  - opposite, behind* 50
  - out, out of* 50
  - outside, inside* 50
  - of time
  - in, on* 49
  - at* 18, 72
- Present continuous 4, 5
  - and present simple 6
  - future use 23
- Present perfect simple 15, 16
  - and past simple 17
  - and time expressions 18
- Present simple 2, 3
  - and present continuous 6
- Probably* 20

- Promising 21, 22, 70
- Pronouns  
 object pronouns 53  
 possessive pronouns 53  
*someone/body/thing*, etc. 54  
 subject pronouns 53
- Punctuation 73
- Questions  
 subject and object 35  
 tags 36  
*wh-* questions 35  
*yes/no* questions 34
- Refusing 21
- Reminders 70
- Reported speech 25
- Requesting 21, 70
- Short answers 34, 35
- Should* 38, 39, 42
- Since* 18
- Some* 44, 45
- Someone, somebody, something* 54
- Soon* 24
- Spelling 74, 75, 76  
 and pronunciation 74, 75  
 British/American 76  
 gerunds 4
- Subject  
 gerund as subject 29  
*it* and *there* 62  
 pronouns 53  
 questions 35
- Suffixes 77
- Suggesting 70
- Superlative adjectives 60, 66
- Tag questions 36
- Telling the time 72
- There* and *it* 62
- This, that* 53
- Time expressions  
*ago* 18  
*for* 18  
*since* 18  
 with past simple and  
 present perfect simple 18  
 with future 24
- Too* + adjective 57
- Too much, too many* 47
- Uncertainty 41
- Used to* 14
- Verbs  
 followed by gerund (*-ing*) 65  
 followed by infinitive 65  
 followed by prepositions 65
- Warning 31, 33, 70
- Was, were* 11
- Whose* 55
- Will*  
 and *going to* 22  
 contrasts 24  
 in functional language 21  
 predictions 20
- Word formation 77
- Would*  
 in conditionals 32, 33  
 in functional language 69, 70
- Yet* 18



## GRAMMAR ANSWERS

### Grammar starter test

- 1 1 Do you like  
2 are you reading  
3 live  
4 don't  
5 do you usually  
6 Do you know
- 2 1 didn't go  
2 forgot  
3 did you see  
4 left  
5 Did they enjoy  
6 was eating, rang
- 3 1 used  
2 Have  
3 has  
4 has  
5 since  
6 ever
- 4 1 I'll see  
2 is going to have  
3 are you doing  
4 it will snow  
5 I'm going  
6 later
- 5 1 would  
2 were  
3 by  
4 sit  
5 swimming  
6 won't
- 6 1 leave  
2 don't  
3 checked  
4 isn't  
5 sits  
6 don't you
- 7 1 Can  
2 have  
3 must  
4 had
- 5 can't  
6 must
- 8 1 any  
2 many  
3 advice  
4 This is  
5 enough  
6 some
- 9 1 at  
2 to  
3 a  
4 the, the  
5 yours  
6 none
- 10 1 a beautiful old  
2 Whose  
3 belong to  
4 big enough  
5 than  
6 the best
- 11 1 hard  
2 There  
3 have you got  
4 made  
5 going  
6 in
- 12 1 like  
2 were  
3 mind  
4 way  
5 next  
6 rather

### Grammar 1

- 1 1 is  
2 are  
3 is  
4 are  
5 is  
6 are  
7 is  
8 am

- 2 1 *It isn't hot today.*  
2 I'm not at home.  
3 My friends aren't here.  
4 You aren't a teacher.  
5 We aren't at the cinema.  
6 This isn't difficult.  
7 Sam isn't happy.
- 3 1 *Am I late?*  
2 Are you ill?  
3 Are we right?  
4 Is he fifteen?  
5 Is it cold?  
6 Is the school in this street?  
7 Are my books in your bag?
- 4 1 c  
2 a  
3 e  
4 b  
5 d

### Grammar 2

- 1 1 *likes*  
2 rains  
3 lives  
4 arrives  
5 starts  
6 teach
- 2 1 *live*  
2 watches  
3 go  
4 snows  
5 lives  
6 clean  
7 gets  
8 leave
- 3 1 *sometimes misses*  
2 never get up  
3 usually take  
4 often go

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 5 often sing
- 6 sometimes plays
- 7 never finish
- 8 always wears

### Grammar 3

- 1 *teacher does not walk*
- 2 does Helen live
- 3 We do not go
- 4 Does David ride
- 5 Do you play
- 6 does not like
- 7 usually have lunch
- 2 1 *does not like*
- 2 Does Peter wash
- 3 Do you watch
- 4 do not / don't often eat
- 5 Does the teacher usually give
- 6 do not / don't live
- 3 1 *Does Jack get up at 7.00?*
- 2 Does Jack leave home at 8.00?
- 3 Jack doesn't leave home at 7.00.
- 4 Jack doesn't wear school uniform.
- 5 Do Alice and Mike walk to work?
- 6 Alice and Mike don't arrive late.
- 7 Do Alice and Mike watch TV in the evening?
- 8 Alice and Mike don't like tennis.

### Grammar 4

- 1 1 *I'm eating.*
- 2 They're listening.
- 3 The teacher's coming.
- 4 You're moving.
- 5 It's raining.
- 6 We're singing.
- 2 1 *are having / 're having*
- 2 is raining / 's raining
- 3 am sitting / 'm sitting
- 4 am watching / 'm

- watching
- 5 are playing / 're playing
- 6 is reading / 's reading
- 7 is making / 's making
- 8 is crying / 's crying

### Grammar 5

- 1 1 *Am I making a lot of noise?*
- 2 Is Clare reading?
- 3 Are you watching the news?
- 4 Is it snowing?
- 5 Are we waiting in the right place?
- 6 Are you sitting here?
- 7 Is David enjoying his holiday?
- 8 Is the bus stopping?
- 2 1 *It isn't raining.*
- 2 Tim isn't studying.
- 3 We aren't talking.
- 4 You aren't listening to me.
- 5 Katherine isn't lying.
- 6 They aren't waiting for us.
- 7 Anna isn't having a good time.
- 8 I'm not reading at the moment.
- 3 1 *I'm playing tennis with my best friend.*
- 2 Are you coming to the cinema tonight?
- 3 John and Mandy aren't going to the beach.
- 4 Are Emma and Sam flying to America?
- 5 She is walking on the beach.
- 6 We're not studying French at school this year.
- 7 Are you having a good time?
- 8 I'm not watching the TV. Turn it off.
- 9 Fred is eating a sandwich for his lunch.

- 10 Are they waiting for a bus?

### Grammar 6

- 1 1 B
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 A
- 6 B
- 2 1 *always gets up*
- 2 is waiting
- 3 are we going
- 4 don't believe
- 5 am / 'm reading
- 6 Does Susan like
- 7 usually sits
- 8 is / 's having
- 9 am / 'm talking
- 10 costs
- 3 1 B 2 A 3 C 4 B
- 5 C 6 C

### Checkpoint 1

- 1 1 ~~doesn't like~~ *don't like*
- 2 ~~wants~~ want
- 3 ~~walk~~ sometimes sometimes walks
- 4 ~~the lesson begins~~ does the lesson begin
- 5 ~~gets~~ get
- 6 ~~not like~~ doesn't like
- 7 ~~watches~~ watches
- 2 1 *do*
- 2 don't / can't
- 3 are
- 4 doesn't
- 5 do
- 6 does
- 3 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 B
- 5 C
- 6 C
- 7 B
- 4 1 *Jo usually goes to school by bus.*
- 2 I'm not working hard.

- 3 Sara does not / doesn't like sport.
- 4 I always get up at 6.30.
- 5 We do not / don't / cannot / can't speak German.
- 6 Peter often goes to the beach.
- 7 George never drinks beer.
- 8 We aren't / 're not having a good time.
- 5 1 Do you have a motorbike?
- 2 Correct
- 3 I'd like to buy this coat. How much does it cost?
- 4 What are you doing?
- 5 I usually get up at 6.00.
- 6 This book is difficult. I don't understand it.
- 7 Correct
- 8 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the museum?

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. He/she/it questions begin with *does*.
- 2 False. *I eat* is for habits, *I am eating* is for an action happening now.
- 3 True. An example is *I have* (=I own) and *I am having a good time*.

**Grammar 7**

- 1 1 *called*
- 2 washed, dressed
- 3 walked
- 4 watched
- 5 played
- 6 finished
- 7 phoned
- 2 1 *arrived*
- 2 started
- 3 worked
- 4 talked
- 5 played

- 6 continued
- 7 listened
- 8 finished
- 3 1 *Tom looked out of the window.*
- 2 We arrived at 6.30.
- 3 Laura watched television all afternoon.
- 4 The bus stopped at the end of the street.
- 5 I visited an old castle on Saturday.
- 6 Sue waited for her friends for more than an hour.
- 7 They decided to come to my party.

**Grammar 8**

- 1 1 *Our bus didn't arrive on time.*
- 2 Sue didn't phone last night.
- 3 Maria didn't finish work early yesterday.
- 4 The train didn't stop at Harry's station.
- 5 I didn't want to go to bed early.
- 6 Carlos didn't answer my letter.
- 7 John didn't invite lots of people to his party.
- 8 The shops didn't open on Sunday.
- 9 Peter didn't like his new shoes.
- 2 1 *Did Tim arrive at 2.00?*
- 2 Did Sam phone home?
- 3 Did Helen want to make a phone call?
- 4 Did Paul visit the doctor?
- 5 Did Bill miss the bus?
- 6 Did George walk to school?
- 7 Did Jim open the window?

- 8 Did Emma help the teacher?
- 9 Did Alice wash her hair?

**Grammar 9**

- 1 1 *began*
- 2 felt
- 3 flew
- 4 did
- 5 got
- 6 knew
- 7 stood
- 8 wore
- 9 ate
- 10 told
- 2 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 A
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 A
- 7 A
- 8 B
- 9 B
- 10 C
- 11 B
- 12 C
- 13 C
- 14 C
- 15 B

**Grammar 10**

- 1 1 *Did Nick fly to the USA?*
- 2 Did Anna go to Italy?
- 3 Did Jack find the money?
- 4 Did Helen know the answer?
- 5 Did Alex come to the party?
- 6 Did Pat bring the flowers?
- 7 Did Kate send the letter?
- 8 Did Alan make the cake?
- 9 Did Tina wear a hat?
- 10 Did Rick feel ill?

- 2 1 *Tom and Anna didn't have breakfast.*
- 2 Mike didn't take the bus.
- 3 Maria and Carlos didn't do the homework.
- 4 Catherine didn't get a prize.
- 5 Peter didn't know the teacher.
- 6 Sam didn't go to university.
- 7 Paula didn't eat a sandwich.
- 8 Murat and Soraya didn't run fast.
- 9 Joe didn't make mistakes.
- 10 Carla didn't come early.
- 3 1 *did you come*
- 2 didn't wear
- 3 left
- 4 did you write
- 5 did the teacher say
- 6 You didn't tell
- 7 Did you go
- 8 didn't know
- 9 did you take
- 10 Jane didn't get

### Grammar 11

- 1 1 *Was Helen, wasn't at home, was at the cinema*
- 2 Were Tom and Dan, weren't at school, were at home
- 3 Was Nick, wasn't at home, was at work
- 4 Were Liz and Jane, weren't at the cinema, were at school
- 2 1 *Was Jim at home last night?*
- 2 Were you at school on Monday?
- 3 Was the cinema open

- on Sunday?
- 4 Were all your friends at your party?
- 5 *Kevin and Mel weren't at my party.*
- 6 Nick wasn't in class yesterday.
- 7 It wasn't warm yesterday.
- 8 We weren't at the match yesterday.

### Grammar 12

- 1 1 *was reading a book.*
- 2 were playing football.
- 3 was writing on the board.
- 4 were listening to music.
- 5 was looking out of the window.
- 6 were drawing pictures.
- 2 1 *Anna wasn't drawing pictures.*
- 2 Paula and Jim weren't looking out of the window.
- 3 Tim wasn't reading a book.
- 4 Kate and Bill weren't writing on the board.
- 5 Sam wasn't playing football.
- 6 Ed and Lisa weren't listening to music.
- 3 1 *Was Tim drawing pictures?*
- 2 Were Kate and Bill looking out of the window?
- 3 Were Ed and Lisa reading a book?
- 4 Were Paula and Jim writing on the board?
- 5 Was Anna playing football?
- 6 Was Sam listening to music?

### Checkpoint 2

- 1 1 *looked*
- 2 took
- 3 read
- 4 closed
- 5 came
- 6 saw
- 2 1 *d*
- 2 c
- 3 f
- 4 b
- 5 g
- 6 a
- 7 e
- 3 1 *David didn't miss the train.*
- 2 Cristina didn't forget her book.
- 3 They didn't go out.
- 4 John didn't close the door.
- 5 Terry didn't get up.
- 6 Karen didn't like Chinese food.
- 7 Chris's team didn't win the match.
- 8 I didn't sit down on the bus all the way home.
- 4 1 *Where did you go last night?*
- 2 I didn't know the answer.
- 3 Harry made a lot of noise.
- 4 I didn't like my new teacher.
- 5 Did you take your medicine?
- 6 Helen came home late last night.
- 7 I didn't get up early this morning.
- 8 What did you see at the cinema?
- 5 1 *you working last night?*
- 2 Tim waiting at the bus-stop?
- 3 Mary talking?
- 4 Kate wearing jeans?

- 5 Ali and Mehmet playing football?
- 6 it raining?
- 6 1 *Were you playing*
- 2 Mary was having
- 3 We were watching
- 4 were you dancing
- 5 Some of the boys were looking
- 6 I was walking

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. Regular verbs end in *-ed*, but irregular verbs do not.
- 2 True. Past continuous questions begin *was/were*.
- 3 False. *Did* is also used in questions and as a main verb.

**Grammar 13**

- 1 1 *was doing*
- 2 broke
- 3 went
- 4 found
- 5 saw
- 6 was having
- 2 1 *ate*
- 2 came, were playing
- 3 turned on, happened
- 4 were running, fell over
- 5 was listening, heard
- 6 broke, was doing
- 3 1 A
- 2 A
- 3 C
- 4 C
- 5 C
- 6 B
- 7 C
- 8 B
- 9 B
- 10 A

**Grammar 14**

- 1 1 *David used to like ice-cream, but now he*

- hates it.*
- 2 Anna used to live in the country, but now she lives in the city.
  - 3 Nick used to walk to school, but now he rides a bike.
  - 4 Kate used to get up late, but now she gets up early.
  - 5 Carol used to have short hair, but now she has (got) long hair.
  - 6 Jack used to be short, but now he is tall.
  - 2 1 *used to ride*
  - 2 didn't use to drive
  - 3 used to make
  - 4 didn't use to go to
  - 5 used to wash
  - 6 didn't use to watch
  - 7 used to keep
  - 8 didn't use to use

- 3 1 *Did Susan use to have a dog?*
- 2 People didn't use to use mobile phones.
- 3 He used to go swimming.
- 4 Did they use to like jazz music?
- 5 Olga's family used to live in Moscow.
- 6 We didn't use to drink coffee.
- 7 My sister didn't use to watch television.
- 8 Did Tony use to work in a bank?

**4 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 *I used to be in the school tennis team.*
- 2 Sophie used to have long hair (when she was at school).
- 3 Mary didn't use to listen when her teachers were speaking.

- 4 Ricardo used to get up at 6.00 (when he was training for the Olympics).
- 5 What did you use to do on Saturday evenings?
- 6 Becky used to be afraid of dogs (when she was a girl).
- 7 We used to give our teachers presents at the end of term.
- 8 Did you use to live next door to Mrs Harrison?
- 9 My brother used to wear glasses (when he was small).
- 10 Did Martin use to learn German at school?
- 5 Students' own answers.
- 6 Students' own answers.

**Grammar 15**

**1 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 has eaten
- 2 has lost
- 3 have broken
- 4 has taken
- 5 has finished
- 6 has left
- 7 has happened
- 8 have found
- 9 has written
- 10 have bought
- 2 1 has done
- 2 have found
- 3 has sent
- 4 have decided
- 5 have eaten
- 6 has bought
- 7 have started
- 8 has broken
- 9 have lost
- 10 has taken
- 3 1 *have missed*
- 2 has read

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 3 have spent
- 4 have had
- 5 have copied
- 6 has washed
- 7 has arrived
- 8 haven't phoned
- 9 have seen
- 10 have made

### Grammar 16

- 1 1 *Has he booked the hotel?*
  - 2 Has he invited Tim?
  - 3 Has he looked at the map?
  - 4 Has he packed his suitcase?
  - 5 Has he checked the timetable?
  - 6 Has he borrowed a guide book?
  - 7 Has he bought a ticket?
  - 8 Has he chosen his clothes?
- 2 1 *He's booked the hotel.*
  - 2 He hasn't invited Tim.
  - 3 He has looked at the map.
  - 4 He hasn't packed his suitcase.
  - 5 He has checked the timetable.
  - 6 He has borrowed a guide book.
  - 7 He hasn't bought a ticket.
  - 8 He hasn't chosen his clothes.
- 3 1 *have enjoyed*
  - 2 haven't done
  - 3 have spent
  - 4 hasn't rained
  - 5 has learnt
  - 6 haven't tried
  - 7 Have you received

### Grammar 17

- 1 1 *e*
  - 2 *f*
  - 3 *b*
  - 4 *a*
  - 5 *c*
  - 6 *d*
- 2 1 *'ve read*
  - 2 haven't finished
  - 3 *'ve lost*
  - 4 Did you eat
  - 5 left
  - 6 haven't started
  - 7 Did you see
- 3 1 *did you go*
  - 2 have just hurt
  - 3 has written
  - 4 haven't finished
  - 5 did you invite
  - 6 did you meet
  - 7 hasn't played

### Grammar 18

- 1 1 *d*
  - 2 *g*
  - 3 *a*
  - 4 *c*
  - 5 *f*
  - 6 *b*
  - 7 *e*
- 2 1 *ever*
  - 2 just
  - 3 already
  - 4 for
  - 5 ten years ago
  - 6 yet
  - 7 since
- 3 (Suggested answers)
  - 1 *for*
  - 2 already
  - 3 ever
  - 4 yet
  - 5 just
  - 6 never
  - 7 since

### Checkpoint 3

- 1 1 ~~was arriving~~ *arrived*
  - 2 ~~was coming~~ *came*
  - 3 ~~swam~~ *were swimming*
  - 4 ~~were going~~ *went*
  - 5 ~~watched~~ *was watching*
  - 6 ~~was losing~~ *lost*
  - 7 ~~was seeing~~ *saw*
  - 8 ~~was hearing~~ *heard*
- 2 (Suggested answers)
  - 1 *taken*
  - 2 *read*
  - 3 *been*
  - 4 *eaten*
  - 5 *caught*
  - 6 *left*
  - 7 *bought*
  - 8 *broken*
- 3 1 *has just gone*
  - 2 *did you get up*
  - 3 *had*
  - 4 *have lived*
  - 5 *did you do*
  - 6 *hasn't finished*
  - 7 *arrived*
  - 8 *Have you seen*
- 4 (Suggested answers)
  - 1 *for*
  - 2 *yet*
  - 3 *never*
  - 4 *for*
  - 5 *just*
  - 6 *since*
  - 7 *ever*
- 5 1 *haven't been to the cinema*
  - 2 *used to ride her bike*
  - 3 *has gone*
  - 4 *used to play in the garden every day.*
  - 5 *How long did you stay*
  - 6 *has lived here for*
  - 7 *Have you visited Scotland*
- 6 (Suggested answers)
  - 1 ~~have you arrived~~ *did you arrive*

- 2 ~~you were doing~~  
were you doing
- 3 ~~didn't do~~  
haven't done
- 4 ~~was wearing~~  
wore / used to wear
- 5 ~~was missing~~  
missed
- 6 ~~Did you meet~~  
Have you met
- 7 ~~use to~~ used to

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. We use the past simple with exact times in the past, but the present perfect with time periods continuing to the present (e.g. *I have lived here since July 15 / for 16 days*).
- 2 False. *Since* is used with present perfect, but *for* can be used with past simple as well, and *ago* is used with past simple only.
- 3 False. It is for past habits.

**Grammar 19**

- 1 1 *are going to fall*  
2 is going to rain  
3 are going to hit  
4 is going to crash  
5 are going to miss  
6 is going to win!
- 2 1 *Are you going to buy*  
2 isn't going to study  
3 am going to buy  
4 Is Helen going to travel  
5 are you going to buy  
6 aren't going to get  
7 is going to take  
8 are you going to phone  
9 are we going to eat  
10 am not going to give
- 3 1 *Joe is going to buy a new computer next year.*

- 2 We aren't going to play tennis this weekend.
- 3 Is Nick going to join the sports club?
- 4 What are you going to do next summer?
- 5 Look! That tree is going to fall over!
- 6 Are you going to work hard this year?
- 7 I'm not going to get a new car.
- 8 It is going to rain tomorrow.
- 9 Are Mike and Pat going to make sandwiches for the party?
- 10 It's going to snow.
- 4 1 *he's going to arrive at 4.00pm.*  
2 He's going to walk around the village  
3 he's going to visit the castle.  
4 He's going to sit on the beach  
5 he's going to see the museum.  
6 He's going to climb the mountain  
7 he's going to buy presents at the market.
- 5 Students' own answers.

**Grammar 20**

- 1 1 *will choose*  
2 won't have  
3 will be  
4 won't know  
5 will like  
6 Will you give  
7 won't be  
8 Will we see  
9 will buy  
10 will win
- 2 1 *I'm sure it will be cold tomorrow.*  
2 I expect we'll win.

- 3 I think I'll leave now.
- 4 I'm sure Jim won't be late.
- 5 I expect it won't take long. / I don't expect it will take long.
- 6 I'm sure you won't have any problems.
- 7 I think you'll enjoy the party.
- 8 I don't imagine they'll decide anything yet. / I imagine they won't decide anything yet.
- 9 I don't expect the train will be late.
- 10 I imagine Jane will cook the dinner.

**Grammar 21**

- 1 1 *e*  
2 *c*  
3 *b*  
4 *d*  
5 *f*  
6 *a*
- 2 (Suggested answers)  
1 *I'll have the giant pizza.*  
2 I'll be home before midnight.  
3 I'll meet you tomorrow at 6.30.  
4 I'll take the red pair.  
5 No, I won't (give you my book)!  
6 I'll pay you back at the end of the week.

**Grammar 22**

- 1 1 *a*  
2 *a*  
3 *a*  
4 *b*  
5 *a*  
6 *a*
- 2 1 *is going to have*  
2 'll see  
3 'm going to stay  
4 are you going to do?

- 5 is going to have  
6 is going to move

### Grammar 23

- 1 (Suggested answers)  
1 *I'm seeing the dentist at 4.30 on Saturday.*  
2 *I'm staying at home on Sunday.*  
3 *I'm playing basketball at 3.00 on Monday.*  
4 *I'm doing some shopping on Tuesday afternoon.*  
5 *I'm going to London on Wednesday.*  
6 *I'm having a party on Thursday.*  
7 *Jim and Carol are coming to lunch on Friday.*  
2 1 *are you doing*  
2 *am not coming*  
3 *is going*  
4 *Are you having*  
5 *are not going*  
6 *Is Mrs Simpson teaching*  
7 *are not coming*  
8 *Is John going*  
9 *is not working*  
10 *Are you leaving*

### Grammar 24

- 1 1 A  
2 C  
3 A  
4 A  
5 C  
6 B  
2 1 *tomorrow*  
2 *next year*  
3 *in*  
4 *later*  
5 *at*  
6 *a minute*  
7 *after*

### Checkpoint 4

- 1 1 B  
2 A  
3 B  
4 A  
5 A  
6 A  
7 B  
8 B  
2 1 *is spending* ✓  
2 *is waiting*  
3 *Are you doing* ✓  
4 *is reading*  
5 *are going* ✓  
6 *am having*  
7 *are you doing* ✓  
8 *is leaving* ✓  
3 1 *tonight*  
2 *in*  
3 *at*  
4 *this*  
5 *tomorrow*  
6 *later*  
7 *on*  
4 1 *We're going to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?*  
2 *Look out! That car is going to crash!*  
3 *Bye for now! I'll see you tomorrow.*  
4 *Sorry I can't meet you. I'm going to the doctor's.*  
5 *Have you heard the weather forecast? It's going to rain tomorrow.*  
6 *I've bought my ticket. I'm leaving tomorrow.*  
5 1 *at*  
2 *next year*  
3 *soon*  
4 *after*  
5 *tonight*  
6 *in*  
7 *in*

### Think about grammar!

- 1 False. There are three ways – *will*, *going to* and present continuous.  
2 True.  
3 True.

### Grammar 25

- 1 1 *'I'm leaving at six,'*  
2 *'Peter often goes fishing,'*  
3 *'I will be back later,'*  
4 *'I have just seen Mark,'*  
5 *'They/We left at 6.00,'*  
6 *'I am working,'*  
7 *'We are late,'*  
8 *'I will phone back,'*  
9 *'I feel all right,'*  
10 *'I love ice-cream,'*  
2 1 *(that) she was leaving.*  
2 *(that) he had seen the film on Monday.*  
3 *(that) she had missed the bus.*  
4 *(that) they lived in Marsden Street.*  
5 *(that) she would phone at 6.00.*  
6 *(that) she was having a good time.*  
7 *(that) they were arriving at 9.00.*  
8 *(that) he had forgotten to do his work.*  
9 *(that) he was wrong.*  
10 *(that) he had hurt his arm.*

### Grammar 26

- 1 1 *were stolen*  
2 *has decided*  
3 *was visited*  
4 *have not found*  
5 *are discovered*  
6 *is chosen*  
7 *will be held*  
2 1 *were arrested*  
2 *has been found*  
3 *are planted*



- 4 will be sold
- 5 were taken
- 6 has been discovered
- 3 1 *The bridge was built in 2006.*
- 2 My sandwich has been eaten by a dog.
- 3 The letter will be delivered tomorrow.
- 4 Our train has been cancelled.
- 5 A window in the classroom was broken by one of the students.
- 6 Millions of bars of chocolate are eaten every day!

**Grammar 27**

- 1 1 *was given a lift to school by a friend.*
- 2 will be played by Tom Smooth.
- 3 was opened with a screwdriver.
- 4 has been found by a team of archaeologists.
- 5 was broken by a ball.
- 6 was bought by a Japanese millionaire.
- 7 of Tutankhamun was discovered by Howard Carter in 1922.
- 8 are enjoyed by millions of people.
- 9 is caused by heavy traffic.
- 2 1 *Thousands of new homes are built every year.*
- 2 The match will be played on Sunday.
- 3 Nowadays many trees are cut down for no reason.
- 4 Jim was asked to go to the police station.
- 5 My bike has been stolen.

- 6 Our new washing-machine was delivered yesterday.
- 7 The bank manager was kidnapped.
- 8 The museum will be rebuilt next year

**Grammar 28**

- 1 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *Turn off the light!*
- 2 Come here / back!
- 3 Open your books!
- 4 Close the door!
- 5 Sit down!
- 6 Come with us!
- 7 Stop talking!
- 8 Take the first left.
- 2 1 *Sit down!*
- 2 Come here!
- 3 Turn off the light!
- 4 Stop work!
- 5 Close the window!
- 6 Wake up!
- 7 Push the door!
- 8 Get on the bus!
- 3 1 *sit*
- 2 go
- 3 Come
- 4 turn
- 5 Don't talk
- 6 Turn
- 7 Don't touch
- 8 Wait

**Grammar 29**

- 1 1 *running*
- 2 Taking
- 3 collecting
- 4 Eating
- 5 playing
- 6 Shouting
- 7 sailing
- 8 Crossing
- 9 going
- 10 Jogging

- 2 1 *Studying late at night is tiring.*
- 2 Getting up early is hard.
- 3 Learning a language takes time.
- 4 Parking here is forbidden.
- 5 Visiting other countries is interesting.
- 6 Talking is not allowed.
- 7 Copying other people is wrong.
- 8 Listening to music is relaxing.
- 3 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *Drinking lemonade*
- 2 Listening to music
- 3 Travelling (in another country)
- 4 Watching a lot of TV
- 5 Collecting stamps
- 6 Travelling abroad

**Grammar 30**

- 1 1 *It is*
- 2 I will
- 3 What is
- 4 Do not, will not
- 5 cannot
- 6 It has
- 7 I would
- 8 Jane has
- 2 1 *I won't be home early.*
- 2 Who's coming to your party?
- 3 We're interested in football.
- 4 I wouldn't do that if I were you.
- 5 Paula couldn't lift the chair.
- 6 They've sent me a letter.
- 7 Helen's got a dog.
- 8 It's very cold today.

- 3 1 *It's time for the news.*  
 2 *I've decided to buy some boots.*  
 3 *Whose books are these? Are they yours?*  
 4 *Sue's borrowed my paints.*  
 5 *This new boat's ours. It's got sails and oars.*  
 6 *I think the dog's hurt one of its legs.*  
 7 *These are my photos. I'd like to see yours.*  
 8 *My name's Toby. What's yours?*
- 4 1 *If I was ill, I wouldn't go.*  
 2 *I don't know where he's gone.*  
 3 *You haven't done it yet.*  
 4 *I'll see you when you're back.*  
 5 *Jane hasn't finished her homework.*  
 6 *We weren't ready so we couldn't begin.*  
 7 *If you're nervous, don't worry.*

### Checkpoint 5

- 1 1 *(that) he would be late.*  
 2 *(that) Kate knew the answer.*  
 3 *(that) Mary was leaving at 8.00.*  
 4 *(that) he couldn't find the keys.*  
 5 *(that) the bus was going to be late.*  
 6 *(that) he'd lost his books.*  
 7 *(that) she was ready.*
- 2 1 *has been broken*  
 2 *will be played*  
 3 *is published*  
 4 *was filmed*  
 5 *were found*  
 6 *will be opened*

- 7 *are often changed*  
 8 *has been discovered*
- 3 1 *by someone*  
 2 *(all necessary)*  
 3 *by a writer*  
 4 *(all necessary)*  
 5 *by the police*  
 6 *by someone*  
 7 *by workers*  
 8 *by people*
- 4 1 *water is wasted.*  
 2 *has been introduced.*  
 3 *new sports centre will be opened next week.*  
 4 *were injured by a falling tree.*  
 5 *has been stolen.*  
 6 *will be met at the airport.*  
 7 *is taught by a French person.*
- 5 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *sit*  
 2 *Reading*  
 3 *go*  
 4 *Turn*  
 5 *Talking*  
 6 *Writing*  
 7 *Getting*  
 8 *Don't*

- 6 1 *They are*  
 2 *We have*  
 3 *It is*  
 4 *will not*  
 5 *It has*  
 6 *I would*  
 7 *does not*  
 8 *Mary has*

### Think about grammar!

- 1 *False. Passive sentences emphasize what was done, not who did it.*  
 2 *False. Common words like don't and can't are often used in formal writing.*  
 3 *False. It describes the activity in general.*

### Grammar 31

- 1 1 *press*  
 2 *won't be*  
 3 *feel*  
 4 *come*  
 5 *rains*  
 6 *'ll work*
- 2 1 *doesn't leave, will miss*  
 2 *works, will pass*  
 3 *rains, will go*  
 4 *doesn't practise, won't improve*  
 5 *rains, won't go*  
 6 *comes, will be*  
 7 *see, will tell*
- 3 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *play basketball in the classroom, we'll break the window.*  
 2 *don't leave the party now, we'll miss the last bus / leave the party now, we won't miss the last bus.*  
 3 *touch my dog, it'll bite you.*  
 4 *stand under a tree, we won't get wet / don't stand under a tree, we'll get wet.*  
 5 *walk, we'll get tired.*  
 6 *hurry, we'll be late.*

### Grammar 32

- 1 1 *had, would go*  
 2 *found, would take*  
 3 *had, would take*  
 4 *met, would try*  
 5 *spoke, would learn*  
 6 *saw, would run*
- 2 1 *met, would ask*  
 2 *had, would fly*  
 3 *robbed, would catch*  
 4 *won, would buy*  
 5 *slept, would be*  
 6 *were, would visit*
- 3 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *I were you, I would go to the*

- 2 I were you, I would go to the
- 3 I were you, I would ask
- 4 I were you, I would talk to your
- 5 I were you, I would go to
- 6 I were you, I would join

**Grammar 33**

- 1 1 a
- 2 a
- 3 b
- 4 a
- 5 b
- 6 b

2 (Suggested answers)

- 1 *had a bike, she would ride it to school.*
- 2 *works hard, he'll pass his exams.*
- 3 ate a lot, he would be fat.
- 4 had a car, she wouldn't walk to work.
- 5 practises, his English will improve.
- 6 hurries, she won't be late.
- 7 liked swimming, she would go to the beach.
- 8 takes his medicine, he will get better.
- 9 didn't live near the school, he would get up early.
- 10 leaves now, she will catch the bus.

- 3 1 B
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 A
- 6 C
- 7 C
- 8 A
- 9 B
- 10 C

- 4 1 *want, will ask*
- 2 walked, would take
- 3 were/was, would be
- 4 place, appears
- 5 don't come, will not see
- 6 starts, will finish
- 7 wait, will miss
- 8 had, would buy
- 9 went, would feel

- 5 1 A
- 2 B
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 A
- 6 B

**Grammar 34**

- 1 1 e
- 2 g
- 3 a
- 4 c
- 5 h
- 6 d
- 7 b
- 8 f
- 2 1 *Were they working hard?*
- 2 Has Jim eaten yet?
- 3 Do you read a lot?
- 4 Is Tom writing a letter?
- 5 Did Tina leave yesterday?
- 6 Have we met before?
- 7 Was Sam watching TV?

- 3 1 *I haven't.*
- 2 he is.
- 3 it didn't.
- 4 I do.
- 5 I have
- 6 I'm not.
- 7 she doesn't.
- 8 he wasn't.

**Grammar 35**

- 1 1 *Why are you crying?*
- 2 How did you get here?
- 3 What does Jack usually do on Saturdays?
- 4 How long have you lived here?
- 5 Where was David going?
- 6 Who are you talking to?
- 7 What were you doing?
- 8 When do you usually get up?
- 9 What has Jack done?
- 10 What did Mark and Sue buy?

- 2 1 *makes you tired*
- 2 did you talk to
- 3 did you read
- 4 brought the ice-cream
- 5 did Joe decide
- 6 answers most of the questions
- 7 house is yours
- 8 looks after the children
- 9 does Helen study
- 10 has eight legs
- 3 1 *A sandwich.*
- 2 My teacher.
- 3 Cartoons.
- 4 My pen friend.
- 5 You do.
- 6 Somebody does.

**Grammar 36**

- 1 1 *didn't he*
- 2 do you
- 3 weren't they
- 4 does he
- 5 did he
- 6 hasn't it
- 7 are you
- 8 won't you
- 9 doesn't he
- 10 aren't you
- 2 1 *d*
- 2 j
- 3 e

- 4 h
- 5 c
- 6 i
- 7 b
- 8 f
- 9 a
- 10 g
- 3 1 *hasn't he*
- 2 do you
- 3 wasn't he
- 4 didn't I
- 5 isn't she
- 6 aren't we
- 7 has he
- 8 were you
- 9 are they
- 10 did she

### Checkpoint 6

- 1 1 *get, will catch*
- 2 were / was / would tell
- 3 lived, would spend
- 4 see, will tell
- 5 don't hurry, won't get  
OR hurry, will get
- 6 had, would lend
- 7 don't get, won't be
- 8 landed, would soon decide
- 2 1 *I were you, I would go to the doctor's.*
- 2 name isn't Jim, is
- 3 have forgotten your homework, haven't
- 4 you hurry, we won't be late.
- 5 isn't going to lose, is
- 6 I were you, I would go to bed early
- 7 weren't at school yesterday, were
- 8 If you ate breakfast, you wouldn't feel hungry.
- 3 1 *do, sit next to*
- 2 Have you ever been
- 3 are you going to do tomorrow
- 4 makes you happy

- 5 are you looking at me
- 6 Do you like
- 7 lives (in that house,)
- 4 1 *don't you*
- 2 isn't it
- 3 are we
- 4 aren't you
- 5 has he
- 6 won't they
- 7 were you
- 5 (Suggested answers)
- 1 ~~you are~~ are you
- 2 ~~does live~~ lives
- 3 ~~am, am~~ were, would
- 4 ~~got you?~~ have you?
- 5 ~~means this?~~ does this mean?
- 6 ~~isn't it?~~ aren't you?

### Think about grammar!

- 1 False. They are about imaginary situations.
- 2 True. Unless *do* is the main verb.
- 3 False. Some are real and some are checking.

### Grammar 37

- 1 1 *It can walk.*
- 2 It can't run.
- 3 It can dance.
- 4 It can smile.
- 5 It can't speak English.
- 6 It can't ride a bicycle.
- 2 1 *I can't come to your party.*
- 2 Can you play basketball tonight?
- 3 Can you use a computer?
- 4 You can't borrow my bike.
- 5 We can't answer this question.
- 6 I can't help you.
- 7 I can't play this game.
- 8 Can you help me?

### Grammar 38

- 1 1 *You must do it again!*
- 2 You must work faster!
- 3 You must turn to page 50!
- 4 You must hurry up!
- 5 You must stop talking!
- 6 You must listen to me!
- 7 You must give me your homework!
- 8 You must sit down!
- 2 1 *Do you have to wear a uniform?*
- 2 You have to/must do homework.
- 3 Do you have to sit in the same place?
- 4 Does he have to arrive before 8.00?
- 5 She has to/must eat lunch at school.
- 6 Do you have to change classrooms?
- 7 Do they have to do gym?
- 8 You have to/must learn German.
- 3 1 *you should go to the doctor's.*
- 2 should wear a warm coat.
- 3 should leave early.
- 4 should take more exercise.
- 5 you should read a lot.
- 6 should do that.
- 7 you should ride a bike.
- 8 you should buy a dog.

### Grammar 39

- 1 1 *You mustn't talk.*
- 2 You mustn't smoke.
- 3 You mustn't open the window.
- 4 You mustn't enter.
- 5 You mustn't park.
- 6 You mustn't take photographs.

- 2 1 *You shouldn't eat lots of sweets*  
 2 You should keep fit.  
 3 You should eat healthy food.  
 4 You shouldn't drink lots of fizzy drinks.  
 5 You should go to the gym.  
 6 You shouldn't watch TV all night.
- 3 1 *doesn't have to take*  
 2 doesn't have to get up  
 3 don't have to make  
 4 doesn't have to do  
 5 don't have to sit  
 6 doesn't have to do

**Grammar 40**

- 1 1 c  
 2 d  
 3 b  
 4 f  
 5 a  
 6 e
- 2 1 *I had to clean the house. I didn't have to clean the house.*  
 2 I had / didn't have to cook the dinner.  
 3 I had / didn't have to do lots of homework.  
 4 I had / didn't have to go shopping.  
 5 I had / didn't have to go to school.  
 6 I had / didn't have to find information on the Internet.
- 3 1 *couldn't get home before 7.00.*  
 2 had to leave at 6.00 to catch his plane.  
 3 couldn't believe our luck!  
 4 didn't have to wait long for the bus.  
 5 could speak five languages.

- 6 couldn't find your number.

**Grammar 41**

- 1 1 *It might rain.*  
 2 This must be right.  
 3 I might see you tomorrow.  
 4 This can't be the answer.  
 5 This must be the place.  
 6 I might not come to your party.  
 7 You can't be serious!  
 8 We must be early.
- 2 1 d  
 2 c  
 3 a  
 4 e  
 5 f  
 6 b

**Grammar 42**

- 1 1 *don't have to*  
 2 have to  
 3 had to  
 4 shouldn't  
 5 'm not able to  
 6 mustn't  
 7 did you have to  
 8 should  
 9 can't
- 2 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *I didn't have to go to school yesterday.*  
 2 This can't be right.  
 3 Tina could play the piano at an early age.  
 4 I may see you tomorrow.  
 5 Harry was able to repair the radio.  
 6 Bill had to return his library book.  
 7 Carol might phone tonight.
- 3 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *has / had*  
 2 can / could

- 3 must  
 4 have  
 5 can / should / must  
 6 has / had  
 7 have  
 8 has / had

**Checkpoint 7**

- 1 1 *had to go*  
 2 could walk  
 3 must be  
 4 didn't have to wait  
 5 could be  
 6 couldn't do  
 7 might go  
 8 couldn't catch
- 2 1 *must*  
 2 had  
 3 able  
 4 have  
 5 could  
 6 must  
 7 must  
 8 had
- 3 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *can't be*  
 2 should talk to your teacher about it  
 3 don't have to be here before 8.00  
 4 must know  
 5 had to go to the doctor's  
 6 might / could / may be  
 7 I should
- 4 1 *You must be here at 6.00.*  
 2 I can't see you tomorrow.  
 3 You have to press the button twice.  
 4 You shouldn't eat lots of sweets.  
 5 Jean isn't able to come to the party.  
 6 You don't have to pay now.  
 7 You mustn't park here.  
 8 You should work harder.

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 5 1 *must*
- 2 may / might
- 3 able
- 4 may / might
- 5 couldn't
- 6 have
- 7 can't
- 8 can
- 9 can't
- 10 had

### Think about grammar!

- 1 False. *Mustn't* = not allowed; *don't have to* = not necessary.
- 2 There is a small difference. *Have to* is a rule from someone else; *must* is a rule from yourself.
- 3 True.

### Grammar 43

- 1 1 *feet*
- 2 knives
- 3 children
- 4 teeth
- 5 sheep
- 6 glasses
- 2 1 *potatoes*
- 2 families
- 3 bookshelves
- 4 dishes
- 5 boxes
- 6 monkeys
- 3 1 *leaves*
- 2 shelves
- 3 matches
- 4 children
- 5 women
- 6 glasses

### Grammar 44

- 1 1 *a*
- 2 some
- 3 some
- 4 some
- 5 a
- 6 some

- 2 1 *a*
- 2 any
- 3 some
- 4 any
- 5 a
- 6 any
- 7 a
- 3 1 *any*
- 2 some
- 3 some
- 4 any
- 5 some
- 6 any
- 7 some

### Grammar 45

- 1 1 *some*
- 2 some
- 3 a
- 4 some
- 5 some
- 6 an
- 7 some
- 8 a
- 2 1 *B*
- 2 *C*
- 3 *C*
- 4 *A*
- 5 *B*
- 6 *A*
- 7 *B*

- 3 1 *is*
- 2 *is*
- 3 *are*
- 4 *is*
- 5 *are*
- 6 *is*
- 7 *are*
- 8 *is*

### Grammar 46

- 1 1 *much*
- 2 many
- 3 much
- 4 much
- 5 many
- 6 many
- 7 much
- 8 many

- 2 1 *How much*
- 2 How many
- 3 How many
- 4 How much
- 5 How many
- 6 How much
- 7 How much
- 8 How many
- 3 1 *much*
- 2 many
- 3 much
- 4 much
- 5 many
- 6 much
- 7 many
- 8 many

- 4 1 *How many brothers have you got?*
- 2 How much English do you know?
- 3 How many people are there?
- 4 How many bicycles do you need?
- 5 How much rice would you like?
- 6 How many children has he got?
- 7 How much money have you got?

### Grammar 47

- 1 1 *e*
- 2 *c*
- 3 *f*
- 4 *a*
- 5 *d*
- 6 *b*
- 2 1 *B*
- 2 *A*
- 3 *B*
- 4 *A*
- 5 *B*
- 6 *B*
- 7 *A*
- 8 *A*
- 9 *B*
- 10 *A*

**3** (Suggested answers)

- 1 f
  - 2 h
  - 3 e
  - 4 j
  - 5 d
  - 6 b
  - 7 a
  - 8 i
  - 9 c
  - 10 g
- 4**
- 1 A
  - 2 B
  - 3 A
  - 4 C
  - 5 C
  - 6 A
  - 7 B
  - 8 B
  - 9 A
  - 10 B

- 5**
- 1 *There are too many people.*
  - 2 There is too much noise.
  - 3 I've got too many things to do.
  - 4 There are too many cars.
  - 5 There is too much sugar.
  - 6 There are too many books.
  - 7 I've got too much work.
  - 8 Your homework has too many mistakes.
  - 9 You've got too many bags.
  - 10 There's too much furniture in this room.

**Grammar 48**

- 1**
- 1 109
  - 2 87
  - 3 255
  - 4 332
  - 5 2,001
  - 6 2,000,000

- 7 200,000
  - 8 51,210
- 2**
- 1 *eighteen*
  - 2 ninety
  - 3 forty-nine
  - 4 seventy-one
  - 5 sixty-four
  - 6 ninety-seven
  - 7 twenty-three
  - 8 fourteen

- 3**
- 1 *third*
  - 2 ninth
  - 3 twenty-first
  - 4 thirtieth
  - 5 fifth
  - 6 second
  - 7 forty-third
  - 8 first

- 4**
- 1 B
  - 2 A
  - 3 B
  - 4 A
  - 5 B
  - 6 B
  - 7 A

**Checkpoint 8**

- 1**
- 1 *any*
  - 2 *any*
  - 3 *an*
  - 4 *some*
  - 5 *some*
  - 6 *a*
  - 7 *some*
- 2**
- 1 *much*
  - 2 *much*
  - 3 *any*
  - 4 *any / enough*
  - 5 *many*
  - 6 *many*
  - 7 *any*

- 3**
- 1 *are*
  - 2 *are*
  - 3 *is*
  - 4 *are*
  - 5 *are*
  - 6 *is*
  - 7 *is*

- 4**
- 1 *much*

- 2 *much*
- 3 *many*
- 4 *much*
- 5 *many*
- 6 *many*
- 7 *much*

- 5**
- 1 *enough money*
  - 2 *is*
  - 3 *is*
  - 4 *enough / much*
  - 5 *haven't got*
  - 6 *many*

**6** (Suggested answers)

- 1 *Unfortunately David hasn't got many friends.*
- 2 *I haven't got much tea.*
- 3 *There isn't much sugar left.*
- 4 *Can you give me some information about hotels in the centre?*
- 5 *This is Gerry's furniture.*
- 6 *We haven't got any milk.*

**7** (Suggested answers)

- 1 *is are*
- 2 *an some*
- 3 *were was*
- 4 *peoples people*
- 5 *informations information*
- 6 *time-enough enough time*

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 *False. Uncountables have no plural.*
- 2 *False. Any is used in questions and negatives.*
- 3 *True.*

**Grammar 49**

- 1 1 *in*  
 2 *in*  
 3 *in*  
 4 *into*  
 5 *on*  
 6 *at*  
 7 *at*  
 8 *to*  
 2 1 *at*  
 2 *to*  
 3 *at*  
 4 *to*  
 5 *to*  
 6 *to*  
 7 *at*  
 8 *at*  
 9 *to*  
 10 *at*  
 3 1 *in*  
 2 *in*  
 3 *at*  
 4 *in*  
 5 *in*  
 6 *at*  
 7 *at*  
 8 *at*  
 9 *in*  
 10 *at*  
 4 1 *in*  
 2 *on*  
 3 *on*  
 4 *in*  
 5 *on*  
 6 *in*  
 7 *on*  
 8 *on*  
 5 1 *C*  
 2 *C*  
 3 *A*  
 4 *B*  
 5 *C*  
 6 *A*  
 7 *B*  
 8 *C*  
 6 1 *to*  
 2 *to*  
 3 *at*  
 4 -

- 5 *at*  
 6 *at*  
 7 -  
 8 *to*  
 7 1 *in*  
 2 *at*  
 3 *on*  
 4 *at*  
 5 *in*  
 6 *at*  
 7 *on*  
 8 *into*  
 9 *to*  
 10 *in*

**Grammar 50**

- 1 1 *in*  
 2 *opposite*  
 3 *outside*  
 4 *in front of me*  
 5 *near*  
 6 *out of*  
 7 *next to*  
 8 *inside*  
 2 1 *B*  
 2 *B*  
 3 *A*  
 4 *C*  
 5 *C*  
 6 *A*  
 7 *A*  
 8 *C*  
 9 *A*  
 10 *C*  
 3 1 *behind*  
 2 *in*  
 3 *inside*  
 4 *near*  
 5 *opposite*  
 6 *out*  
 7 *in front of*  
 8 *out of*  
 4 1 *B*  
 2 *B*  
 3 *A*  
 4 *B*  
 5 *B*  
 6 *A*

- 5 1 *inside*  
 2 *in*  
 3 *out*  
 4 *out*  
 5 *outside*  
 6 *behind*  
 7 *next*  
 8 *near*  
 9 *inside*  
 10 *front*  
 6 1 *Jack isn't at home.*  
 2 *David sits in front of Anna.*  
 3 *Rita lives near the station.*  
 4 *Please wait outside the room.*  
 5 *The man next to me was reading a magazine.*  
 6 *I looked in the cupboard but there was nothing inside.*  
 7 *I knocked on the door but there was nobody in.*  
 8 *Jan is out at the moment.*

**Grammar 51**

- 1 1 *the*  
 2 *a*  
 3 *the*  
 4 *the*  
 5 *a*  
 6 *the*  
 7 *an*  
 8 *the*  
 2 1 *a, the*  
 2 *the, a*  
 3 *The, the*  
 4 *a, the*  
 5 *a, the*  
 6 *the, a*  
 7 *the, a*  
 8 *a, the*



**3 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 *Jane is an English teacher.*
- 2 This is the last bus.
- 3 Have you seen the paper today?
- 4 The English like tea.
- 5 A telescope helps you to see things that are far away.
- 6 Ann is a member of a team.
- 7 This is the end of the road.
- 8 Tim is a university student.

**Grammar 52**

- 1 1 *a*
- 2 -
- 3 *a*
- 4 -
- 5 *The*
- 6 -
- 7 *the*
- 8 -

- 2 1 *the*
- 2 -
- 3 -
- 4 -
- 5 -
- 6 *the*
- 7 -
- 8 -

**3 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 *Sue is still in bed.*
- 2 We went to the city centre on foot.
- 3 David wears glasses made of plastic.
- 4 George came here by bus.
- 5 Naomi speaks French.
- 6 Martin is in prison.
- 7 I don't drink tea.
- 8 Carlos comes from Spain.

**Grammar 53**

- 1 1 *us*
- 2 *theirs*
- 3 *that*
- 4 *mine*
- 5 *these*
- 6 *her*
- 7 *my*
- 8 *them*

- 2 1 *this*
- 2 *one*
- 3 *those*
- 4 *this*
- 5 *these*
- 6 *that*
- 7 *ones*
- 8 *one*

- 3 1 *yours*
- 2 *mine*
- 3 *her*
- 4 *me*
- 5 *ours*
- 6 *him*
- 7 *hers*
- 8 *its*

**Grammar 54**

- 1 1 *something*
- 2 *Everything*
- 3 *Someone*
- 4 *nothing*
- 5 *anyone*
- 6 *No one / Nobody*
- 7 *Someone*
- 8 *Everything*

- 2 1 *None*
- 2 *Everyone / Everybody*
- 3 *No one / Nobody*
- 4 *anyone / anybody*
- 5 *No one / Nobody*
- 6 *anything*
- 7 *Everything*
- 8 *someone / somebody*

**3 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 *There is no one at home.*
- 2 *Everyone knows that.*
- 3 *There isn't anything to do.*

- 4 *There was nothing in the box.*
- 5 *There are none left.*
- 6 *I met somebody who knows you.*
- 7 *I ate nothing.*
- 8 *Do you know anybody in this town?*

**Checkpoint 9**

- 1 1 *C*
- 2 *C*
- 3 *B*
- 4 *A*
- 5 *B*
- 6 *A*

- 2 1 *a*
- 2 *a*
- 3 *the*
- 4 *a*
- 5 *the*
- 6 *a*
- 7 *the*
- 8 *one*

- 3 1 *a, the*
- 2 *The, the, the*
- 3 -
- 4 *the, the, -*
- 5 *an, a*
- 6 *-, the*
- 7 *The, -*

**4 (Suggested answers)**

- 1 *There isn't anything in the cupboard.*
- 2 *Everyone enjoyed the party.*
- 3 *No one was out.*
- 4 *Someone is in the garden.*
- 5 *I promise I won't say anything.*
- 6 *There wasn't anyone on the bus.*

- 5 1 *its*
- 2 *my*
- 3 *one*
- 4 *Their*
- 5 *mine*
- 6 *ours*

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 7 that
- 8 hers
- 6 1 *Love makes the world go round!*
- 2 Help! Call the police!
- 3 Kate enjoyed her holiday in Turkey.
- 4 Have you met my brother?
- 5 None of the questions was easy.
- 6 Those bags are theirs.
- 7 It's quicker to go to the station on foot.
- 8 Everything I wrote was wrong.

### Think about grammar!

- 1 True.
- 2 True.
- 3 False. The meaning of the two words is similar, in some contexts, but they are not the same.

### Grammar 55

- 1 1 *I've got your phone number in my book.*
- 2 Harry has got a new bike.
- 3 I haven't got time to do my homework.
- 4 Sue has got a bad cold.
- 5 I've got an idea!
- 2 1 *yours*
- 2 her
- 3 mine
- 4 our
- 5 Their
- 6 your
- 7 my
- 8 hers
- 9 Whose
- 10 its
- 3 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *Is that big house theirs?*
- 2 Whose bike is this?
- 3 These books are mine.
- 4 Is that boat hers?

- 5 Have you got a computer?
- 6 Is that dog yours?
- 7 These houses are ours.
- 8 This seat is hers.
- 9 This classroom is theirs.
- 10 Whose CD is this?

### Grammar 56

- 1 1 *Is that book yours or Sam's?*
- 2 David's sister's cat's name is Syrup.
- 3 Have you met Pat's brothers?
- 4 Are those shoes hers?
- 5 These are the girls' fathers.
- 6 Those are the teachers' cars.
- 7 These sandwiches are ours, not yours.
- 8 My books are in my friend's bag.
- 9 Whose gloves are these?
- 10 That is Jack's father's bike.
- 2 1 *the shop window*
- 2 the table leg
- 3 the car door
- 4 the school playground
- 5 the bicycle wheel
- 6 the door handle
- 3 1 *is Jim's desk.*
- 2 hers.
- 3 yours or his?
- 4 is this ruler?
- 5 empty seats theirs?
- 6 house belongs to
- 7 Joe and Ella's caravan.
- 8 Sarah's teacher's

### Grammar 57

- 1 1 *What's your teacher like?*
- 2 What's the end of the film like?
- 3 What are your parents like?
- 4 What's the weather in your country like?
- 5 What are your next door neighbours like?
- 6 What's Helen's new boyfriend like?
- 7 What's the city centre like?
- 8 What are the desks in your classroom like?
- 2 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *good*
- 2 Swiss
- 3 old
- 4 ill
- 5 Japanese
- 6 rich
- 7 Chinese
- 8 funny
- 3 1 *too*
- 2 too
- 3 enough
- 4 too
- 5 too
- 6 enough
- 7 enough
- 8 too

### Grammar 58

- 1 1 *a lovely new cotton shirt*
- 2 a large old wooden house
- 3 two beautiful large green apples
- 4 an interesting new science-fiction film
- 5 a beautiful old green vase
- 6 a short red plastic coat
- 7 a beautiful old blue carpet

- 8 a sweet little black puppy
- 2 1 *a football boot*  
2 a running shoe  
3 a country road  
4 an athletics stadium  
5 a swimming costume  
6 a mountain village  
7 a university student  
8 a school bus
- 3 1 *boring*  
2 interesting  
3 tired  
4 exciting  
5 worried  
6 interested  
7 bored  
8 confusing
- 4 1 *tired*  
2 shocked  
3 amazing  
4 disappointed  
5 confusing  
6 tiring  
7 worried  
8 amusing
- 9 hotter  
10 more expensive
- 3 1 *than*  
2 as  
3 less  
4 than  
5 more  
6 than  
7 as  
8 than
- 4 1 *younger than Tim.*  
2 smaller than ours.  
3 shorter than David.  
4 are better than Jack's.  
5 as expensive as this one.  
6 is faster than yours.
- 5 1 *is bigger than*  
2 is smaller than  
3 is not as large as  
4 is not as small as  
5 is hotter than  
6 is not as cold as  
7 is not as rainy as  
8 is rainier than

**Grammar 59**

- 1 1 *The girl is taller than the boy.*  
2 The woman is younger than the man.  
3 The large box is more expensive than the small one.  
4 The boy's hair is shorter than the girl's.  
5 The girl's ice-cream is smaller than the boy's.  
6 The girl's bike is bigger than the boy's.
- 2 1 *bigger*  
2 happier  
3 more beautiful  
4 angrier/more angry  
5 worse  
6 more important  
7 drier  
8 better

**Grammar 60**

- 1 1 *the longest*  
2 the fittest  
3 the funniest  
4 the most terrible  
5 the best  
6 the widest  
7 the nastiest  
8 the strangest
- 2 1 *best*  
2 oldest  
3 more  
4 worst  
5 richest  
6 happier  
7 more
- 3 1 *Dave is the tallest.*  
2 Tom is the shortest.  
3 Jim is the eldest.  
4 Tom is the youngest.  
5 Tom is the heaviest.  
6 Jim is the lightest.

**Checkpoint 10**

- 1 1 *belong*  
2 the  
3 enough  
4 than  
5 got  
6 as  
7 Whose  
8 better
- 2 (Suggested answers)  
1 *This is my pen. / This pen is mine.*  
2 Those are their bags. / Those bags are theirs.  
3 That is Tom's house. / That house belongs to Tom.  
4 That's their baby. / That baby is theirs.  
5 Who does this farm belong to? / Whose is this farm?  
6 Is that your bike? / Is that bike yours?  
7 That boat is Oscar and Cathy's. / That is their boat.

- 3 1 *B*  
2 A  
3 C  
4 A  
5 B  
6 B
- 4 (Suggested answers)  
1 *My tea is too cold.*  
2 What a great film!  
3 You aren't old enough to see this film.  
4 What's your brother like?  
5 This piece of string isn't long enough.  
6 I'm not interested in sport.

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. They come before the noun.  
2 False. Comparatives

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

compare two things.  
Superlatives compare  
one with many.

- 3 False. We add an  
apostrophe, but not  
with s.

### Grammar 61

- 1 1 *quickly*  
2 fast  
3 wonderfully  
4 happily  
5 badly  
6 specially  
7 well  
8 slowly  
9 beautifully  
10 sadly

- 2 1 *freshly*  
2 sincerely  
3 greatly  
4 well  
5 beautifully  
6 specially  
7 completely  
8 frequently

- 3 1 *Jim works well.*  
2 Ann dances  
wonderfully.  
3 Carol writes accurately.  
4 Tina sings badly.  
5 Sam smokes secretly.  
6 Ruth runs fast.  
7 Pablo drives carefully.  
8 Liz reads quickly.

### Grammar 62

- 1 1 *there*  
2 It's  
3 their  
4 It's  
5 There  
6 it's  
7 they're  
8 its  
9 their  
10 it's  
2 1 *They're*  
2 its

- 3 It's  
4 It  
5 There  
6 their  
7 It's  
8 They're  
9 There  
10 It's

- 3 1 *It*  
2 there  
3 there  
4 their  
5 It  
6 there  
7 It  
8 its  
9 there  
10 It

### Grammar 63

- 1 1 *Has Jane got a new car?*  
2 I haven't got a stamp.  
3 Did Jim have a cold  
last week?  
4 Have we got a  
problem?  
5 You don't have a test  
today.  
6 Has Paul got a sister?  
2 1 *I had a cat.*  
2 Did you have a bike?  
3 Jim didn't have any  
time.  
4 David had an exam.  
5 We didn't have a  
house.  
6 Did Tina have a cold?

- 3 1 *earn*  
2 receive  
3 buy  
4 become  
5 collect  
6 arrive in

### Grammar 64

- 1 1 *doing*  
2 make  
3 does  
4 made

- 5 make  
6 made  
7 do  
8 done  
2 1 *went*  
2 go/come  
3 came  
4 goes  
5 go  
6 going  
7 went  
8 going/coming  
3 1 *f*  
2 b  
3 a  
4 g  
5 d  
6 e  
7 h  
8 c

### Grammar 65

- 1 1 *walking*  
2 going  
3 about  
4 to  
5 cooking  
6 in  
7 to go  
8 for  
9 doing  
10 for  
2 (Suggested answers)  
1 *for*  
2 fancy  
3 know  
4 like / want  
5 believe  
6 doing  
7 refused  
8 to  
9 to  
10 for  
3 1 *manage*  
2 can't stand  
3 refuse  
4 apologize  
5 wait  
6 listen

- 7 enjoy  
 8 know  
 9 lend  
 10 choose
- 4 1 *to pay for my ticket.*  
 2 stand playing football.  
 3 you explain this to  
 4 to wait.  
 5 about you last night.  
 6 to go to the cinema tonight.  
 7 going to the park.  
 8 this pencil belong to you?  
 9 to finish the race in three minutes.  
 10 the chocolate cake/ one.
- 5 1 *Do you fancy going swimming tomorrow?*  
 2 Can you lend me your phone, please?  
 3 We managed to sail home despite the bad weather.  
 4 She apologized for stealing the money.  
 5 Tim paid for the sandwiches.  
 6 I want to visit the museum this afternoon.  
 7 They don't know very much about British history.  
 8 Sue doesn't enjoy watching television.
- 6 1 A  
 2 C  
 3 A  
 4 B  
 5 C  
 6 B  
 7 A  
 8 C  
 9 A  
 10 B

**Grammar 66**

- 1 1 *for*  
 2 at  
 3 from  
 4 of  
 5 with  
 6 about  
 7 on  
 8 for  
 9 with  
 10 in
- 2 1 *ready*  
 2 angry  
 3 full  
 4 tired / bored  
 5 good  
 6 to  
 7 right  
 8 afraid / scared  
 9 keen  
 10 pleased
- 3 1 *George was late for school.*  
 2 I'm bored with staying at home.  
 3 Ann is married to Chris.  
 4 I'm sorry about my behaviour.  
 5 Jack is very good at cycling.  
 6 Are you interested in history?

**Checkpoint 11**

- 1 1 B  
 2 A  
 3 B  
 4 C  
 5 C  
 6 A  
 7 B  
 8 B
- 2 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *well*  
 2 hard  
 3 carelessly  
 4 secretly  
 5 quickly

- 6 politely  
 7 loudly
- 3 1 *refused*  
 2 listens  
 3 believe  
 4 pleased  
 5 found  
 6 good
- 4 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *Ann is frightened of birds.*  
 2 Tina was late for school yesterday.  
 3 I apologize for missing you.  
 4 Harry is bored with his lessons.  
 5 I can't stand getting up early.  
 6 The cinema is full of people.  
 7 Ricardo is very bad at football.
- 5 1 *went*  
 2 up  
 3 getting  
 4 forward  
 5 in  
 6 run  
 7 made  
 8 going

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False  
 2 True  
 3 True

**Grammar 67**

- 1 1 *f*  
 2 c  
 3 a  
 4 e  
 5 b  
 6 d
- 2 1 *Sorry*  
 2 going  
 3 so  
 4 fault  
 5 were

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 6 do
- 7 Excuse
- 8 should
- 3 1 *d*
- 2 *b*
- 3 *e*
- 4 *f*
- 5 *a*
- 6 *c*

### Grammar 68

- 1 1 *does Jack look*
- 2 *sorry I'm*
- 3 *know the way*
- 4 *you feel*
- 5 *you tell me the way*
- 6 *is Paris*
- 2 1 *Go*
- 2 *do*
- 3 *way*
- 4 *see*
- 5 *sorry*
- 6 *like*
- 7 *how*
- 8 *tell*
- 3 1 *e*
- 2 *h*
- 3 *a*
- 4 *f*
- 5 *g*
- 6 *b*
- 7 *d*
- 8 *c*

### Grammar 69

- 1 1 *c*
- 2 *e*
- 3 *a*
- 4 *b*
- 5 *f*
- 6 *d*
- 2 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *about going to the cinema?*
- 2 *you want a sandwich?*
- 3 *you like to sit down?*
- 4 *opening the window, please?*
- 5 *I carry your bag for*

- you?*
- 6 *you tell me the time?*
- 3 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *Would you mind helping me?*
- 2 *Would you like to go to the disco?*
- 3 *Can / May I leave early?*
- 4 *Do you want me to carry your books?*
- 5 *Shall we go to the park?*

### Grammar 70

- 1 1 *B*
- 2 *A*
- 3 *A*
- 4 *B*
- 5 *A*
- 6 *A*
- 2 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *about*
- 2 *mind*
- 3 *Could / Can*
- 4 *about*
- 5 *out*
- 6 *Could / Can*
- 7 *prefer*
- 8 *Let's*
- 3 1 *Look out*
- 2 *Could you*
- 3 *How about*
- 4 *I'll*
- 5 *Of course*
- 6 *Would you mind*
- 7 *Shall*
- 8 *I'd rather*

### Grammar 71

- 1 1 *22/10*
- 2 *1/1*
- 3 *19/8*
- 4 *5/6*
- 5 *30/9*
- 6 *14/5*
- 7 *8/3*
- 8 *13/11*

- 2 1 *The twenty-first of June*
- 2 *The nineteenth of March*
- 3 *The second of August*
- 4 *The thirty-first of October*
- 5 *The fifteenth of February*
- 6 *The first of May*
- 7 *The twentieth of January*
- 8 *The sixteenth of November*

- 3 1 *B*
- 2 *C*
- 3 *A*
- 4 *C*
- 5 *C*
- 6 *A*
- 7 *A*
- 8 *C*
- 9 *B*
- 10 *A*

### Grammar 72

- 1 1 *8.50*
- 2 *11.15*
- 3 *5.20*
- 4 *5.45*
- 5 *8.25*
- 6 *4.55*
- 7 *11.10*
- 8 *11.35*
- 2 1 *half past two*
- 2 *(a) quarter to two*
- 3 *(a) quarter past four*
- 4 *(a) quarter to four*
- 5 *(a) quarter past five*
- 6 *half past nine*
- 3 1 *(a) quarter to*
- 2 *in the morning*
- 3 *noon / midday*
- 4 *past two*
- 5 *in the evening*
- 6 *minutes to*
- 7 *midnight*
- 8 *five to two*

**Checkpoint 12**

- 1 1 *So do I*  
 2 What's Tony like  
 3 I'm sorry I'm late  
 4 half past three  
 5 my fault  
 6 I'd go to the doctor's  
 7 the 20th of November  
 8 What is Edinburgh like
- 2 1 B  
 2 B  
 3 C  
 4 B  
 5 C  
 6 B  
 7 A
- 3 1 *were*  
 2 like  
 3 way  
 4 Would  
 5 Let's  
 6 Don't  
 7 to  
 8 mind
- 4 1 *going*  
 2 to arrive  
 3 How are you  
 4 Shall  
 5 finishes  
 6 open  
 7 I'd rather have  
 8 'll see
- 5 (Suggested answers)  
 1 *Would you mind closing the door, please?*  
 2 What's Paris like?  
 3 Do you mind if I close the door?  
 4 Do you feel like going swimming?  
 5 Would you like some chocolate?  
 6 Why don't we have a party on Friday?
- 6 1 *the way to the station*  
 2 at three o'clock  
 3 does your English teacher look like  
 4 go to bed early

- 5 I don't think so  
 6 Could you tell me  
 7 going

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. They write them in different ways.  
 2 True.  
 3 True.

**Grammar 73**

- 1 1 C  
 2 B  
 3 C  
 4 A  
 5 B  
 6 A  
 7 C  
 8 B  
 9 B  
 10 C
- 2 1 *What's the matter with you? You look ill.*  
 2 Helen's shoes had holes in them, so her mother gave her some money to buy new ones.  
 3 What's your name, and where do you come from?  
 4 Wow! Anna's won two prizes in the painting competition!  
 5 In the end, Jack decided to go home. He went back to the bus station, bought an icecream and waited for the next bus.
- 3 1 *It's six o'clock. It's time for the news.*  
 2 I've decided to buy Jim's old boots.  
 3 Whose books are these? Are they yours?  
 4 Sue's borrowed Carol's paints.  
 5 This new boat's ours. It's got sails and oars.  
 6 My sisters are going to

- Jane's party.  
 7 I think the dog's hurt one of its legs.  
 8 Where's Helen's brother's bike?
- 4 1 *What's the matter with Mrs Smith's dog?*  
 2 Carol's got two brothers, a sister and three cousins.  
 3 That's not yours. It's mine.  
 4 I bought some bananas, two apples and some sandwiches.  
 5 Don't worry. The boys will borrow their friends' bikes.  
 6 There's something wrong with Ann's car.  
 7 Have you seen the swimming pool? It's fantastic.  
 8 It's eight o'clock. It's time for the bus.  
 9 Helen hasn't met David's sister, has she?  
 10 Look at that tree! Its leaves are a strange colour.
- 5 1 There was a big, red bus.  
 2 We had meat, potatoes and vegetables for lunch.  
 3 He was a tall, handsome man.  
 4 We took a book, a pen and a ruler.  
 5 My brother, sister and mother were there.  
 6 We watched an old, scary film.  
 7 The teacher shouted, screamed and ran out of the class.  
 8 I got a new, blue jumper.

- 6 Dear Miss Green, I'm writing to you to tell you that Steven isn't coming to school today because he's not feeling very well. He'll be in class again on Friday morning. If you'd like to talk to me, you can call me at home. When is the last day of term?  
Best wishes,  
John Roberts

### Grammar 74

- 1 1 ~~swimming~~  
2 writing  
3 beginning  
4 deciding  
5 beautiful  
6 successful  
7 wonderful  
8 carefully
- 2 1 ~~chocolate~~  
2 beautiful  
3 answered  
4 address  
5 accommodation  
6 beginning  
7 almost  
8 disappointed
- 3 1 ~~beleive~~ believe  
2 ~~dairy~~ diary  
3 ~~buiset~~ biscuit  
4 ~~cuboard~~ cupboard  
5 ~~changeing~~ changing  
6 ~~diferrent~~ different  
7 ~~deepper~~ deeper  
8 ~~blud~~ blood
- 4 1 ~~disappeared~~  
2 believe  
3 angry  
4 advertisement  
5 different  
6 apple  
7 coming  
8 arrives
- 5 Students' own answers.

### Grammar 75

- 1 1 ~~February~~  
2 friends  
3 eight  
4 hundred  
5 discussed  
6 half  
7 favourite  
8 immediately
- 2 1 ~~fourty~~ forty  
2 ~~forein~~ foreign  
3 ~~friut~~ fruit  
4 ~~fortunatly~~ fortunately  
5 ~~hungrey~~ hungry  
6 ~~hospittal~~ hospital  
7 ~~gess~~ guess  
8 ~~enjoied~~ enjoyed  
9 ~~derly~~ dirty  
10 ~~familly~~ family
- 3 1 ~~won~~  
2 meat  
3 son  
4 weak  
5 were  
6 know  
7 steal  
8 write  
9 Whose  
10 passed
- 4 Students' own answers.

### Grammar 76

- 1 1 ~~library~~  
2 Wednesday  
3 necessary  
4 uncomfortable  
5 scientist  
6 Which  
7 tomorrow  
8 neighbours
- 2 1 ~~shoud~~ should  
2 ~~swiming~~ swimming  
3 ~~programe~~ programme  
4 ~~writen~~ written  
5 ~~succesful~~ successful  
6 ~~writeing~~ writing  
7 ~~Were~~ Where  
8 ~~puting~~ putting

- 3 1 ~~leter~~ letters,  
~~writen~~ written  
2 ~~leaveing~~ leaving,  
~~alarme~~ alarm  
3 ~~goeing~~ going,  
~~holiday~~ holiday  
4 ~~rember~~ remember,  
~~sience~~ science  
5 ~~chooiseing~~ choosing,  
~~brouth~~ brought  
6 ~~writting~~ writing,  
~~penfreind~~ penfriend  
7 ~~wonderfull~~ wonderful,  
~~journy~~ journey  
8 ~~succesfully~~ successfully,  
~~landded~~ landed

### Grammar 77

- 1 1 ~~im~~  
2 un  
3 im  
4 dis  
5 un  
6 re  
7 un  
8 dis
- 2 1 ~~ous~~  
2 ful  
3 er  
4 ing  
5 ed  
6 ly  
7 ance  
8 able
- 3 1 ~~in~~  
2 at  
3 between  
4 from  
5 on  
6 on  
7 in  
8 to
- 4 1 ~~f~~  
2 g  
3 h  
4 i  
5 d  
6 c  
7 j



- 8 b
- 9 a
- 10 e
- 5 1 *bathroom*
- 2 raincoat
- 3 homework
- 4 suitcase
- 5 seaside
- 6 bookshop
- 7 playground
- 8 motorbike
- 6 1 *lifeboat*
- 2 postbox
- 3 bedtime
- 4 schooldays
- 5 doorbell
- 6 tablecloth
- 7 farmhouse
- 8 headache
- 9 handwriting
- 10 armchair
- 7 1 A
- 2 B
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 B
- 6 C
- 7 B
- 8 B
- 9 C
- 10 A
- 11 C
- 12 B

**Checkpoint 13**

- 1 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 C
- 6 A
- 7 C
- 8 B
- 9 B
- 10 C
- 2 1 *lovly lovely,*  
*beech beach*
- 2 *succesful successful,*  
*agian again*

- 3 **advertisement**  
advertisement,  
accomodation  
accommodation
- 4 **write right,**  
~~diferent~~ different
- 5 Febuary February,  
vilage village
- 6 **advise advice,**  
you're your
- 2 enjoyable
- 3 interesting
- 4 dishonest
- 5 helpful
- 6 seaside
- 7 unhappy
- 8 impatient
- 9 bookshop
- 10 dangerous
- 6 1 A
- 2 B
- 3 C
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 C
- 7 B
- 8 C
- 7 1 A
- 2 C
- 3 A
- 4 B
- 5 C
- 6 A
- 7 B
- 8 C
- 3 1 *I was very disappointed*  
*when I couldn't answer*  
*the questions.*
- 2 A climbing holiday  
is different, but it's a bit  
dangerous.
- 3 Fortunately, all Helen's  
friends remembered  
her birthday.
- 4 Peter tries to learn a  
new foreign language  
every year.
- 5 Are you coming  
with us to the cinema  
tomorrow?
- 6 Do you believe that  
people can travel  
through time?
- 7 Jim has just written  
two letters to his uncle.
- 8 Oh bother! I've  
forgotten my keys. I'll  
have to go back.
- 9 Carol likes walking in  
the country and seeing  
wild animals.
- 10 Which is your  
favourite  
advertisement on  
television?
- 4 1 *on*
- 2 *up*
- 3 *forward*
- 4 *up*
- 5 *up*
- 6 *off*
- 7 *for*
- 8 *on*
- 5 1 *underline*

**Think about grammar!**

- 1 False. A full stop ends a sentence; a question mark ends a question.
- 2 False. A dictionary can help you check your spelling.
- 3 True and False. Something is only difficult if you think it is.

**Vocabulary 1**

- 1 1 *What's your name?*  
 2 old  
 3 live  
 4 address  
 5 come  
 6 birth  
 7 stay  
 8 job
- 2 a 4  
 b 7  
 c 2  
 d 3  
 e 8  
 f 5  
 g 1  
 h 6
- 3 1 *woman*  
 2 friend  
 3 boy  
 4 children  
 5 family  
 6 girl  
 7 teenager  
 8 foreigner
- 4 1 B  
 2 C  
 3 A  
 4 A  
 5 B  
 6 B  
 7 C  
 8 B  
 9 B  
 10 C  
 11 B  
 12 B  
 13 C
- 5 1 *born*  
 2 child  
 3 parents  
 4 grew  
 5 speak  
 6 spent  
 7 been / lived  
 8 left  
 9 family  
 10 friends

**Vocabulary 2**

- 1 1 *Tom, Bill and Sue*  
 2 Jack and Jane  
 3 Tom and Bill  
 4 Sue  
 5 Bill  
 6 Sue  
 7 David  
 8 Jane  
 9 David  
 10 Jack  
 11 Sue  
 12 Jane
- 2 1 *to*  
 2 relatives  
 3 person  
 4 old  
 5 stranger  
 6 met  
 7 twins  
 8 eldest
- 3 1 *husband*  
 2 sister  
 3 daughter  
 4 father  
 5 son  
 6 brother  
 7 parents  
 8 mother  
 9 wife  
 10 grandfather
- 4 1 *daughter*  
 2 wife  
 3 son  
 4 twins  
 5 sister  
 6 children  
 7 husband  
 8 brother

**Vocabulary 3**

- 1 1 *f*  
 2 a  
 3 e  
 4 g  
 5 b  
 6 c  
 7 h  
 8 d

- 2 1 *in*  
 2 favourite  
 3 join  
 4 spends  
 5 hobby  
 6 spare  
 7 member  
 8 to the cinema

- 3 1 C  
 2 A  
 3 C  
 4 D  
 5 D  
 6 A  
 7 D  
 8 B
- 4 1 C  
 2 B  
 3 B  
 4 A  
 5 A  
 6 C

**Vocabulary 4**

- 1 1 *ceiling*  
 2 door  
 3 floor  
 4 wall  
 5 light  
 6 chair  
 7 window  
 8 radiator
- 2 1 *bedroom*  
 2 study  
 3 living room  
 4 kitchen  
 5 bathroom  
 6 dining room
- 3 1 *turn off*  
 2 shut  
 3 have  
 4 doing  
 5 knocking  
 6 put  
 7 turn on  
 8 staying
- 4 1 *upstairs*  
 2 ceiling  
 3 desk

- 4 furniture
- 5 window
- 6 floor
- 7 bathroom
- 8 armchair
- 5 1 B
- 2 A
- 3 D
- 4 D
- 5 B
- 6 A
- 7 C
- 8 D
- 9 C
- 10 A

### Vocabulary 5

- 1 1 *greengrocer's*
- 2 bank
- 3 market
- 4 chemist's
- 5 baker's
- 6 butcher's
- 7 post office
- 8 newsagent's
- 2 1 *place*
- 2 country
- 3 capital
- 4 centre
- 5 village
- 6 country
- 7 town
- 8 world
- 3 1 B
- 2 B
- 3 C
- 4 A
- 5 C
- 6 A
- 7 B
- 8 A
- 4 1 *police station*
- 2 hotel
- 3 library
- 4 cinema
- 5 station
- 6 theatre
- 7 block of flats
- 8 restaurant

### Vocabulary 6

- 1 1 *company*
- 2 typist
- 3 dentist's
- 4 electrician
- 5 cook
- 6 teacher
- 7 were
- 8 job
- 2 1 g
- 2 e
- 3 c
- 4 b
- 5 h
- 6 a
- 7 f
- 8 d
- 3 1 *architect*
- 2 lawyer
- 3 soldier
- 4 nurse
- 5 electrician
- 6 gardener
- 7 musician
- 8 scientist
- 9 actor
- 10 sailor
- 4 1 *teacher*
- 2 doctor
- 3 actor
- 4 shop assistant
- 5 student
- 6 writer
- 7 dentist
- 8 builder
- 5 1 A
- 2 C
- 3 B
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 B
- 7 A
- 8 B
- 9 B
- 10 A

### Vocabulary 7

- 1 1 *curtains*
- 2 poster
- 3 shelf
- 4 wardrobe
- 5 bed
- 6 lamp
- 7 carpet
- 8 table
- 2 1 *cooker / fridge*
- 2 blanket / wardrobe / pillow
- 3 armchair / carpet / table
- 4 mirror / shower
- 5 desk / bookshelf
- 6 table / chair
- 3 1 A
- 2 A
- 3 C
- 4 B
- 5 B
- 6 C
- 7 A
- 8 C

### Vocabulary 8

- 1 1 *some spaghetti*
- 2 some biscuits
- 3 some chips
- 4 a salad
- 5 a sausage
- 6 a chicken
- 7 some fruit
- 8 some bread
- 2 1 *snack*
- 2 menu
- 3 breakfast
- 4 meal
- 5 lunch
- 6 Dinner
- 7 food
- 8 picnic
- 9 take-away
- 10 course
- 3 1 *Boil*
- 2 fry
- 3 bill
- 4 frozen

## ELEMENTARY LANGUAGE PRACTICE

- 5 vegetarian
- 6 the food
- 7 done
- 8 bread
- 9 cook
- 10 chicken

- 4 1 *spoon*
- 2 straw
- 3 plate
- 4 tray
- 5 knife
- 6 cup
- 7 fork
- 8 jug

### Vocabulary 9

- 1 1 *horse*
- 2 dog
- 3 cat
- 4 bird
- 5 fish
- 6 chicken
- 7 monkey
- 8 lizard

- 2 1 *take*
- 2 pet
- 3 barks
- 4 fly
- 5 wild
- 6 ride
- 7 climbing
- 8 feeds
- 9 deep
- 10 tail

- 3 1 *bite*
- 2 jump
- 3 live
- 4 make
- 5 like
- 6 sing
- 7 hunt
- 8 catch
- 9 ride
- 10 feed

- 4 1 *i*
- 2 f
- 3 g
- 4 j
- 5 e

- 6 a
- 7 b
- 8 c
- 9 d
- 10 h

### Vocabulary 10

- 1 1 *Mrs Green*
- 2 Mr Davis
- 3 Paula
- 4 Richard
- 5 Paula
- 6 Mr Davis
- 7 Mrs Green
- 8 Mr Davis

- 2 1 *sock*
- 2 overcoat
- 3 hat
- 4 belt
- 5 earring
- 6 glove
- 7 costume
- 8 underwear

- 3 1 A
- 2 C
- 3 A
- 4 B
- 5 C
- 6 A
- 7 B
- 8 A
- 9 C
- 10 B

- 4 1 *sale*
- 2 size
- 3 counter
- 4 label
- 5 shoplifter
- 6 bargain
- 7 customer
- 8 assistant

### Vocabulary 11

- 1 1 *d*
- 2 f
- 3 e
- 4 a
- 5 c
- 6 b

- 2 1 *clouds*
  - 2 thunder
  - 3 frozen
  - 4 shower
  - 5 blows
  - 6 sunshine
  - 7 wet
  - 8 lightning
- 3 1 *raining*
  - 2 sunny
  - 3 lightning
  - 4 freezing
  - 5 windy
  - 6 rain
  - 7 snowing

- 4 1 B
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 B
- 7 B
- 8 C
- 9 A
- 10 B

### Vocabulary 12

- 1 1 *hair*
- 2 eye
- 3 mouth
- 4 arm
- 5 finger
- 6 foot
- 7 leg
- 8 hand
- 9 nose
- 10 ear

- 2 1 *legs*
- 2 hand
- 3 back
- 4 hair
- 5 nose
- 6 fingers
- 7 toes
- 8 neck

- 3 1 *leg*
- 2 hand
- 3 foot
- 4 eye

- 5 arm
- 6 waist
- 7 head
- 8 ear
- 4 1 C
- 2 B
- 3 A
- 4 C
- 5 B
- 6 A

### Vocabulary 13

- 1 1 *eye*
- 2 soap
- 3 have
- 4 feet
- 5 a cold
- 6 have
- 7 ill
- 8 wash
- 2 1 B
- 2 A
- 3 C
- 4 A
- 5 B
- 6 B
- 7 A
- 8 C
- 9 C
- 10 B
- 3 1 *healthy*
- 2 well
- 3 broken
- 4 dangerous
- 5 bleeding
- 6 fit
- 7 sore
- 8 injured
- 4 1 *back ache*
- 2 fever
- 3 dizzy
- 4 broken arm
- 5 headache
- 6 stomach ache
- 7 cold
- 8 sore throat

### Vocabulary 14

- 1 1 *hill*
- 2 tree
- 3 lake
- 4 fence
- 5 field
- 6 bush
- 7 stream
- 8 flower
- 2 1 *bushes*
- 2 lake
- 3 fence
- 4 tree
- 5 field/fields
- 6 flowers
- 7 hill
- 8 stream
- 3 1 *hill*
- 2 river
- 3 fields
- 4 island
- 5 lake
- 6 beach
- 7 country
- 8 coast
- 4 1 *on*
- 2 at
- 3 in
- 4 under
- 5 at
- 6 in
- 7 on
- 8 in
- 5 1 *river*
- 2 field
- 3 sea
- 4 mountain
- 5 forest
- 6 island
- 7 hill
- 8 beach

### Vocabulary 15

- 1 1 *stop*
- 2 into
- 3 trip
- 4 on
- 5 return
- 6 home
- 7 leave
- 8 miss
- 2 1 C
- 2 B
- 3 B
- 4 A
- 5 B
- 6 B
- 7 C
- 8 A
- 9 B
- 10 A
- 3 1 *bus*
- 2 plane
- 3 bike
- 4 train
- 5 car
- 6 boat
- 7 ship
- 8 taxi
- 4 1 *plane*
- 2 car
- 3 ship
- 4 bike
- 5 bus
- 6 boat
- 7 train
- 8 taxi

### Vocabulary 16

- 1 1 *calculator*
- 2 mobile phone
- 3 camera
- 4 dishwasher
- 5 MP3 player
- 6 DVD player
- 7 kettle
- 8 tin opener
- 2 1 *DVD player*
- 2 tin opener
- 3 camera
- 4 mobile phone

- 5 dishwasher
- 6 calculator
- 7 MP3 player
- 8 kettle
- 3 1 *pencil*
- 2 scissors
- 3 locked
- 4 went out
- 5 washing
- 6 tissues
- 7 ruler
- 8 clock
- 4 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 C

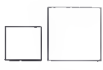
### Vocabulary 17

- 1 1 *passport*
- 2 foreign
- 3 continents
- 4 map
- 5 singing
- 6 abroad
- 7 dish
- 8 trip
- 9 takes off
- 10 ranges
- 2 1 *to*
- 2 in
- 3 at
- 4 in
- 5 in
- 6 to
- 7 in
- 8 at
- 3 1 *Italian*
- 2 Spanish
- 3 German
- 4 French
- 5 Greek
- 6 Brazilian
- 7 Swiss
- 8 Turkish
- 9 Polish
- 10 Argentinian

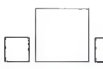
- 4 1 *b*
- 2 *f*
- 3 *e*
- 4 *a*
- 5 *g*
- 6 *c*
- 7 *h*
- 8 *d*
- 5 1 *A*
- 2 *B*
- 3 *C*
- 4 *C*
- 5 *C*
- 6 *B*
- 7 *A*
- 8 *C*

6 


Holland, England,  
Poland




Brazil, Japan, Iraq



Malaysia, New  
Zealand, Morocco



Singapore,  
Bangladesh, Pakistan



Austria, Germany,  
Mexico

### Vocabulary 18

- 1 1 *study*
- 2 look it up
- 3 homework
- 4 teaches
- 5 bookshelf
- 6 hard
- 7 absent
- 8 failed
- 9 teacher
- 10 aloud
- 11 put up
- 12 mistakes
- 2 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 B
- 4 C
- 5 B
- 6 A
- 7 C
- 8 B
- 9 C
- 10 B
- 3 1 *share*
- 2 fail
- 3 take
- 4 copy
- 5 explain
- 6 mean
- 7 have
- 8 underline
- 9 practise
- 10 make
- 4 1 *lesson*
- 2 term
- 3 notes
- 4 class
- 5 attendance
- 6 timetable
- 7 break
- 8 uniform
- 9 subject
- 10 project

**Vocabulary 19**

- 1 1 *record*
  - 2 swimming
  - 3 singers
  - 4 like
  - 5 to the cinema
  - 6 classical
  - 7 cartoon
  - 8 beat
  - 9 for a walk
  - 10 made an excuse
- 2 1 *health club*
  - 2 football club / stadium
  - 3 tennis club / court
  - 4 running club / track
  - 5 swimming club / pool
  - 6 playing field
  - 7 cycle track
  - 8 golf course
  - 9 skating rink
  - 10 ski slope
- 3 (Suggested answers)
- 1 *health club*
  - 2 swimming pool
  - 3 a cycle track
  - 4 running track
  - 5 playing field
  - 6 a ski slope
  - 7 football stadium
  - 8 a skating rink
  - 9 tennis court
  - 10 a golf course
- 4 1 B
  - 2 D
  - 3 C
  - 4 B
  - 5 C
  - 6 A
  - 7 A
  - 8 D
  - 9 B
  - 10 C

**Vocabulary 20**

- 1 1 *size*
  - 2 buy
  - 3 receipt
  - 4 money
  - 5 try
  - 6 closes
  - 7 loaf
  - 8 sign
  - 9 bag
  - 10 costs
- 2 1 *h*
  - 2 e
  - 3 j
  - 4 a
  - 5 i
  - 6 c
  - 7 f
  - 8 d
  - 9 g
  - 10 b
- 3 1 *At the newsagent's*
- 2 At the post office
  - 3 At the chemist's
  - 4 At the butcher's
  - 5 At the grocer's
  - 6 At the travel agent's
  - 7 At the baker's
  - 8 At the café
- 4 1 A
  - 2 A
  - 3 C
  - 4 B
  - 5 A
  - 6 A
  - 7 B
  - 8 B
- 5 1 D
- 2 B
  - 3 A
  - 4 C
  - 5 B
  - 6 D
  - 7 D
  - 8 A
  - 9 C
  - 10 B

# Elementary Language Practice

Fully updated 3rd edition with CD-ROM **New!**

*Elementary Language Practice* is the reference and practice book for students at elementary / A2 level. Now in full colour, this new edition retains all the original features which make the *Language Practice* series so popular, including clear grammar explanations, plenty of practice and regular review units. Themed vocabulary units contextualize essential elementary level words and phrases, offering a variety of exercise types to help students understand and use the new vocabulary. The accompanying CD-ROM includes extra practice for all the units covered in the book, with exercises based on international computer-based test types. The test generator includes 1,000 items to test students on all areas covered by the book.

Who's it for?

Ideal for students preparing to take elementary level examinations, it can be used both in the classroom and for self-study.

Key features

- Easy to understand explanations of elementary level grammar
- Extensive practice of all grammar points in a variety of exercise types
- Elementary vocabulary and phrasal verbs practice
- Regular review sections, grammar index and wordlist
- NEW CD-ROM features fun and engaging exercises for all grammar and vocabulary areas covered in the book
- Printable and on-screen tests for all grammar and vocabulary areas.

|                         | Elementary Language Practice | Intermediate Language Practice | First Certificate Language Practice | Advanced Language Practice |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| With Key                | 978-0-2307-2696-3            | 978-0-2307-2701-4              | 978-0-2307-2711-3                   | 978-0-2307-2706-9          |
| Without Key             | 978-0-2307-2697-0            | 978-0-2307-2702-1              | 978-0-2307-2712-0                   | 978-0-2307-2707-6          |
| Cambridge ESOL exams    | KET                          | PET                            | FCE                                 | CAE/CPE                    |
| Council of Europe level | A2                           | B1                             | B2                                  | C1/C2                      |

### Other appropriate titles



[www.macmillanpracticeonline.com/A2](http://www.macmillanpracticeonline.com/A2)

ISBN 978-0-2307-2696-3



9 780230 726963